



Community Edition 5.5 Quick Administration Guide



	1
About This Manual	17
About this DotNetNuke Manual	17
Content Overview	17
DotNetNuke Installation Wizard	19
About the Installation Wizard	19
Using the Auto Method of the Installation Wizard	19
Using the Custom Method of the Installation Wizard	23
Using the Typical Method of the Installation Wizard	35
Creating a Custom Installation Setup	44
Managing Your User Account	46
Signing Up for a User Account	46
Signing up as a Registered User	46
Signing up as a Registered User with a Security Code	47
Logging In and Out	49
Logging into a Site	49
Logging Out of a Site	50
Remembering Login Credentials	50
Retrieving your Password	51
Managing Your Profile	52
Changing your Password	52
Managing your Profile Photo	53
Managing your User Credentials	54
Managing your User Profile	55
Subscribing to Member Services	58
Subscribing to a Member Service	58

Subscribing to a Service with an RSVP Code	58
Subscribing to a Service with an RSVP Link	59
Configuring DotNetNuke Host Settings	61
Viewing Configuration Details	61
Configuring Host Details	62
Setting the Host Portal	62
Setting the Host Details	63
Configuring Proxy Settings	64
Configuring Proxy Settings	64
Setting the Web Request Timeout Period	64
Configuring SMTP Server Settings	65
Setting the SMTP Server and Port	65
Testing Outgoing Email Settings	66
Other Settings	66
Setting the Site Log Storage	66
Setting the Site Log Buffer	67
Setting the Site Log History	67
Setting the Auto-Unlock Time for User Accounts	68
Managing Allowable File Extensions	69
Enabling/Disabling the Scheduler	70
Disabling/Enabling Event Log Buffer	71
Setting the Online Help URL	71
Enabling/Disabling Online Module Help	72
Creating And Managing Portals	74
About the Portals Page	74

Adding a Parent Portal	75
Adding a Child Portal	77
Exporting a Portal Template	79
Editing Portal Host Settings	81
Installing And Allocating Modules	84
Installing Available Extensions	84
Installing a New Module	85
Enabling/Disabling Premium Module	89
Assigning/Unassigning Premium Modules to Portals	91
Building Your Portal And Adding Content	92
Configuring Site Settings For A Portal	92
About the Site Settings Page	92
Site Details	94
Setting the Site Title.....	94
Setting the Site Description.....	94
Displaying the Site Title in the Copyright Notice.....	95
Creating a Unique Copyright Notice.....	95
Appearance	96
Setting the Site Logo.....	96
Payment Settings	97
Setting the Payment Processor.....	97
Other Settings	98
Setting the Primary Administrator.....	98
Setting the Default Language.....	99
Setting the Portal TimeZone.....	99

Using the Site Wizard	100
Working with the Control Panel	105
About the DNN Control Panels	105
Overview of the RibbonBar	106
Common Tasks Tab.....	106
Current Page Tab.....	108
Admin Tab.....	109
Host Tab.....	110
Overview of the Iconbar	111
Page Functions.....	111
Module Insertion.....	111
Common Tasks.....	111
Maximizing/Minimizing the Control Panel	112
Setting Control Panel Mode	113
Adding and Managing Pages	116
About Pages	116
Viewing Any Page	116
Adding Pages	116
Inserting a Page (RibbonBar).....	116
Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page.....	117
Adding a New Page from a Template.....	119
Inserting a User Profile Page.....	121
Manage Pages	122
Viewing Any Page.....	122
Moving Page Location.....	122

Copying a Page.....	123
Copying Design to Children Pages.....	124
Option One - Using the Ribbonbar.....	124
Option Two -Using the Ribbonbar or Iconbar.....	124
Copying Permissions to Descendant Pages.....	125
Option One - Using the Ribbonbar.....	126
Option Two - Using the Ribbonbar or Iconbar.....	126
Exporting a Page.....	127
Importing a New Page.....	129
Replacing the Current Page with a Page Template (Import Page).....	130
Deleting a Page.....	131
Option One - Directly from the Control Panel.....	131
Option Two - Via the Site Settings Page.....	132
Manage Settings.....	132
About Page Permissions.....	132
Professional Edition Permissions.....	133
Community Edition Permissions.....	134
Editing Page Settings.....	135
Basic Settings for New Pages.....	136
Basic Settings for Existing Pages.....	138
Setting Page Permissions.....	140
Setting Advanced Settings for New Pages.....	144
Advanced Settings for Existing Pages.....	147
Localization Settings for New Pages.....	150
Adding and Managing Modules.....	150

About Modules	150
Module Basics	151
About Module Basics.....	151
Adding a New Module.....	151
Adding an Existing Module (RibbonBar).....	153
Adding an Existing Module (Iconbar).....	154
Editing Module Title Inline.....	156
Adding Module Content.....	157
Editing Module Content.....	158
Deleting Module Content.....	159
Deleting a Module.....	159
Managing Modules	160
About the Module Menu.....	160
Opening the Module Menu.....	161
Exporting Module Content.....	162
Viewing Module Help.....	163
Importing Module Content.....	164
Moving a Module to a New Pane.....	165
Moving Module Position in Same Pane.....	166
Viewing Online Help.....	167
Refreshing Module Content.....	168
Viewing/Editing Module Settings.....	168
Managing Module Settings	169
About Module Settings.....	169
Module Settings.....	170

Basic Settings.....	170
Setting the Module Title.....	170
Setting Module Tags.....	171
Setting Module Permissions.....	171
About Module Permissions.....	174
Page Settings.....	176
Basic Settings.....	176
Setting Module Content Alignment.....	176
Setting Module Background Color.....	177
Setting Module Border Width.....	179
Setting Visibility of Module Content.....	181
Setting a Module as a WebSlice.....	184
Overriding the Default Container.....	185
Localization Settings.....	186
About Localization Settings.....	186
Managing Content for Individual Modules.....	187
HTML Pro.....	187
About the HTML /HTML Pro Module.....	187
Administrators.....	188
Enabling/Disabling Inline Editor.....	188
Troubleshooting: Image Not Displaying.....	188
Troubleshooting: Image Not Displaying.....	189
Module Editors.....	189
Adding/Editing Text Inline.....	189
Adding Basic Text.....	190

Adding Rich Text	191
Pasting HTML	193
Adding Replacement Tokens	195
HTML Replacement Tokens	197
Previewing Content	198
Managing My Workflow Tasks	200
Approving or Rejecting Content	201
Publishing a Draft	202
Rolling Back Content	204
Module Settings	204
Adding a Workflow State	204
Adding a Workflow	205
Changing the Version History Setting	205
Deleting a Workflow	206
Editing a Workflow State	206
Enabling/Disabling Token Replacement	207
Setting a Workflow as Default for Site	207
Setting a Workflow	208
RadEditor	209
About the RadEditor	209
Check Spelling	210
Formatting Code Block	211
Modifying Editor Size	214
Using the Resource Manager	215
Viewing Word and Character Count	217

Toolbars.....	218
Actions Toolbar.....	218
Color and CSS Toolbar.....	219
Fonts and Font Size Toolbar.....	220
Formatting Toolbar.....	220
Paragraph Toolbar.....	221
Resources Toolbar.....	221
Tables and Tools Toolbar.....	222
Managing Images and Media.....	223
Inserting a Document.....	223
Setting Document Properties.....	224
Inserting Flash.....	224
Inserting Media.....	225
Inserting Images.....	227
Editing an Image.....	228
Working with the Image Editor.....	228
Creating an Image Map.....	231
Setting Image Properties.....	233
Editing an Image Map.....	234
Managing Links and Anchors.....	235
Adding an Email Link.....	235
Adding a Page Link.....	236
Adding a URL Link.....	236
Editing a Link.....	236
Deleting a Link.....	237

Creating an Anchor.....	237
Editing an Anchor.....	237
Linking to an Anchor.....	238
Deleting an Anchor.....	238
Managing Tables.....	238
Inserting a Table.....	238
Editing a Table.....	240
Setting Table Properties.....	241
Setting Cell Properties.....	243
Setting Table Accessibility.....	246
Using the Table Wizard.....	247
Setting the Table Design.....	248
Using the Style Builder.....	249
Deleting a Table.....	250
Managing Templates.....	251
Inserting a Template.....	251
Saving a Template.....	252
Banners.....	254
About the Banners Module.....	254
About Banner Types.....	255
Displaying a Banner.....	257
Editing Banner Options.....	258
Displaying Banners Horizontally.....	259
Displaying Banners Vertically.....	259
Setting Banner Spacing.....	260

Setting the Banner Border.....	261
Feed Explorer.....	262
About the Feed Explorer Module.....	262
Manage Settings.....	263
Displaying DNN Solutions in the Feed Explorer.....	263
Displaying News in the Feed Explorer.....	265
Displaying Custom OPML using a Custom URL or File.....	266
Displaying Custom OPML using Custom Text.....	267
Setting the Feed Explorer Theme.....	268
Restoring Deleted Content.....	269
Module Editors.....	269
About the Recycle Bin Module.....	269
Restoring Deleted Modules.....	270
Restoring Deleted Pages.....	271
Adding Privacy and Terms of Use Statements.....	272
Configuring the Portal Language Settings.....	272
Example: Editing Privacy and Terms of Use Statements.....	273
Working With Files And Images.....	275
About the File Manager Module.....	275
Working with Folders.....	277
Navigating to and Selecting Folders.....	277
Adding a New Folder.....	277
Assigning Folder Permissions by Role.....	278
Assigning Folder Permission to a User.....	279
Removing Folder Permissions.....	280

Deleting a Folder	281
Working with Files	282
Navigating Files in the File Manager	282
Selecting Files	283
Filtering Files	284
Reordering Files	284
Refreshing Files	285
Copying Files	285
Moving Files	286
Uploading a Single File	287
Uploading Multiple Files	288
Unzipping Compressed Files	289
Downloading a File	290
Deleting a File	290
Deleting Multiple Files	291
Adding Search Capabilities To Your Site	292
About the Search Admin Module	292
Re-Indexing Searched Content	292
Including Common Words in Searches	293
Including Numbers in Searches	293
Setting the Maximum Word Length for Searches	294
Setting Minimum Word Length for Searches	294
Submitting Your Site To Search Engines	295
About the Sitemap Module	295
Configuring the Sitemap Settings	296

Setting the Sitemap Providers	298
Submitting Site to Google	299
Submitting Site to Yahoo! or Bing	299
Managing Site Access Using Security Roles	301
About the Security Roles Module	301
About Security Roles in DNN	301
About Security Role Settings	302
Adding a Security Role (Basic Settings)	302
Creating a Membership Service	304
Editing a Security Role	306
Deleting a Security Role	307
Adding a Role Group	308
Editing a Role Group	309
Deleting a Role Group	309
Editing a User's Security Role Access	310
Setting Module Permissions	311
Setting Page Permissions	313
Managing User Accounts	318
About the User Accounts Module	318
Enabling/Disabling User Registration	318
Adding a User Account	319
Editing a User Account	321
Unauthorizing a User Account	322
Authorizing An Unauthorized User	324
Deleting a User Account	324

Adding a User to a Security Role	325
Editing a User's Security Role Access	326
Deleting a User from a Security Role	327
Forcing a Password Change	328
Managing a User Profile	328
Managing a User's Password	331
Managing Vendors, Banners And Affiliates	333
About the Vendors Module	333
Vendor Accounts	333
Adding a New Vendor	333
Editing Vendor Account Details	335
Deleting a Vendor Account	337
Vendor Banners	338
Adding a Text Banner to a Vendor	338
Adding an Image Banner to a Vendor	341
Editing a Vendor Banner	344
Enabling/Disabling Banner Advertising	344
Emailing Banner Status to Vendor	345
Viewing the Clicks and Views for a Banner	345
Affiliate Accounts	346
Overview of Vendor Affiliates	346
Adding an Affiliate Referral Account	346
Sending Notification of Affiliate Referral Account	347
Sending Newsletters To Site Members	349
About the Newsletters Module	349

Sending a Basic Newsletter	351
Sending a Newsletter with Tokens	354
Managing Site Design	358
Setting Page Layout & Design	358
Installing a Skin or Container Package	358
Uploading/Installing a Host Skin	358
Setting the Host Skin	358
Setting the Edit Skin	359
Setting the Portal Skin	360
Setting the Edit Skin	361
Setting Module Layout & Design	362
Uploading/Installing a Host Container	362
Setting the Host Container	363
Setting the Edit Container	364
Setting the Edit Container	365
Module Container Settings	366
Setting a Module Icon.....	366
Setting Container Visibility.....	368
Setting Module Printing.....	369
Setting Module Syndication.....	371

About this Manual

About this DotNetNuke Manual

DNN Version: DNN Professional Edition 5.5+, and DNN Community Edition 5.5+

Purpose: This manual provides instructions on how to set-up, create and maintain one or more web sites using DNN.

Audience: This manual is written to assist users of all levels with using, building and maintaining DNN sites.

About DotNetNuke

DotNetNuke (DNN) is an open source Portal and Content Management Framework, based on Microsoft's .NET technology. DNN offers a robust, extensible and fully functional framework for the development of a broad range of commercial portal applications.

DNN is a world leading open source portal and content management framework, adopted by thousands of organizations worldwide.

Typically, portals provide a single web front-end to the many applications within an organization. For example, it may present critical information from HR, Finance, Marketing, Customer Service, etc all from one web site. Connected back-end systems also provide businesses with the opportunity to combine information and more easily assist.

About DotNetNuke Corp

Who is DotNetNuke Corp?

DotNetNuke Corp. (or DNN Corp.) is the creator of DotNetNuke®, the most widely adopted framework for building web sites and web applications on Microsoft ASP.NET. Using DotNetNuke, businesses can quickly develop and deploy interactive, dynamic public web sites, intranets, extranets, and web applications. DNN Corp. provides this framework in both “Community” and “Professional” editions. Founded in 2006, DNN Corp. is privately held.

Our Mission

Our mission is to create entrepreneurial opportunities around the world by providing a superior open source web application framework that cultivates a passionate developer community as well as a prosperous commercial ecosystem.

More Information

<http://www.dotnetnuke.com/About/Overview/tabid/822/Default.aspx>

Content Overview

A summary of the sections of this manual and what you will find in each section.

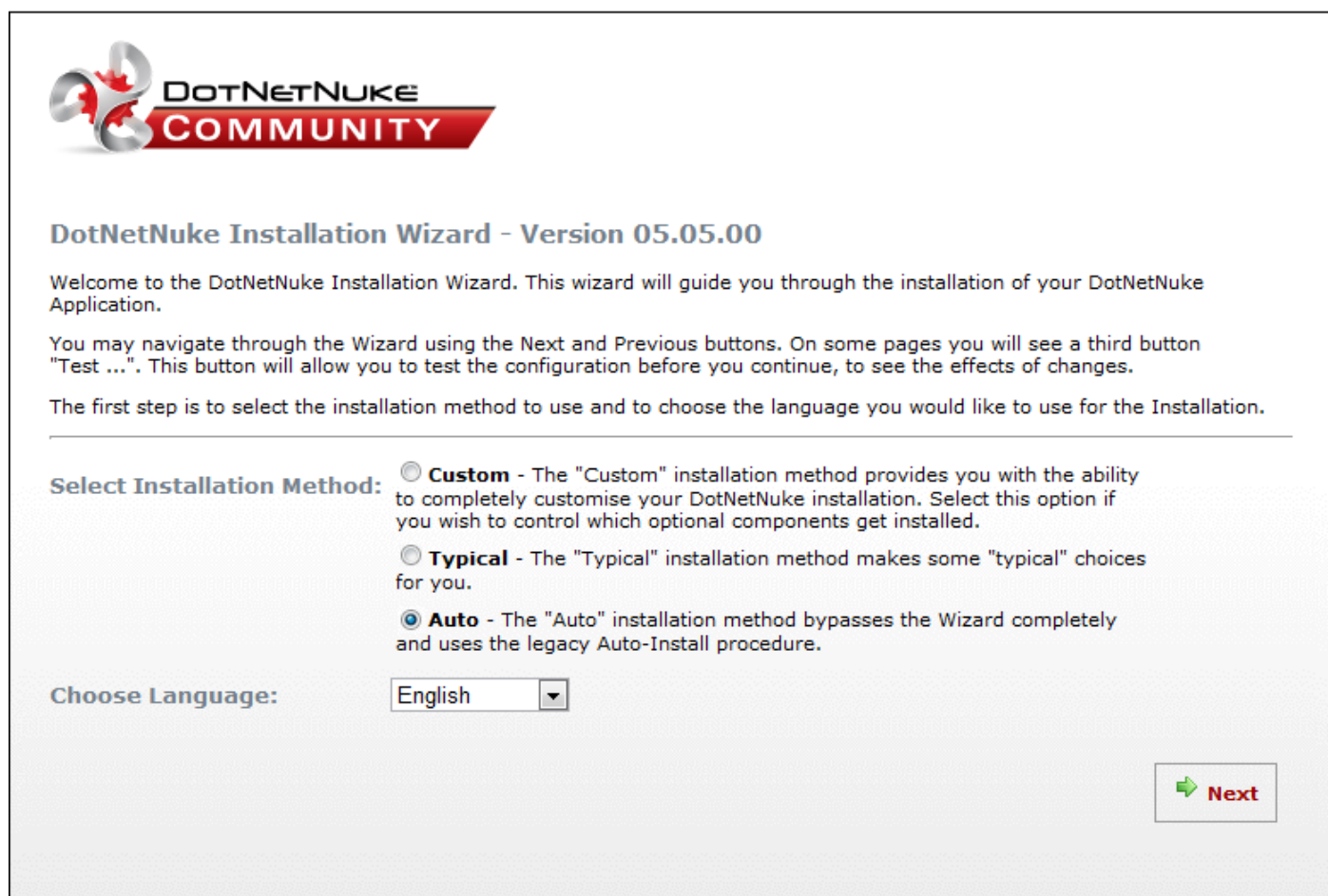
1. **About This Manual:** Provides a brief overview of the content of this manual and DNN.
2. **DotNetNuke Installation Wizard:** Installing DotNetNuke using the Installation Wizard.
3. **Managing Your User Account:** How you and all site visitors can create and manage their user account and subscribe to members services.
4. **Configuring DotNetNuke Host Settings:** This section covers the main setting required to configure the settings of the Host portal; proxy and SMTP settings for this installation; as well as default settings for additional portals.
5. **Creating and Managing Portals:** How to create additional portals within this installation and modify the default hosting settings for each.
6. **Installing and Allocating Modules:** How to install additional modules and select which portals they are available to.
7. **Building Your Portal:** This section covers the main settings required to set up your portal (site settings) and shows how to quickly build a site using the Site Wizard. It details how to build a site by adding pages and modules as well as common tasks such as managing files using the File Manager. Finally, this section details how to configure content staging (*Only available in DotNetNuke Enterprise Edition*) and upload staged content.
8. **Adding Search Capabilities To Your Site:** How to add search capabilities to your site and get your site listed on search engines.
9. **Working With Files And Images:** How to use the File Manager to upload and manage files such as images, documents, etc which can be viewed and/or downloaded from your site.
10. **Managing Site Access Using Security Roles:** How to use one of DNN's core functionality which is controlling which users can view which pages and modules on the site. This section also show how to create services which user's can subscribe to access.
11. **Managing User Accounts:** How to create and manage user accounts for your site members.
12. **Managing Vendors, Banners And Affiliates:** How to create and manage vendors accounts and vendor affiliate accounts as well as create banners which can be displayed using the Banners module.
13. **Sending Newsletters To Site Members:** How to send basic and personalized email messages to selected users and security roles.
14. **Managing Site Design:** The basics of setting site wide, page and module designs.

DotNetNuke Installation Wizard

About the Installation Wizard

DotNetNuke has an easy to use Installation Wizard which helps you configure your DNN web site. There are three different installation methods provided:

- **Custom:** The "Custom" installation method provides you with the ability to completely customize your DotNetNuke installation. Select this option if you wish to control which optional components get installed. "Creating a Custom Installation Setup" and "Using the Custom Method of the Installation Wizard"
- **Typical:** The "Typical" installation method makes some "typical" choices for you. "Using the Typical Method of the Installation Wizard"
- **Auto:** The "Auto" installation method bypasses the Wizard completely and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure. "Using the Auto Method of the Installation Wizard"



DotNetNuke Installation Wizard - Version 05.05.00

Welcome to the DotNetNuke Installation Wizard. This wizard will guide you through the installation of your DotNetNuke Application.

You may navigate through the Wizard using the Next and Previous buttons. On some pages you will see a third button "Test ...". This button will allow you to test the configuration before you continue, to see the effects of changes.

The first step is to select the installation method to use and to choose the language you would like to use for the Installation.

Select Installation Method:

- Custom** - The "Custom" installation method provides you with the ability to completely customise your DotNetNuke installation. Select this option if you wish to control which optional components get installed.
- Typical** - The "Typical" installation method makes some "typical" choices for you.
- Auto** - The "Auto" installation method bypasses the Wizard completely and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure.

Choose Language: English

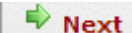
The DNN Installation Wizard

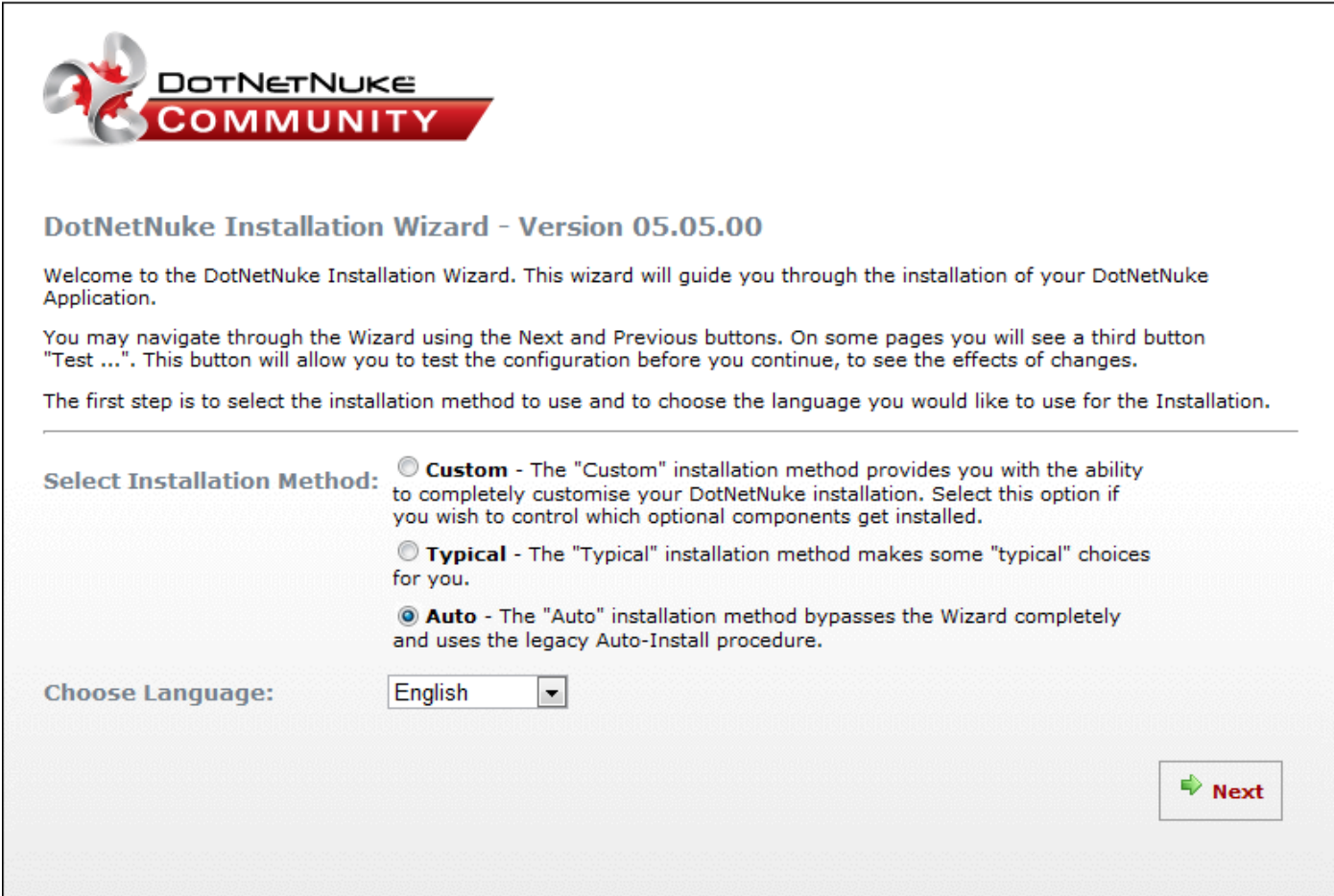
Using the Auto Method of the Installation Wizard


How to use the Auto installation method which bypasses the Wizard and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure.

Step One - DotNetNuke Installation Wizard

Complete the following settings:

1. At **Select Installation Method**, select **Auto**.
2. At **Choose Language**, select a language to set the default portal language as well as the language used in this wizard. The following languages are available: English, Italian, French, German, Spanish, Catalan, Dutch, Polish, Turkish, Japanese, Russian, and Arabic.
3. Click the **Next**  button.





DotNetNuke Installation Wizard - Version 05.05.00

Welcome to the DotNetNuke Installation Wizard. This wizard will guide you through the installation of your DotNetNuke Application.


You may navigate through the Wizard using the Next and Previous buttons. On some pages you will see a third button "Test ...". This button will allow you to test the configuration before you continue, to see the effects of changes.

The first step is to select the installation method to use and to choose the language you would like to use for the Installation.

Select Installation Method:

- Custom** - The "Custom" installation method provides you with the ability to completely customise your DotNetNuke installation. Select this option if you wish to control which optional components get installed.
- Typical** - The "Typical" installation method makes some "typical" choices for you.
- Auto** - The "Auto" installation method bypasses the Wizard completely and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure.

Choose Language:



Step Two - Installing DotNetNuke

The installation Status Report will run. Once the installation is completed the Installation Complete message is displayed.

1. Click the [Click Here To Access Your Portal](#) link to go to the newly installed portal.

Note: The Host and Administrator accounts use default details which require immediate updating. See "Changing your Password"

Host Account

Username: host

Password: dnnhost

Administrator Account

Username: admin

Password: dnnadmin



Installing DotNetNuke

Version 05.05.00

Installation Status Report

00:00:00.017 - Installing Version: 05.00.00
00:00:00.021 - Executing Script: DotNetNuke.Schema.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:04.285 - Executing Script: DotNetNuke.Data.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:05.206 - Installing MemberRole Provider:
00:00:05.207 - Executing Script: InstallCommon
00:00:06.043 - Executing Script: InstallMembership
00:00:06.595 - Executing Script: InstallProfile
00:00:07.093 - Executing Script: InstallRoles
00:00:07.636 - Upgrading to Version: 05.02.03
00:00:07.655 - Executing Script: 05.00.01.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:08.616 - Executing Script: 05.01.00.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:11.350 - Executing Script: 05.01.01.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:12.091 - Executing Script: 05.01.02.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:12.571 - Executing Script: 05.01.03.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:13.018 - Executing Script: 05.01.04.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:13.348 - Executing Script: 05.02.00.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:14.516 - Executing Script: 05.02.01.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:15.204 - Executing Script: 05.02.02.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:15.553 - Executing Script: 05.02.03.SqlDataProvider **Success**
00:00:15.957 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.00.01 **Success**
00:00:16.193 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.01.00 **Success**
00:00:18.519 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.01.01 **Success**
00:00:18.525 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.01.02 **Success**
00:00:18.525 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.01.03 **Success**
00:00:18.784 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.01.04 **Success**
00:00:18.784 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.02.00 **Success**
00:00:19.014 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.02.01 **Success**
00:00:19.028 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.02.02 **Success**
00:00:19.028 - Executing Application Upgrades: 05.02.03 **Success**
00:00:19.030 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.00.01 **Success**
00:00:19.034 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.01.00 **Success**
00:00:19.035 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.01.01 **Success**
00:00:19.035 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.01.02 **Success**
00:00:19.035 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.01.03 **Success**
00:00:19.036 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.01.04 **Success**
00:00:19.036 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.02.00 **Success**
00:00:19.036 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.02.01 **Success**
00:00:19.036 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.02.02 **Success**
00:00:19.036 - Cleaning Up Files: 05.02.03 **Success**
00:00:19.037 - Updating Config Files: 05.00.01 **Success**
00:00:19.040 - Updating Config Files: 05.01.00 **Success**
00:00:19.108 - Updating Config Files: 05.01.01 **Success**
00:00:19.108 - Updating Config Files: 05.01.02 **Success**
00:00:19.109 - Updating Config Files: 05.01.03 **Success**
00:00:19.109 - Updating Config Files: 05.01.04 **Success**
00:00:19.109 - Updating Config Files: 05.02.00 **Success**
00:00:19.143 - Updating Config Files: 05.02.01 **Success**
00:00:19.230 - Updating Config Files: 05.02.02 **Success**
00:00:19.230 - Updating Config Files: 05.02.03 **Success**
00:00:19.230 - Performing General Upgrades
00:00:19.508 - Loading Host Settings:
00:00:19.705 - Configuring SuperUser:
00:00:19.933 - Synchronizing Host Files:
00:00:20.199 - Executing Additional Scripts:


Using the Custom Method of the Installation Wizard

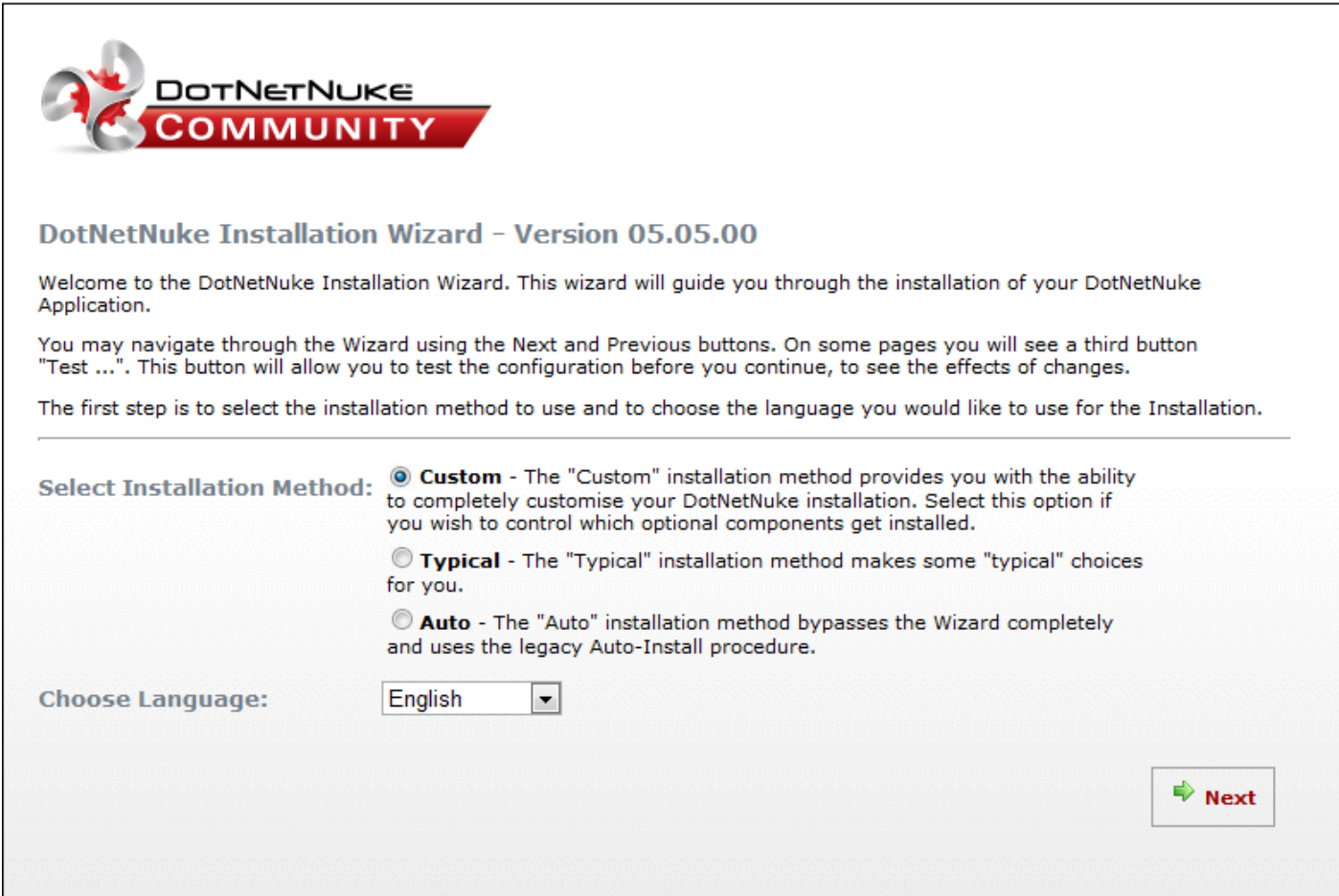
The Custom installation method provides full customization during your DotNetNuke installation. Note: Images used in this tutorial will vary slightly to your version.


For details on enabling optional skins, containers and languages during your custom install "Creating a Custom Installation Setup" before beginning this tutorial.

Step One - DotNetNuke Installation Wizard

Complete the following settings:

1. At **Select Installation Method**, select **Custom**.
2. At **Choose Language**, select a language to set the default portal language as well as the language used in this wizard. The following languages are available: English, Italian, French, German, Spanish, Catalan, Dutch, Polish, Turkish, Japanese, Russian, and Arabic.
3. Click the **Next**  **Next** button.





DotNetNuke Installation Wizard - Version 05.05.00

Welcome to the DotNetNuke Installation Wizard. This wizard will guide you through the installation of your DotNetNuke Application.


You may navigate through the Wizard using the Next and Previous buttons. On some pages you will see a third button "Test ...". This button will allow you to test the configuration before you continue, to see the effects of changes.

The first step is to select the installation method to use and to choose the language you would like to use for the Installation.

Select Installation Method:


- Custom** - The "Custom" installation method provides you with the ability to completely customise your DotNetNuke installation. Select this option if you wish to control which optional components get installed.
- Typical** - The "Typical" installation method makes some "typical" choices for you.
- Auto** - The "Auto" installation method bypasses the Wizard completely and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure.

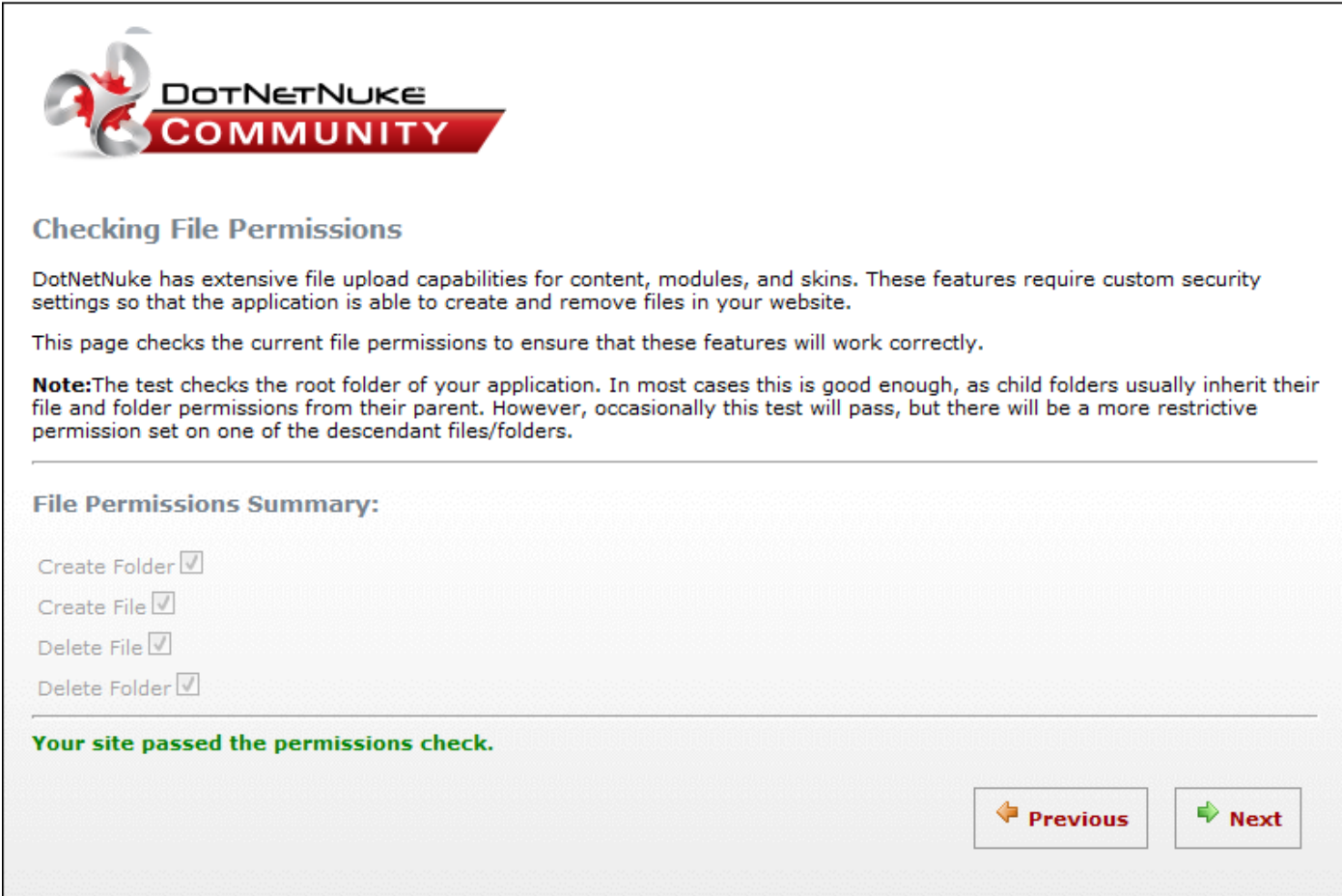
Choose Language:


 **Next**

Step Two - Checking File Permissions

This page runs a test to ensure this DNN installation can successfully create and delete folders and files.

1. View the success/fail message:
 - If the test is successful a success message reading "**Your site passed the permissions check**" is displayed below the **File Permissions Summary** section.
 - If the test is unsuccessful, a message detailing possible error is displayed. Fix the errors to continue.
2. Click the **Next**  button.





Checking File Permissions

DotNetNuke has extensive file upload capabilities for content, modules, and skins. These features require custom security settings so that the application is able to create and remove files in your website.

This page checks the current file permissions to ensure that these features will work correctly.

Note:The test checks the root folder of your application. In most cases this is good enough, as child folders usually inherit their file and folder permissions from their parent. However, occasionally this test will pass, but there will be a more restrictive permission set on one of the descendant files/folders.

File Permissions Summary:


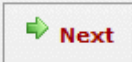
Create Folder

Create File

Delete File

Delete Folder

Your site passed the permissions check.

Step Three - Configure Database Connection

1. At **Select Database**, select one of these two options and complete the associated settings:

- **SQL Server 2005/2008 (Express) File:**


- a. At **Server**, enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. If using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID).
- b. At **Filename**, enter the name of the Database File (located in the App_Data Directory).
- c. At **Integrated Security**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security, which means you will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option.
 - Uncheck the check box if you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database and provide the UserId/Password combination.
 - i. At **User ID**, enter the UserID for the Database.
 - ii. At **Password**, enter the Password for the Database.
- d. At **Run as db Owner**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are running the database as Database Owner
 - Uncheck the check box you will be running as the User ID specified.
- e. **OPTIONAL**. At **Object Qualifier**, enter a "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.

- or **SQL Server 2005/2008 Database:**

- a. In the **Server** text box, enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. If using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID).
- b. In the **Database** text box, enter the Database name.
- c. At **Integrated Security**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security and will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option.
 - Uncheck the check box if you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database and provide the UserId/Password combination.

- i. In the **User ID** text box, enter the UserID for the Database.
 - ii. In the **Password** text box, enter the Password for the Database.
- d. At **Run as db Owner**, select from these options:
- Check the check box if you are running the database as Database Owner
 - Uncheck the check box if you will be running as the User ID specified.
- e. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Object Qualifier** text box, enter a "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.

2. Click the **Next**  button.



Configure Database Connection

You can configure the database settings used by DotNetNuke on this page. If you are installing DotNetNuke in a "Hosting Account" your hosting provider should have provided you with the information.

There are two options for SQL Server 2005/2008. SQLServer 2005 and SQL Server 2008 support the use of Database Files. In most situations you should choose the Database option, but if you are using SQL Server 2005/2008 Express then you should use the File option.

Select Database: SQL Server 2005/2008 (Express) File SQL Server 2005/2008 Database

Server: Enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. (if using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID))

Database: Enter the Database name

Integrated Security: Check this if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security, which means you will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option. If you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database, leave this unchecked, and provide the UserId/Password combination.

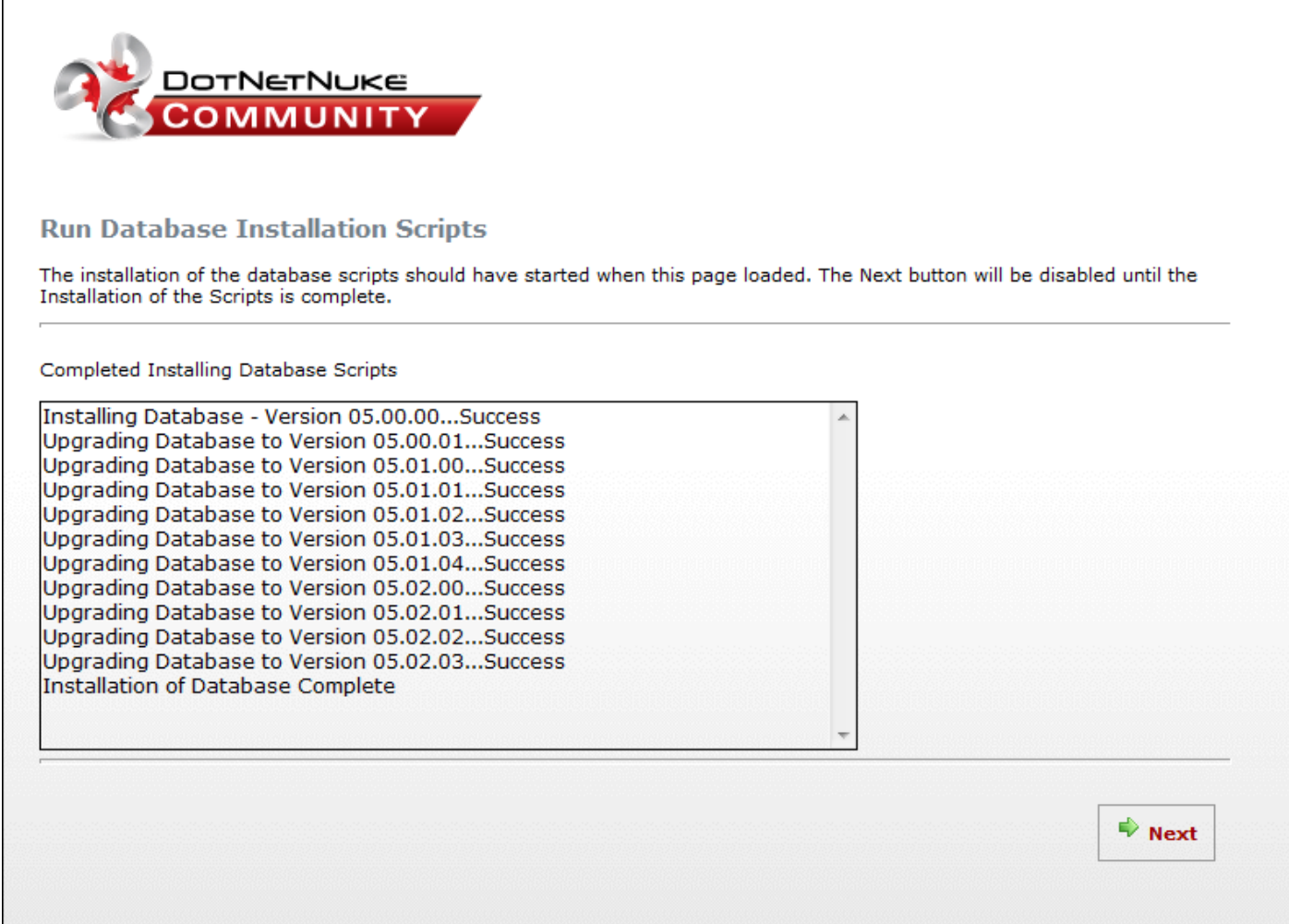
Run as db Owner: Check this if you are running the database as Database Owner - if left unchecked you will be running as the User ID specified


Object Qualifier: Enter an optional "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.

Step Four - The Run Database Installation Scripts page

The installation of the database scripts will be running with the results displaying in the window below. When the "Installation of Database Complete" message displays in the window, the Next button will be enabled once you are able to continue with the installation.

1. Click the **Next**  button.






Run Database Installation Scripts

The installation of the database scripts should have started when this page loaded. The Next button will be disabled until the Installation of the Scripts is complete.

Completed Installing Database Scripts

```
Installing Database - Version 05.00.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.00.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.02...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.03...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.04...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.02...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.03...Success
Installation of Database Complete
```



Step Five - Configure Host Account

1. Complete the following Host Account details:
 - a. In the **First Name** text box, enter the first name of the Host.
 - b. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the last name of the Host.
 - c. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name for the Host.

- d. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Host.
- e. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the password for the Host.
- f. In the **Email Address** text box, enter the email address of the Host.

2. Complete the **SMTP Server Settings**:

- a. In the **Server** text box, enter your SMTP server name or IP address.
- b. At **Authentication**, select the required authentication method from **Anonymous**, **Basic** or **NTLM**.
- c. At **Enable SSL**, select from these option:
 - Check the check box to enable SSL (secure socket layers) for secure pages.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable.

3. Click the **Next**  button.



Configure Host Account

In this page you should provide the information for the Host or SuperUser User Account. This user has access to all portals created on the site, and care should be taken to provide a UserName/Password combination that is difficult to "hack" by malicious users.

First Name:	<input type="text" value="SuperUser"/>
Last Name:	<input type="text" value="Account"/>
User Name:	<input type="text" value="host"/>
Password:	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password:	<input type="password"/>
Email Address:	<input type="text" value="host@ecozany.com"/>

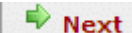
SMTP Server Settings

You can configure and test your SMTP Server settings.

Server:	<input type="text" value="127.01.0.6"/>
Authentication:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Anonymous <input type="radio"/> Basic <input type="radio"/> NTLM
Enable SSL:	<input type="checkbox"/>



Step Six - Install Optional Modules

1. **OPTIONAL.** Check the check box beside each of the modules to be installed. Note: You can install these or other modules at any time once installation is completed.
2. Click the **Next**  button.



Install Optional Modules

DotNetNuke has a powerful extensibility. This extensibility is provided through the concept of "installable" modules.

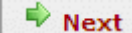
On this page you can choose the optional Modules to install. Installing the Modules makes them available to Portal Administrators.

Modules

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Adsense (01.00.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> Announcements (04.00.03) | <input type="checkbox"/> Blog (03.05.01) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Documents (04.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Events (05.00.03) | <input type="checkbox"/> FAQs (04.04.00) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Feedback (04.04.03) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FormAndList (05.01.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> Forum (04.05.03) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Gallery (04.03.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Help (03.00.02) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTML (Community) (05.02.00) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> IFrame (04.03.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Links (04.00.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> Map (01.00.09) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> MarketShare (01.00.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Media (03.02.03) | <input type="checkbox"/> NewsFeeds (04.00.01) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Reports (05.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Repository (03.01.15) | <input type="checkbox"/> Store (02.01.00) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Survey (04.60.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> UsersOnline (05.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Wiki (04.02.00) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> XML (04.03.04) | | |



Step Seven - Install Skins and Containers

1. **OPTIONAL.** Check the check box beside each skin or container you want to install. "Creating a Custom Installation Setup" for details on enabling optional skins and containers.
2. Click the **Next**  button.



Install Skins and Containers

DotNetNuke has a rich skinning capability. On this page you can choose the Skins and Containers to install.

Installing a Skin and/or container does not automatically enable it, but it makes the skin available to you.

Skins

DNN-MinimalExtropySkin (01.00.05)

DNN-BlueSkin (01.00.00)

Containers

DNN-MinimalExtropyContainer (01.00.05)

DNN-BlueContainer (01.00.00)

Next

Step Eight - Install Language Packs

1. **OPTIONAL.** Check the check box beside each Language you want to install. "Creating a Custom Installation Setup" for details on how to enable optional languages.
2. Click the **Next** button.



Install Language Packs

DotNetNuke is fully localizable. On this page you can choose the languages you wish to install.


Languages

There are no languages to install.

 Next

Step Nine - Install Authentication Systems

On this page a number authentication systems are automatically selected for installation. You can also add and select additional Providers to be installed. "Creating a Custom Installation Setup"

1. **OPTIONAL.** Check the check box beside each authentication system you want to install.
2. Click the **Next**  button.



Install Authentication Systems

DotNetNuke supports multiple authentication systems. On this page you can choose the systems you wish to install.

Installing an Authentication System does not automatically enable it for each portal, but it makes the system available to a Portal Administrator.

Authentication Systems

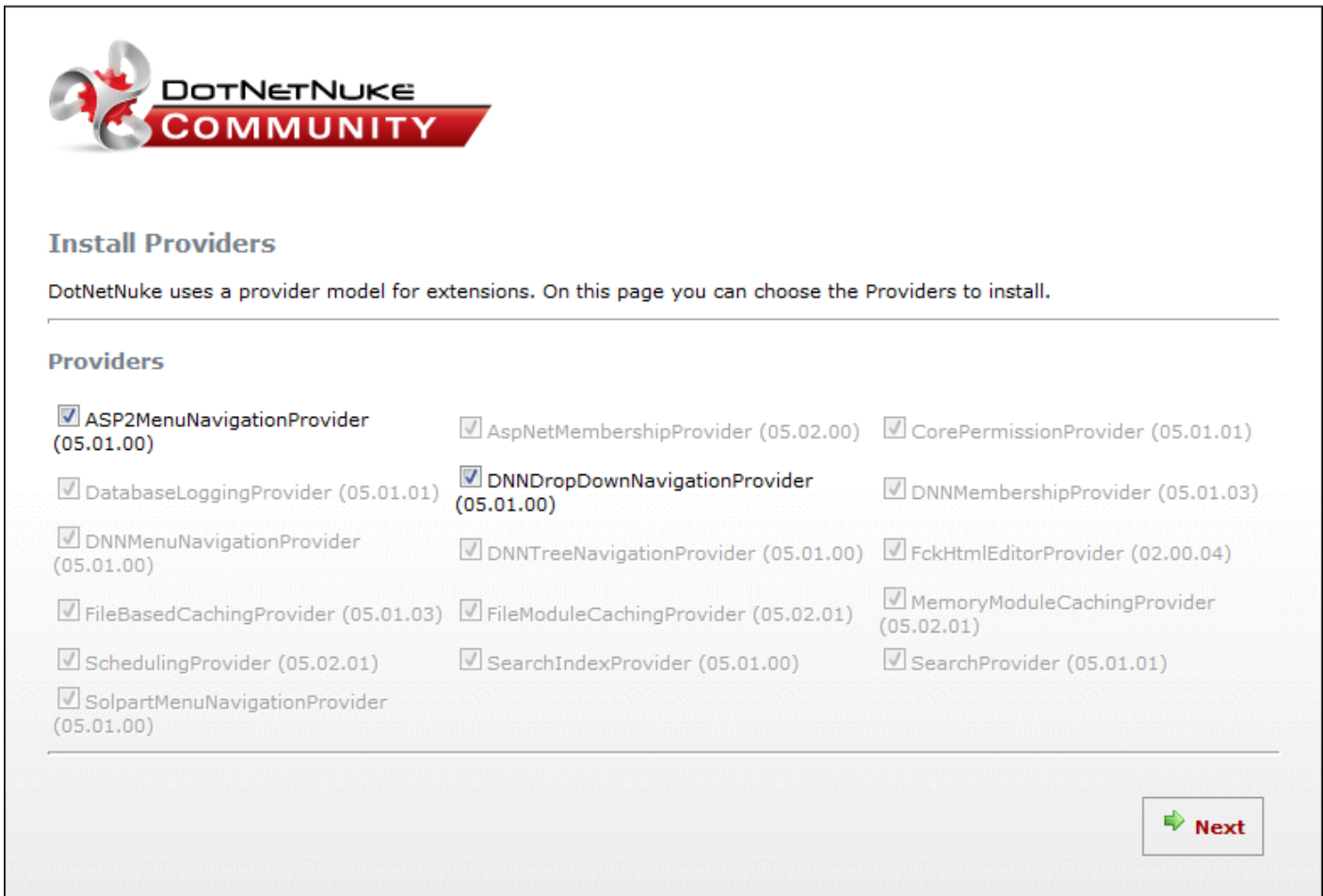
ActiveDirectory (05.00.02 (install LiveID (01.00.01) OpenID (02.00.00)


 Next

Step Ten - Install Providers

DotNetNuke uses a provider module for extensions. On this page a number of providers are automatically selected for installation. You can also select additional Providers to be installed. "Creating a Custom Installation Setup"

1. **OPTIONAL.** Check the check box beside each of the providers you wish to install.
2. Click the **Next**  button.



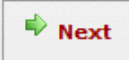


Install Providers

DotNetNuke uses a provider model for extensions. On this page you can choose the Providers to install.


Providers

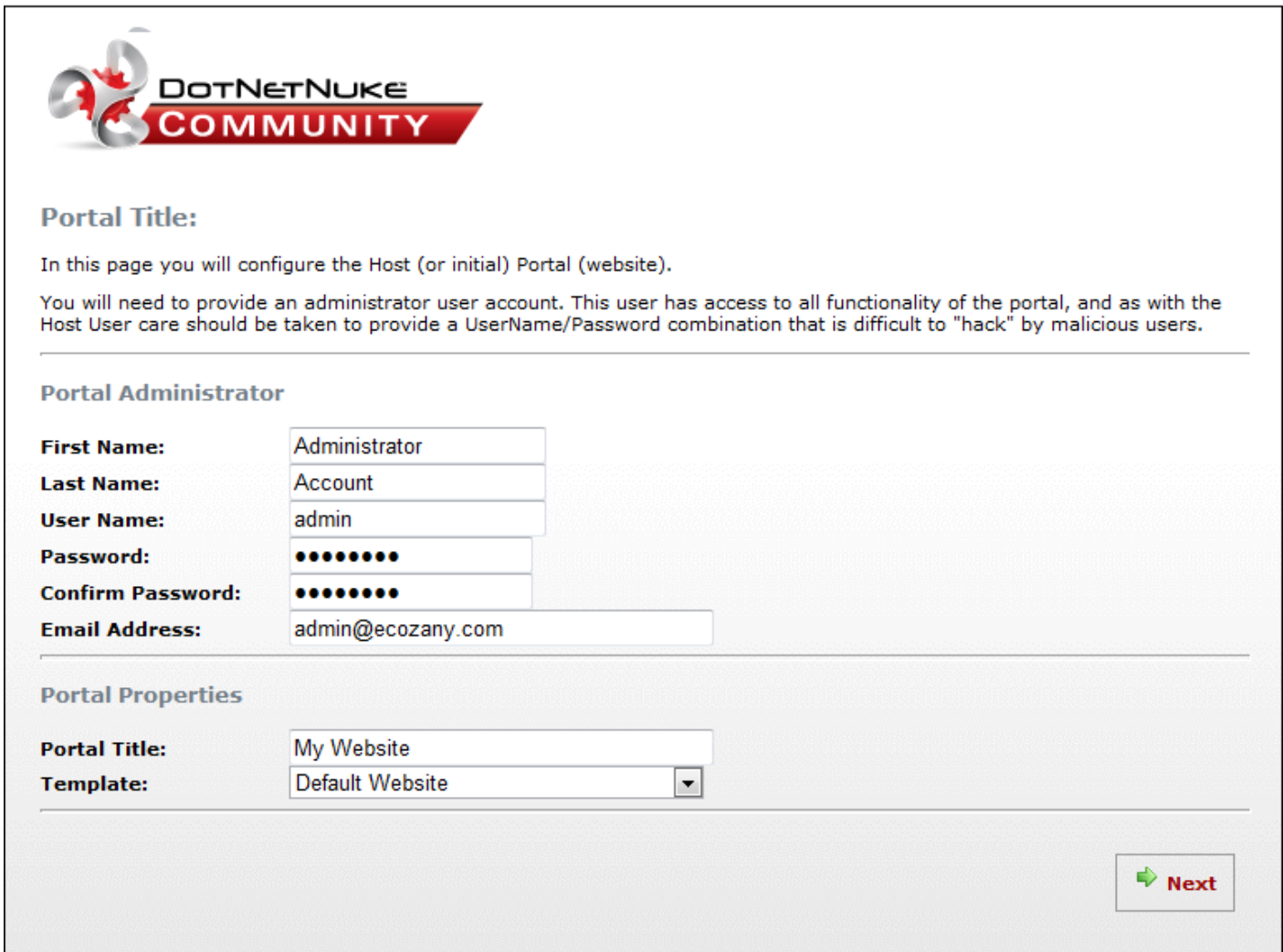
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ASP2MenuNavigationProvider (05.01.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AspNetMembershipProvider (05.02.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CorePermissionProvider (05.01.01)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DatabaseLoggingProvider (05.01.01)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNNDropDownNavigationProvider (05.01.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNNMembershipProvider (05.01.03)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNNMenuNavigationProvider (05.01.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNNTreeNavigationProvider (05.01.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FckHtmlEditorProvider (02.00.04)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FileBasedCachingProvider (05.01.03)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FileModuleCachingProvider (05.02.01)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MemoryModuleCachingProvider (05.02.01)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SchedulingProvider (05.02.01)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SearchIndexProvider (05.01.00)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SearchProvider (05.01.01)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SolpartMenuNavigationProvider (05.01.00)		




Step Eleven - Install Host Portal

1. In the **Portal Administrator** section, complete these details:
 - a. In the **First Name** text box, enter the Administrator's first name.
 - b. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the Administrator's last name.
 - c. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name for the Administrator.

- d. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Administrator.
 - e. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the password for the Administrator.
 - f. In the **Email Address** text box, enter the Administrator's email address.
2. In the **Portal Properties** section, complete these details:
 - a. In the **Portal Title** text box, enter a title for the portal.
 - b. At **Template**, select a template for the portal.
 3. Click the **Next**  button.





Portal Title:

In this page you will configure the Host (or initial) Portal (website).

You will need to provide an administrator user account. This user has access to all functionality of the portal, and as with the Host User care should be taken to provide a UserName/Password combination that is difficult to "hack" by malicious users.

Portal Administrator

First Name: Administrator

Last Name: Account

User Name: admin

Password: ●●●●●●●●

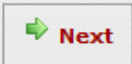
Confirm Password: ●●●●●●●●

Email Address: admin@ecozany.com

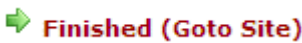
Portal Properties

Portal Title: My Website

Template: Default Website



Step Twelve - Congratulations

1. Click the **Finished (Go to Site)**  button to go to the newly installed portal.



Congratulations

Congratulations, you have successfully installed DotNetNuke.


 [Finished \(Goto Site\)](#)

Using the Typical Method of the Installation Wizard

The Typical installation method provides a quicker method of installation than the Custom method by making some "typical" choices during your DotNetNuke installation.

Step One - DotNetNuke Installation Wizard

Complete the following settings:

1. At **Select Installation Method**, select **Typical**.
2. At **Choose Language**, select a language to set the default portal language as well as the language used in this wizard. The following languages are available: English, Italian, French, German, Spanish, Catalan, Dutch, Polish, Turkish, Japanese, Russian, and Arabic.
3. Click the **Next**  **Next** button.



DotNetNuke Installation Wizard - Version 05.05.00

Welcome to the DotNetNuke Installation Wizard. This wizard will guide you through the installation of your DotNetNuke Application.

You may navigate through the Wizard using the Next and Previous buttons. On some pages you will see a third button "Test ...". This button will allow you to test the configuration before you continue, to see the effects of changes.

The first step is to select the installation method to use and to choose the language you would like to use for the Installation.



Select Installation Method:

- Custom** - The "Custom" installation method provides you with the ability to completely customise your DotNetNuke installation. Select this option if you wish to control which optional components get installed.
- Typical** - The "Typical" installation method makes some "typical" choices for you.
- Auto** - The "Auto" installation method bypasses the Wizard completely and uses the legacy Auto-Install procedure.

Choose Language:



Step Two - Checking File Permissions

1. Click the **Test Permissions**  **Test Permissions** button to test that this DNN installation can successfully create and delete folders and files. If the test is successful a success message reading "**Your site passed the permissions check**" is displayed at **File Permissions Summary**.
2. Click the **Next**  **Next** button.



Checking File Permissions

DotNetNuke has extensive file upload capabilities for content, modules, and skins. These features require custom security settings so that the application is able to create and remove files in your website.

This page checks the current file permissions to ensure that these features will work correctly.

Note: The test checks the root folder of your application. In most cases this is good enough, as child folders usually inherit their file and folder permissions from their parent. However, occasionally this test will pass, but there will be a more restrictive permission set on one of the descendant files/folders.

File Permissions Summary:

Create Folder


Create File

Delete File

Delete Folder

Your site passed the permissions check.

 **Previous**

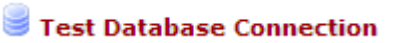

 **Next**

Step Three - Configure Database Connection

1. At **Select Database**, select one of the following options and complete the associated settings:

- **SQL Server 2005 (Express) File:**

- At **Server**, enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. If using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID).
- At **Filename**, enter the name of the Database File (located in the App_Data Directory).
- At **Integrated Security**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security, which means you will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option.

- Uncheck the check box if you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database and provide the UserId/Password combination.
 - i. At **User ID**, enter the UserID for the Database.
 - ii. At **Password**, enter the Password for the Database.
 - d. At **Run as db Owner**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are running the database as Database Owner
 - Uncheck the check box you will be running as the User ID specified.
 - e. **OPTIONAL**. At Object Qualifier, enter a "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.
- or **SQL Server 2000/2005 Database**:
 - a. In the **Server** text box, enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. If using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID).
 - b. In the **Database** text box, enter the Database name.
 - c. At **Integrated Security**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security and will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option.
 - Uncheck the check box if you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database and provide the UserId/Password combination.
 1. In the **User ID** text box, enter the UserID for the Database.
 2. In the **Password** text box, enter the Password for the Database.
 - d. At **Run as db Owner**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if you are running the database as Database Owner
 - Uncheck the check box if you will be running as the User ID specified.
 - e. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Object Qualifier** text box, enter a "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.
2. Click the **Test Database Connection**  button. If the test is successful message reading "**Connection Success**" is displayed. If the test is unsuccessful an error message is displayed.
 3. Click the **Next**  button.



Configure Database Connection

You can configure the database settings used by DotNetNuke on this page. If you are installing DotNetNuke in a "Hosting Account" your hosting provider should have provided you with the information.

There are two options for SQL Server 2005/2008. SQLServer 2005 and SQL Server 2008 support the use of Database Files. In most situations you should choose the Database option, but if you are using SQL Server 2005/2008 Express then you should use the File option.

Select Database:	<input type="radio"/> SQL Server 2005/2008 (Express) File	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SQL Server 2005/2008 Database
Server:	<input type="text" value=".\SQLEXPRESS"/>	Enter the Name or IP Address of the computer where the Database is located. (if using Oracle enter the Data Source (SID))
Database:	<input type="text" value="EcoZany"/>	Enter the Database name
Integrated Security:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Check this if you are using SQL Server's Integrated Security, which means you will be using your Windows account to access SQL Server. If you are using SQL Server Express then you will most likely need to check this option. If you have been given a UserId/Password to access your Database, leave this unchecked, and provide the UserId/Password combination.
Run as db Owner:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Check this if you are running the database as Database Owner - if left unchecked you will be running as the User ID specified
Object Qualifier:	<input type="text"/>	Enter an optional "prefix" to use for all your database objects - this helps ensure that there are no object name clashes.

[← Previous](#) [Next →](#)

Step Four - Run Database Installation Scripts

The installation of the database scripts will be running with the results displaying in the window below. When the "Installation of Database Complete" message displays in the window, the Next button is enabled and you can continue with the installation.

1. Click the **Next**  button.

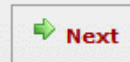


Run Database Installation Scripts

The installation of the database scripts should have started when this page loaded. The Next button will be disabled until the Installation of the Scripts is complete.

Completed Installing Database Scripts


```
Installing Database - Version 05.00.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.00.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.02...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.03...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.01.04...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.00...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.01...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.02...Success
Upgrading Database to Version 05.02.03...Success
Installation of Database Complete
```

Next


Step Five - Configure Host Account

1. Complete the following Host Account details:
 - a. In the **First Name** text box, enter the first name of the Host.
 - b. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the last name of the Host.
 - c. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name for the Host.
 - d. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Host.
 - e. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the password for the Host.
 - f. In the **Email Address** text box, enter the email address of the Host.

2. Complete the SMTP Server Settings:

- a. In the **Server** text box, enter your SMTP server name or IP address.
- b. At Authentication, select the required authentication method from **Anonymous**, **Basic** or **NTLM**.
- c. At **Enable SSL**, select from these option:
 - Check the check box to enable SLL (secure socket layers) for secure pages.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable.
- d. Click the **Test SMTP Settings**  button to test the SMTP Server Settings.

3. Click the **Next**  button.



Configure Host Account

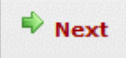
In this page you should provide the information for the Host or SuperUser User Account. This user has access to all portals created on the site, and care should be taken to provide a UserName/Password combination that is difficult to "hack" by malicious users.

First Name:	<input type="text" value="SuperUser"/>
Last Name:	<input type="text" value="Account"/>
User Name:	<input type="text" value="host"/>
Password:	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password:	<input type="password"/>
Email Address:	<input type="text" value="host@ecozany.com"/>


SMTP Server Settings

You can configure and test your SMTP Server settings.

Server:	<input type="text" value="127.01.0.6"/>
Authentication:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Anonymous <input type="radio"/> Basic <input type="radio"/> NTLM
Enable SSL:	<input type="checkbox"/>



Step Six - Install Host Portal

1. In the **Portal Administrator** section, complete these details:
 - a. In the **First Name** text box, enter the Administrator's first name.
 - b. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the Administrator's last name.
 - c. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name for the Administrator.
 - d. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Administrator.
 - e. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the password for the Administrator.
 - f. In the **Email Address** text box, enter the Administrator's email address.
2. In the **Portal Properties** section, complete these details:
 - a. In the **Portal Title** text box, enter a title for the portal.
 - b. At **Template**, select a template for the portal.
3. Click the **Next**  button.



Portal Title:

In this page you will configure the Host (or initial) Portal (website).

You will need to provide an administrator user account. This user has access to all functionality of the portal, and as with the Host User care should be taken to provide a UserName/Password combination that is difficult to "hack" by malicious users.

Portal Administrator

First Name:	<input type="text" value="Administrator"/>
Last Name:	<input type="text" value="Account"/>
User Name:	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Password:	<input type="password" value="●●●●●●"/>
Confirm Password:	<input type="password" value="●●●●●●"/>
Email Address:	<input type="text" value="admin@ecozany.com"/>

Portal Properties

Portal Title:	<input type="text" value="EcoZany"/>
Template:	<input type="text" value="Default Website"/>

Next


Step Seven - Congratulations

1. Click the **Finished (Go to Site)** | **Finished (Goto Site)** | button to go to the newly installed portal.



Congratulations

Congratulations, you have successfully installed DotNetNuke.

 [Finished \(Goto Site\)](#)

Creating a Custom Installation Setup

DNN allows you to modify what happens during the installation process by simply adding or removing files in the Install folder. During the installation process DNN looks in the folders under Install to see if there are any new files that need to be processed during the installation. You can modify how DNN installs by adding or removing files from these sub-folders.

Here's how to include one of these add-ins to your DNN Custom Method installation:

1. Download DNN Installation zip file from the DotNetNuke.com web site.
2. Unzip the installation file.
3. In the unzipped installation file, go to the **Install** folder. This folder contains a number of sub-folders. Some of these folders contain aspects of DNN that can be modified during the installation process.
4. Add one of the below zip files to the correct sub-folder to make it available during installation:
 - **Authentication Systems:** Add authentication system zip files to the Install/**AuthSystem** folder.
 - **Containers:** Add container package zip files to the Install/**Container** folder.
 - **Languages:** Add language resource package zip files to the Install/**Languages** folder.
 - **Modules:** Add module installation zip files to the Install/**Module** folder. In this folder you can see there are some modules with a .resources extension and some with a .zip extension. The ones with a .zip extension are automatically installed and the ones with .resources are available in a check box list for you to decide during the install process if they get installed.

- **Providers:** Add provider zip files to the **Install/Provider** folder.
- **Skins:** Add skin package zip files to the Install/**Skin** folder.

Managing Your User Account

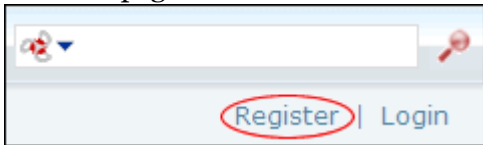
Signing Up for a User Account


Signing up as a Registered User

How to sign up to become a registered user of a site.

Mandatory fields are indicated by the **Required**  button.

1. Click the [Register](#) link (typically located in the top right corner of the page). This opens the User Registration page.



2. In the **User Registration** section, complete all of these fields:
 - a. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name. Your user name is private and cannot be changed.
 - b. In the **First Name** text box, enter your first name.
 - c. In the **Last Name** text box, enter your last name.
 - d. In the **Display Name** text box, enter the name you want to be displayed to other site members.
 - e. In the **Email Address** text box, enter a valid email address.
3. In the **Enter a Password** section, complete all of these fields:
 - a. In the **Password** text box, enter your password. Note: Passwords are case sensitive.
 - b. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter your password.
4. Click the  [Register](#) link.

Tip: Depending on the set up of the site, you may be automatically logged in and your account details displayed, or you may need to open your welcome email to obtain additional information to complete login.

User Registration

User Registration

**Note: Membership to this portal is Public. Once your account information has been submitted, you will be immediately granted access to the portal environment. All fields marked with a red arrow are required. - (Note: - Registration may take several seconds. Once you click the Register button please wait until the system responds.)*

User Name:

First Name:

Last Name:

Display Name:

Email Address:

Enter a password.

Password:

Confirm Password:

[Register](#)

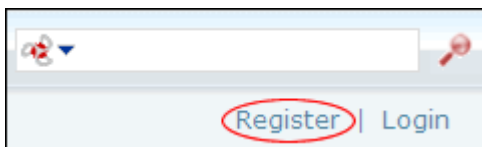
Signing up as a Registered User

Signing up as a Registered User with a Security Code


How to sign up to become a registered user of a site when a security code is required.

Mandatory fields are indicated by the **Required** button.


1. Click the [Register](#) link (typically located in the top right corner of each page). This opens the User Registration page.



2. In the **User Registration** section, complete all of these fields:
 - a. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name. Your user name is private and cannot be changed.
 - b. In the **First Name** text box, enter your first name.
 - c. In the **Last Name** text box, enter your last name.











- d. In the **Display Name** text box, enter the name you want to be displayed to other site members.
- e. In the **Email Address** text box, enter a valid email address.
3. In the **Enter a Password** section, complete all of these fields:
 - a. In the **Password** text box, enter your password. Note: Passwords are case sensitive.
 - b. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter your password.
 - c. At **Security Code**, enter the code displayed as a picture in the text box below.
4. Click the  [Register](#) link.

Tip: Depending on the set up of the site, you may be automatically logged in and your account details displayed, or you may need to open your welcome email to obtain additional information to complete login.





 **User Registration**


User Registration

***Note:** Membership to this portal is Public. Once your account information has been submitted, you will be immediately granted access to the portal environment. All fields marked with a red arrow are required. - *(Note: - Registration may take several seconds. Once you click the Register button please wait until the system responds.)*

 User Name:	<input type="text" value="JoSmith"/>	
 First Name:	<input type="text" value="Joanne"/>	
 Last Name:	<input type="text" value="Smith"/>	
 Display Name:	<input type="text" value="Hot Shot"/>	
 Email Address:	<input type="text" value="jo@domain.com"/>	

Enter a password.

 Password:	<input type="password" value="....."/>	
 Confirm Password:	<input type="password" value="....."/>	

 **Security Code:**

QFAkn4

Enter the code shown above in the box below

 [Register](#)

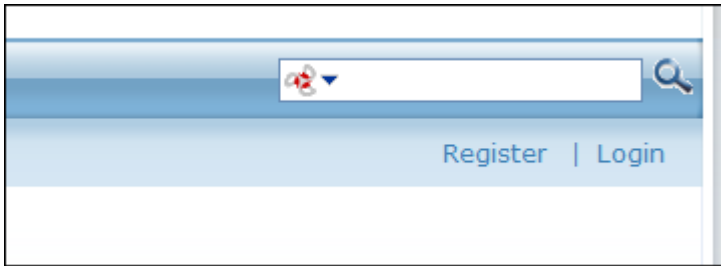
Signing up as a Registered User with a Security Code

Logging In and Out


Logging into a Site

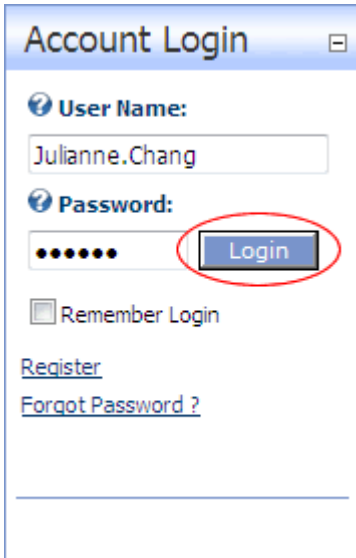
How to login to a site using the typical basic login method.

1. Click the [Login](#) link to display the Account Login module (also titled the User Log In module). This link is typically located in the top right corner of each page - OR - Navigate to an Account Login module.



2. In the **User Name** text box, enter your user name.
3. In the **Password** text box, enter your password.
4. Click the **Login** button.

*Tip: Mouse over or click the **Help**  icons displayed beside the **User Name** and **Password** fields to view login help.*

A screenshot of the 'Account Login' form. The form has a title bar that says 'Account Login'. It contains two input fields: 'User Name:' with the text 'Julianne.Chang' and 'Password:' with six dots. To the right of the password field is a blue 'Login' button, which is circled in red. Below the password field is a checkbox labeled 'Remember Login'. At the bottom of the form are two links: 'Register' and 'Forgot Password?'. There is a horizontal line at the very bottom of the form area.

Logging into a Site

Related Topics:

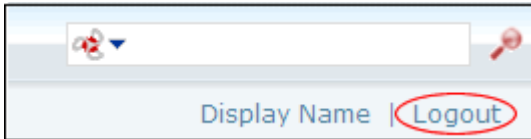
- See "Logging in with LiveID"
- See "Logging in with OpenID"

- See "Logging in with a Security Code"
- See "Logging in with a Verification Code"
- See "Logging in with a Verification Code and a Security Code"

Logging Out of a Site

How to log out of a site and cancel the Remember Login setting.

1. Click the Logout link which is typically located in the top right corner of each page.



Tip: The action of logging out automatically cancels the Remember Login setting. To exit a site without logging out, simply close your web site browser. This does not cancel the Remember Login setting.

Remembering Login Credentials

How to set a site to remember your login credentials. Selecting the Remember Login will automatically log you into that site next time you visit it. This feature adds a cookie to your computer so it will not work on another computer. It is also portal specific so it will not log you in to other portals within this DNN installation. Note: At the time of writing this setting expired after 24 hours.

1. Click the Login link (which typically located in the top right corner) - OR - Navigate to an Account Login module.
2. In the **User Name** text box, enter your user name.
3. In the **Password** text box, enter your password.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Enter your verification code or the security code if required.
5. Check the **Remember Login** check box.
6. Click the **Login** button.

Account Login

User Name:
myusername

Password:
●●●●●●●●●●

Login

Remember Login

[Register](#)
[Forgot Password ?](#)




Tip: To exit a site, simply close your web site browser. If you click the Logout link you will need to login next time.

Related Topic:

- See "Enabling Remember Me on Login Control"


Retrieving your Password

If you forget your password you can have it sent to the email address associated with your user account.

1. Click the [Login](#) link or navigate to an Account Login module.
2. Click the [Forgot Password ?](#) link. This opens the Retrieve Password page.
3. In the **User Name** text box, enter your user name.
4. **OPTIONAL.** If the **Security Code** field is displayed, enter the code displayed as a picture into the Security Code text box.
5. Click  [Send Password](#). If the password is successfully send, the following message is displayed:
 -  Password Has Been Sent To Your Email Address.
6. Click  [Proceed to Login](#) to go to the User Login module.

Retrieve Password

You can request your password by providing your User Name and the Password will be sent to the email address you provided during registration.

 User Name:

myusername



 Send Password

Retrieving your Password

Managing Your Profile

Changing your Password

How to update the password associated with your user profile.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Click on your [Display Name] link (typically located in the top right corner of the site) - OR -Navigate to a My Profile module. This displays the My Profile page.
3. Click the Edit Profile link. This displays the Manage Profile page.
4. Click the  Manage Password link.
5. In the **Change Password** section, update the following fields:
 - a. In the **Current Password** text box, enter your current password.
 - b. In the **New Password** text box, enter your new password.
 - c. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter your new password.
6. Click the  Change Password link.

Manage Profile

[Manage User Credentials](#) [Manage Password](#) [Manage Profile](#) [Manage Services](#)

Password Last Changed: Tuesday, March 16, 2010

Password Expires: Password does not Expire

Change Password
In order to change your password, you will need to provide your current password, as well as your new password and a confirmation of your new password.

Current Password: [password field]

New Password: [password field]

Confirm Password: [password field]

[Change Password](#)

Changing your Password

Managing your Profile Photo

How to manage the photo associated with your user profile.

1. Go to the Manage Profile page of the My Profile module. See "Managing your User Profile"
2. Go to the **Photo** field and select from these options:
 - **To Upload a Image:**
 - a. Click the [Upload File](#) link.
 - b. Click the **Browse...** button and select the file from your computer.

Photo:

Folder
My Folder

File
C:\Images\RoseBooth.g

[Browse...](#)

[Save File](#) [Cancel](#)

- c. Click the  Save File link to save the selected file. This displays the selected photo.

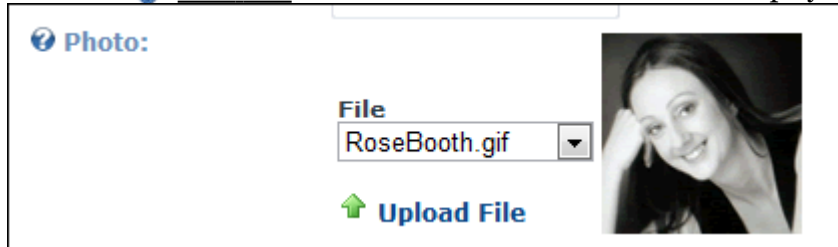




Photo:

File
RoseBooth.gif


 Upload File

- d. Click the  Update link.

• **To Select a Previously Uploaded Image:**

- a. At **File**, select the required photo from the drop-down list.
- b. Click the  Update link.

• **Remove all Images:**

- a. At **File**, select **<None Specified>**.
- b. Click the  Update link.

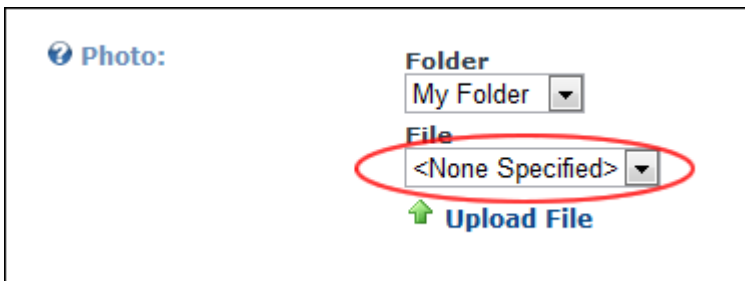



Photo:

Folder
My Folder

File
<None Specified>


 Upload File

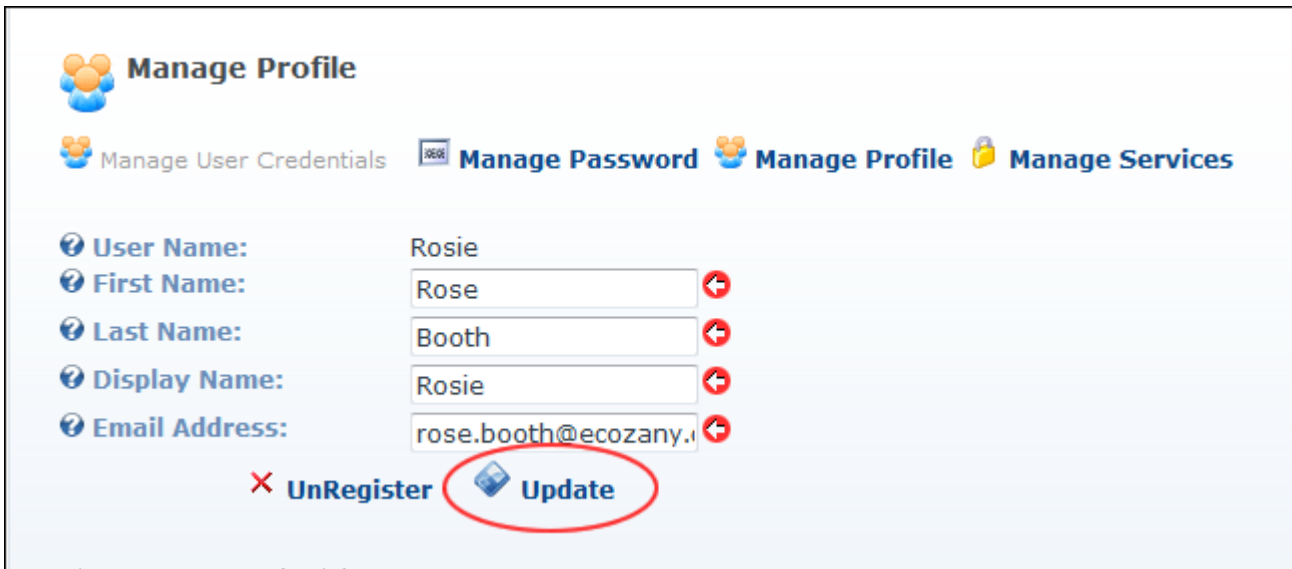
Managing your User Credentials

How to manage your user credentials including your names and email address. Note: Your user name cannot be changed.

Mandatory fields are indicated by the **Required**  button.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Click on your [Display Name] link (typically located in the top right corner of the site) - OR -Navigate to a My Profile module. This displays the My Profile page.
3. Click the Edit Profile link. This displays the Manage Profile page.
4. Update any of these User Credentials:

- a. In the **First Name** text box, edit your first name.
 - b. In the **Last Name** text box, edit your last name.
 - c. In the **Display Name** text box, edit the name you want to be displayed to other site members.
 - d. In the **Email Address** text box, edit your email address.
5. Click the  Update link.





Managing your User Credentials

Managing your User Profile

How to manage all your personal user details including your name, contact details, biography, photo, time zone and preferred locale. The fields used in this example are typical for a US based site, however sites in other countries will typically use local names for address fields, etc. You can also set the visibility of each field. **Public** sets a field as visible to anyone who is able to view your user profile, **Members Only** sets a field as visible to authenticated site members, **Admin Only** sets a field as visible to Administrators only.

Mandatory fields are indicated by the **Required**  button.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Click on your [Display Name] link (typically located in the top right corner of the site) - OR -Navigate to a My Profile module. This displays the My Profile page.
3. Click the Edit Profile link.
4. Click the  Manage Profile link.

5. Complete or edit any of the following fields and select the **Visibility** of each field:
- a. In the **Prefix** text box, enter a prefix for the name. E.g. Mrs
 - b. In the **First Name** text box, enter the first name. E.g. Elizabeth
 - c. In the **Middle Name** text box, enter the first name. E.g. Angela
 - d. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the first name. E.g. Smith
 - e. In the **Suffix** text box, enter a suffix for the name. E.g. MD
 - f. In the **Unit** text box, enter a unit number. E.g. Flat 2
 - g. In the **Street** text box, enter the street address. E.g. 101 Blackburn Road
 - h. In the **City** text box, enter the city. E.g. New York
 - i. In the **Region** text box, enter/select the region. E.g. New York
 - j. At **Country**, select a country from the drop-down box.
 - k. In the **Postal Code** text box, enter/select the postal code. E.g. 11111
 - l. In the **Telephone** text box, enter your telephone number.
 - m. In the **Cell/Mobile** text box, enter your mobile number.
 - n. In the **Fax** text box, enter your facsimile number.
 - o. In the **Website** text box, enter your web site URL. E.g. www.domain.com
 - p. In the **IM** text box, enter you instant messenger id. E.g. EASmith@domain.com
 - q. At **Photo**, select, upload or remove a photo or image for your profile. See "Managing your Profile Photo"
 - r. In the **Biography** Editor, enter a biography.
 - s. At **Time Zone**, select a time zone from the drop-down box.
 - t. At **Preferred Locale**, select the name of your locale from the drop-down box.
 - i. Select one of these options:
 - **Display English Name**, select to display your locale in English. E.g. Italy.
 - **Display Native Name**: Select to display the native spelling of your locale. E.g. Italia.
6. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Tip: The list of available languages are managed using the Languages module.



Manage Profile



Manage User Credentials



Manage Password



Manage Profile



Manage Services

Prefix:

First Name:

Middle Name:

Last Name:

Suffix:

Unit:

Street:

City:

Region:

Country:

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Postal Code:

Telephone:

Cell/Mobile:

Fax:

Website:

IM:

Photo:

Folder



File

Biography:

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

A rich text editor toolbar with multiple rows of icons for text manipulation (bold, italic, underline, font color, background color), alignment (left, center, right, justified), indentation, bulleted and numbered lists, link management, and font style (font family, size, color). Below the toolbar are two dropdown menus for 'Style' and 'Format', and another set of dropdowns for 'Font' and 'Size'.

Time Zone:

Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Preferred Locale:

Display English Name Display Visibility: Public Members Only Admin Only

Subscribing to Member Services

Subscribing to a Member Service

How to subscribe to a members service. Once a user subscribes they immediately gain access to any modules or pages restricted to this service. The user may need to refresh their web site browser to view additional areas of access.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Click on your [Display Name] link (typically located in the top right corner of the site) - OR - Navigate to a My Profile module. This displays the My Profile page.
3. Click the [Edit Profile](#) link. This displays the Manage Profile page.
4. Click the [Manage Services](#) link. This displays a list of the available services.
5. Click the [Subscribe](#) link beside the service you want to subscribe to. This displays the "You have successfully subscribed to the [Service Name] role" message at the top of the module.

Tip: Where a fee is charged for the service you will be redirected to the payment Web site to complete the payment process.

Manage Profile

[Manage User Credentials](#) [Manage Password](#) [Manage Profile](#) [Manage Services](#)

This section allows you to manage your subscriptions on the site. Some services may require payment. If this is the case you will be redirected to a payment site. When you return to this site, you can check back here to view your subscription.

	Name	Description	Service Fee	Trial Fee	Expiry Date
Subscribe	Newsletter	Subscribe to our monthly newsletter for details of our latest products, special discounts and exciting competitions.	Free	Free	
Unsubscribe	Subscribers	A public role for portal subscriptions	Free	Free	

If you have been given a special RSVP code you can subscribe to these Services by entering the code in the RSVP Code field below and clicking the "Subscribe" button next to the field.

[RSVP Code:](#) [Subscribe](#)

Subscribing to a Member Service

Subscribing to a Service with an RSVP Code

How to subscribe to a members service using an RSVP code provided by an Administrator. Subscription grants you immediate access to any pages or content restricted to service subscribers.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Click on your [Display Name] link (typically located in the top right corner of the site) - OR - Navigate to a My Profile module. This displays the My Profile page.
3. Click the [Edit Profile](#) link. This displays the Manage Profile page.
4. Click the [Manage Services](#) link. This displays a list of the available services.
5. In the **RSVP Code** text box, enter the code supplied to you.
6. Click the [Subscribe](#) link to the right of the RSVP Code text box. This displays the following messages:



You have successfully subscribed to the [Service Name] role.

You have been successfully added to the role(s) associated with the RSVP Code entered. In order to get access to the new services you will need to Logout and then Login to the site again.

7. Logout and then Login to the site to gain access to the new services.

Tip: Where a fee is charged for the service you will be redirected to the payment web site to complete the payment process.

Manage Profile

[Manage User Credentials](#)
[Manage Password](#)
[Manage Profile](#)
[Manage Services](#)

This section allows you to manage your subscriptions on the site. Some services may require payment. If this is the case you will be redirected to a payment site. When you return to this site, you can check back here to view your subscription.

	Name	Description	Service Fee	Trial Fee	Expiry Date
Subscribe	Newsletter	Subscribe to our monthly newsletter for details of our latest products, special discounts and exciting competitions.	Free	Free	
Unsubscribe	Subscribers	A public role for portal subscriptions	Free	Free	

If you have been given a special RSVP code you can subscribe to these Services by entering the code in the RSVP Code field below and clicking the "Subscribe" button next to the field.

RSVP Code:

[Subscribe](#)

Subscribing to a Service with an RSVP Code

Subscribing to a Service with an RSVP Link

How to subscribe to a members service using an RSVP link provided by an Administrator. Subscription grants you immediate access to any pages or content restricted to service subscribers.

1. Login to the site. "Logging into a Site"
2. Enter the RSVP link into the Address window or your web site browser - OR - click on the RSVP link in an email message. E.g. <http://www.domain.com/Default.aspx?rsvp=rsvpcode&portalid=0>
3. Logout and then Login to the site to gain access to the new services.

Configuring DotNetNuke Host Settings

Viewing Configuration Details

How to view Configuration details for your DNN installation. Most of these fields cannot be editable using this page. Exceptions are the **Check For Upgrades?** and **Notify Host?** fields.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Configuration** section. The following details are displayed:
 - **DotNetNuke Product:** The DotNetNuke product you are running. E.g. DotNetNuke Professional Edition
 - **DotNetNuke Version:** The version of this DotNetNuke installation.
 - At **Display Beta Message?**, Check the check box to display a message indicating that the running version is a Beta release.
 - At **Check For Upgrades?**, Check the check box to set this DNN Installation to check the DotNetNuke web site for new framework upgrades.
 - **Upgrade Available?:** If **Check For Upgrades** is checked , an icon is displayed at this field whenever an upgrade is available.
 - **Data Provider:** The provider name which is identified as the default data provider in the web.config file.
 - **.NET Framework:** The .NET Framework version which this DNN installation is running on. This is specified through IIS.
 - If the current Framework is not being used, the [Update Site to current Framework](#) is displayed.
 - **ASP.NET Identity:** The Windows user account under which this DNN installation is running. This account requires folder permissions on the server.
 - **Server Name:** The Name of the Server.
 - **IP Address:** The IP Address of the Server.
 - **Permissions:** Code Access Security is used to minimize the attack surface however some aspects of DotNetNuke need different permissions to fulfill their tasks. When retrieving data from the database Reflection is needed and when accessing outside web sites such as with the News feed module Web-Permission is needed.
 - **Relative Path:** If the portal is in a virtual directory the relative path from the root is displayed here as shown below. The site this image was taken from was running on Vista Ultimate IIS 7 as a Virtual Directory.

- **Physical Path:** The physical path is the path to the root of the portal. This is the Server.MapPath result.
- **Server Time:** Displays the current date and time of the web server.
- **GUID:** The GUID (Global Unique Identifier) is a unique identifier that can be used by module developers to create unique licenses per portal.
- **Is Web Farm?:** If this check box is checked then this DNN installation is running in a web farm configuration. This setting can be enabled or disabled in the root configuration file for your portal.

☐ **Basic Settings**

Enter basic settings for your Hosting Account

☐ **Configuration**

DotNetNuke Product:	DotNetNuke Professional Edition
DotNetNuke Version:	05.02.01 (55)
Check For Upgrades?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Upgrade Available?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Data Provider:	SqlDataProvider
.NET Framework:	3.5 Update Site to current Framework
ASP.NET Identity:	NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE
Server Name:	Lorraine-PC
IP Address:	fe80::c52:3401:8369:b113%13
Permissions:	ReflectionPermission, WebPermission, AspNetHostingPermission
Relative Path:	/
Physical Path:	C:\DotNetNuke\Releases\DotNetNuke521PE
Server Time:	2/9/2010 5:21:44 AM
GUID:	146FEFDA-2C67-4EBD-A012-0587FB33D892
Is Web Farm?	<input type="checkbox"/>


Viewing Configuration Details

Configuring Host Details

Setting the Host Portal

By default, DNN loads the first portal created as the default. Changing the portal selected here changes which portal is loaded by default. The Host portal is also the portal associated with the Host skin object.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Host Details** section.

4. At **Host Portal**, select the host portal from the drop-down list.
5. Click the  Update link.




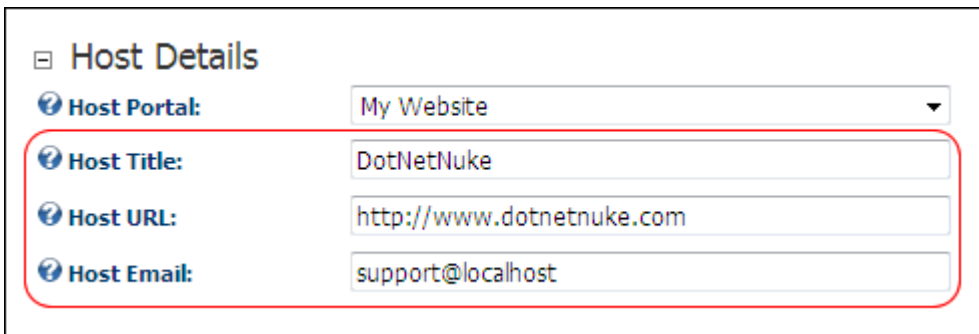
The screenshot shows a form titled "Host Details" with four fields: "Host Portal" (a dropdown menu with "My Website" selected), "Host Title" (text box with "DotNetNuke"), "Host URL" (text box with "http://www.dotnetnuke.com"), and "Host Email" (text box with "philip.beadle@philipbeadle.net"). A red box highlights the "Host Portal" dropdown menu.

Setting the Host Portal

Setting the Host Details

The host title appears on all portals within this DNN installation which have a skin that includes the [HOST-NAME] skin token. Where the host URL field is also completed, the Host Title functions as a link to the URL. The Host Email field sets the email address of the host portal. If the Help skin object is included in the skin it displays the word Help and provides an emailto: link to the Portal Administrator for normal logged in registered users. If a portal administrator is logged in the Help link provides a mailto: link to the Host Email address.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Host Details** section.
4. In the **Host Title** text box, enter a name for your Web site such as your business or company name. E.g. DotNetNuke
5. In the **Host URL** text box, enter your company URL. E.g. http://www.dotnetnuke.com
6. In the **Host Email** text box, enter the email address of the host. E.g. support@domain.com. Alternatively, leave this field blank to hide this field.
7. Click the  Update link.





The screenshot shows the same "Host Details" form as above, but with a red box highlighting the "Host Title", "Host URL", and "Host Email" text boxes. The "Host Title" is "DotNetNuke", the "Host URL" is "http://www.dotnetnuke.com", and the "Host Email" is "support@localhost".

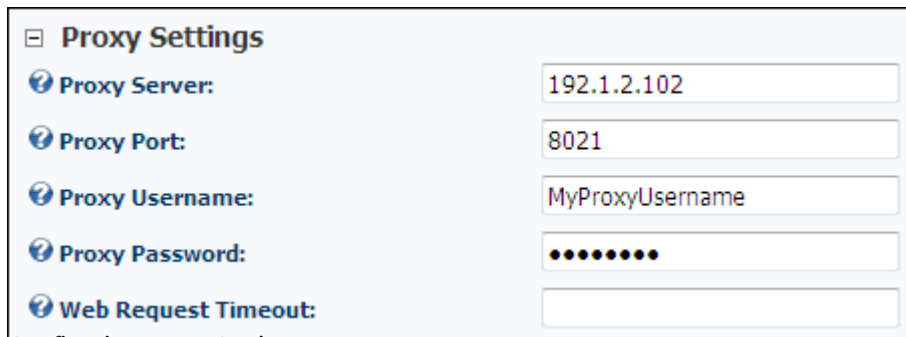
Setting the Host Details

Configuring Proxy Settings

Configuring Proxy Settings

This setting may be required by your hosting provider to enable certain modules such as the RSS News Feed to process outgoing web requests.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Proxy Settings** section.
4. In the **Proxy Server** text box, enter the proxy server IP address. E.g. 192.1.2.102. Enter the domain or IP address if you are using a proxy server.
5. In the **Proxy Port** text box, enter the proxy port address. E.g. 8021
6. In the **Proxy Username** text box, enter the username provided by your hosting provider.
7. In the **Proxy Password** text box, enter the password provided by your hosting provider.
8. Click the  Update link.





The screenshot shows a configuration panel titled "Proxy Settings" with a collapse icon on the left. It contains five input fields, each with a blue circular icon to its left: "Proxy Server" with the value "192.1.2.102", "Proxy Port" with "8021", "Proxy Username" with "MyProxyUsername", "Proxy Password" with masked characters (dots), and "Web Request Timeout" which is currently empty.

Configuring Proxy Settings

Setting the Web Request Timeout Period

How to set the web request time out period for all portals. A web request can exist for a set period of time and if this time is exceeded the web page requesting browser is returned an error that the page is unavailable.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Proxy Settings** section.
4. In the **Web Request Timeout** text box, enter the time period in seconds the web request should timeout after. E.g. Enter 60 to set to 60 seconds.
5. Click the  Update link.

Proxy Settings

Proxy Server: 192.1.2.102

Proxy Port: 8021

Proxy Username: MyProxyUsername

Proxy Password: ●●●●●●



Web Request Timeout: 60

Setting the Web Request Timeout Period

Configuring SMTP Server Settings

Setting the SMTP Server and Port

How to set the SMTP Server address and an alternate port for new portals. SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is the mail server which sends outgoing mail.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **SMTP Server Settings** section.
4. In the **SMTP Server and port** text box, enter one of the following options:
 - Enter the SMTP address. E.g. mail.dotnetnuke.com
 - Specify an alternate port by adding a colon and the port number. E.g. smtp.dotnetnuke.com:587
 - Enter the SMTP server name only to use default port number. E.g. 25
5. At **SMTP Authentication**, select from the following options:
 - **Anonymous**. This is the default option.
 - **Basic**
 - a. In the **SMTP Username** text box, enter a SMTP Username if required.
 - b. In the **SMTP Password** text box, enter a SMTP Password if required
 - **NTLM**
6. Click the  Update link.

SMTP Server Settings

SMTP Server and port: [Test](#)

SMTP Authentication: Anonymous Basic NTLM

SMTP Enable SSL:

SMTP Username:

SMTP Password:

Setting the SMTP Server and Port

Testing Outgoing Email Settings

How to test the outgoing mail settings for all portals.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize** the **SMTP Server Settings** section.
4. Click the [Test](#) link to send a test email to the Host account. One of the following results is displayed:
 - If the test is successful the Email Sent Successfully message is displayed.
 - If the test is not successful, a message describing the error is displayed.

Tip: If you used the web.config workaround to send emails without a SMTP server, look in the folder specified for the .eml file.

SMTP Server Settings

SMTP Server and port: [Test](#)

SMTP Authentication: Anonymous Basic NTLM

SMTP Enable SSL:

SMTP Username:



SMTP Password:

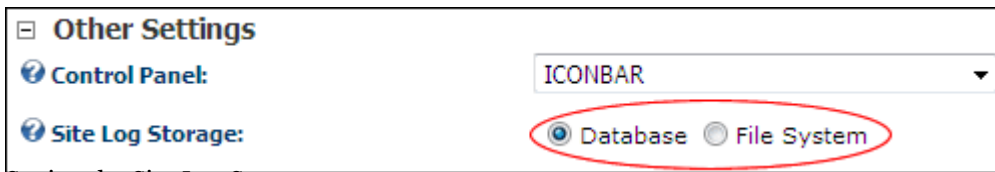
Testing Outgoing Email Settings

Other Settings

Setting the Site Log Storage

How to set the storage location for the site log. The Log file can be stored in one of two methods.



1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. At **Site Log Storage**, select from the following options:
 - **Database**: Stores the Site Log data in the DNN Database.
 - **File System**: Stores the Site Log data in the default directory under the portals subdirectory.
5. Click the  Update link.




Setting the Site Log Storage

Setting the Site Log Buffer

This setting controls the Site Log Buffer for all new sites. The Site Log Buffer exists to allow Site Log Events (e.g. Logins, Navigation, etc) to be collected into a buffer before being sent to the database. By default this is set at 1 item, which means that the buffer will be sent to the database when it has one event in it. For example if the Site Log Buffer is set to 20 items, then 20 log events will need to occur before the buffer will be sent to the database.



1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. In the **Site Log Buffer** text box, enter the number of items to buffer before sending them to the database.
5. Click the  Update link.



Setting the Site Log Buffer

Setting the Site Log History

How to set the default Site Log history time period for all new sites. This setting can be managed on existing portals via Host > Portals Page.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. In the **Site Log History** text box, enter the number of days. E.g. 20.
5. Click the  Update link.





The screenshot shows the 'Other Settings' section of a web application. It contains four settings:

- Control Panel:** A dropdown menu with 'ICONBAR' selected.
- Site Log Storage:** Radio buttons for 'Database' (selected) and 'File System'.
- Site Log Buffer :** A text input field with '1' and the label 'Items'.
- Site Log History:** A text input field with '0' and the label 'Days'. This field is highlighted with a red rectangular box.

Setting the Site Log History

Setting the Auto-Unlock Time for User Accounts

How to set the auto-unlock time period following multiple unsuccessful attempts to login to a user account. After an account is locked out due to unsuccessful login attempts, it can be automatically unlocked with a successful authentication after a certain period of time has elapsed. Enter the number of minutes to wait until the account can be automatically unlocked. Enter "0" to disable the auto-unlock feature. Auto-unlock is set to 10 minutes by default.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. In the **Auto-Unlock Accounts After** text box, enter the time period in minutes.
5. Click the  Update link.

Other Settings

Control Panel: ICONBAR

Site Log Storage: Database File System

Site Log Buffer : 1 Items

Site Log History: 0 Days

Disable Users Online?



Users Online Time: 20 Minutes

Auto-Unlock Accounts After: 10 Minutes

Setting the Auto-Unlock Time for User Accounts

Managing Allowable File Extensions

How to add, edit and remove the file extensions that are allowed to be uploaded to this DNN installation by site Administrators and other authorized users. The following file extensions are permitted by default: jpg, jpeg, jpe, gif, bmp, png, doc, xls, ppt, pdf, txt, xml, xsl, css, zip.


1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. In **Allowable File Extensions** window, perform one of the following:
 - To add a file extension: Enter the extension preceded by a comma (,). E.g. ,fla,wma
 - To remove a file extension: Remove the three letter extension and the preceding comma (,).
5. Click the  Update link.

<input type="checkbox"/> Other Settings	
Control Panel:	ICONBAR
Site Log Storage:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Database <input type="radio"/> File System
Site Log Buffer :	1 Items
Site Log History:	0 Days
Disable Users Online?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Users Online Time:	20 Minutes
Auto-Unlock Accounts After:	10 Minutes
Allowable File Extensions:	swf,jpg,jpeg,jpe,gif,bmp,png,doc,xls,ppt,pdf, txt,xml,xsl,css,zip
Scheduler Mode:	Request Method
Enable Event Log Buffer?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Help URL:	http://www.dotnetnuke.com/default.aspx?tabid
Enable Module Online Help:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Auto-Sync File System?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Managing Allowable File Extensions

Enabling/Disabling the Scheduler

How to enable or disable the Scheduler on all portals and set the scheduler mode.


1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize** the **Other Settings** section.
4. At **Scheduler Mode**, select from the following:
 - **Disabled**: Select to disable the scheduler.
 - **Timer Method**: Select to maintain a separate thread to execute scheduled tasks while the worker process is alive.
 - **Request Method**: Select to execute tasks when HTTP Requests are made.
5. Click the  Update link.

Scheduler Mode: Request Method
 Enable Event Log Buffer? Disabled
 Help URL: Timer Method
 Request Method tabid=787

Enabling/Disabling the Scheduler

Disabling/Enabling Event Log Buffer

How to enable or disable the Event Log Buffer for all new portals.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. At **Event Log Buffer**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to enable.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable.

Help URL:
 Enable Module Online Help:


5. Click the  Update link.


Enable Event Log Buffer?


Disabling/Enabling Event Log Buffer

Setting the Online Help URL

How to set the URL for the Online Help service for all portals. This is the URL associated with the Online Help button accessed via module menus. Leave this field blank to remove Online Help for the Admin/Host areas of DotNetNuke. The default setting is to the Online Help provided by DNN Corp which is located at <http://www.dotnetnuke.com/About/DotNetNukeOnlineHelp/tabid/787/Default.aspx>.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.


4. In **Help URL** text box, choose one of these options:
 - a. **To set a custom URL:** Enter the URL to your help resource.
 - b. **To disable Online Help:** Leave this field blank.
 - c. **To restore Online Help URL to the default DotNetNuke Online Help:** Enter `http://www-dotnetnuke.com/default.aspx?tabid=787`.
5. Click the  Update link.


 Help URL:	<input type="text" value="http://www.dotnetnuke.com/default.aspx?tabid=787"/>
 Enable Module Online Help:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Setting the Online Help URL

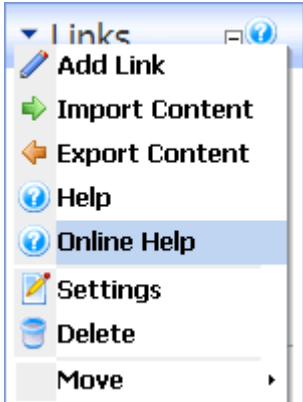
Enabling/Disabling Online Module Help

How to enable or disable online help option on the module menu. If enabled, a Help URL for the module will need to be added in the Module Definitions (See Host Settings, Module Definitions). For custom modules, this URL should be provided by the module development company.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
4. At **Enable Module Online Help**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to enable.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable.

 Help URL:	<input type="text" value="http://www.dotnetnuke.com/default.aspx?tabid=787"/>
 Enable Module Online Help:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

5. Click the  Update link.



Online Module Help Enabled

Creating and Managing Portals

About the Portals Page

The Portals page allows the Host to create and maintain all portals within this DNN installation. It also allows the Host to generate a template of an existing portal for duplication on another DNN portal installation.

The portals page displays a list of all existing portals including the following details of each:

- **Portal Title:** The Title of the portal as set on the Admin > Site Settings page.
- **Portal Aliases:** The http aliases for the portal.
- **Users:** The number of Registered Users for the portal.
- **Disk Space:** The amount of space in Mega Bytes (MB) allocated to the portal.
- **Hosting Fee:** The monthly fee set for the portal.
- **Expires:** The date when hosting for this portal is set to expire.

What is the difference between a parent and child portal?

- A Parent portal is associated with a unique URL. E.g. <http://www.dotnetnuke.com>. This generally involves purchasing a Domain Name from an Internet Registrar, setting the Primary/Secondary DNS entries to point to the Hosting Providers DNS Server, and having your Hosting Provider map the Domain Name to the IP Address of your account. You can also use the IP Address of your site without a Domain Name (i.e. 65.174.86.217). If you need to have multiple Domain Names pointing to the same portal then you can add multiple aliases in the portal edit interface. Do not create a Parent Portal until all of the DNS mappings are in place or else you will not be able to access your portal.
- A Child portal is a sub portal of your Hosting Provider account. Child portals are accessed by entering the URL address which includes a Parent domain name followed by the portals name. E.g. www.dotnetnuke.com/directory. An example of a valid Child Portal Name is www.dotnetnuke.com/portalname. A Child portal can be converted into a Parent portal at any time by adding a Portal Alias entry.

Note: Portals are created using the default setting as defined on the Host Settings module (such as hosting fee, hosting space, site log history, etc). Once a portal has been created, these properties can be modified for individual portals.

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	All	Expired
	Portal Id	Title	Portal Aliases																			Users	Pages	Disk Space	Hosting Fee	Expires			
	1	Child	localhost/dotnetnuke500/child																			2	17	100	20.00	11/28/2010			
	3	Child2	localhost/dotnetnuke500/child2																			1	16	100	20.00	11/30/2010			
	0	My Website	localhost/dotnetnuke500																			5	106	0	0.00				


[+ Add New Portal](#)
[← Export Portal Template](#)
[× Delete Expired Portals](#)

The Portals Page

Adding a Parent Portal

How to add a new parent portal to this DNN installation. New portals are created with the default settings as defined in the Host Settings module. E.g. host fee, host space, site log history. These settings can be modified once the portal is created. When the portal is created the Administrator receives a message with the login details you have provided for them however their password is not included for security reasons.

1. Navigate to Host > **Portals**.
2. Select **+ Add New Portal** from the module menu - OR - click the **+ Add New Portal** link. This displays the Add New Portal page.
3. In the **Portal Setup** section, complete the following fields:
 - a. At **Portal Type**, select **Parent**.
 - b. In the **Portal Alias** text box, enter an alias for the portal. E.g. www.domain.com
 - c. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Home Directory** text box, click the Customize link and enter a new location for this portals home directory (relative to the DNN installation root directory). Note: Click the Customize link a second time to return to default setting.
 - d. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Title** text box, enter the name of the portal. E.g. MyWebsite.
 - e. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Description** text box, enter description of the portal.
 - f. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Keywords** text box, enter the key words for the portal separated by a comma (,).
 - g. At **Template**, select a template from the drop-down list.
4. In the **Security Settings** section, complete the following fields:
 - a. In the **Username** text box, enter a username for the Administrator.
 - b. In the **First Name** text box, enter the Administrator's first name.

- c. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the Administrator's last name.
 - d. In the **Email** text box, enter the Administrator's email address.
 - e. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Administrator.
 - f. In the **Confirm** text box, re-enter the password for the Administrator.
5. Click the  Create Portal link.

▼ Add New Portal

☐ Portal Setup

Portal Type: Parent Child

Portal Alias:

Home Directory:
[Customize](#)

Title:

Description:

Keywords:

Template:
Default Website Template

☐ Security Settings

Username:

First Name:

Last Name:

Email:

Password:

Confirm:




← [Cancel](#)

*Note: Once your portal is created, you will need to login using the Administrator information specified above.

Adding a Parent Portal

Adding a Child Portal

How to add a new child portal to this DNN installation. New portals are created with the default settings as defined in the Host Settings module. E.g. host fee, host space, site log history. These settings can be modified once the portal is created. When the portal is created the Administrator receives a message with the login details you have provided for them however their password is not included for security reasons.

1. Navigate to Host > **Portals**.
2. Select  **Add New Portal** from the module menu - OR - Click the  Add New Portal link. This displays the Add New Portal page.
3. In the **Portal Setup** section, complete the following fields:
 - a. At **Portal Type**, select **Child**.
 - b. In the **Portal Alias** text box, enter an alias for the portal. E.g. www.domain.com/Child.
Note: Child Portal names must be unique.
 - c. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Home Directory** text box, click the Customize link and enter a new location for this portals home directory (relative to the DNN installation root directory).
Note: Click the Customize link a second time to return to default setting.
 - d. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Title** text box, enter the name of the portal. E.g. MyChildWebsite.
 - e. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Description** text box, enter description of the portal.
 - f. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Keywords** text box, enter the key words for the portal separated by a comma (,).
 - g. At **Template**, select a template from the drop-down list.
4. In the **Security Settings** section, complete the following fields:
 - a. In the **Username** text box, enter a username for the Administrator.
 - b. In the **First Name** text box, enter the Administrator's first name.
 - c. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the Administrator's last name.
 - d. In the **Email** text box, enter the Administrator's email address.
 - e. In the **Password** text box, enter a password for the Administrator.
 - f. In the **Confirm** text box, re-enter the password for the Administrator.
5. Click the  Create Portal link.

Add New Portal

Portal Setup

Portal Type: Parent Child

Portal Alias: localhost/DotnetNuke500/Child

Home Directory: Portals/[PortalID]
[Customize](#)

Title: MyChildWebsite

Description: MyChildWebsite is a satellite business of our parent company MyWebsite. We provide health and wellbeing services exclusively to the suburb

Keywords: mywebsite,massage,acupuncture,armadale,melbourne,health,wellbeing

Template: DotNetNuke
Default Website Template

Security Settings

Username: admin


First Name: John

Last Name: Smith

Email: john.smith@domain.com

Password: ●●●●●●

Confirm: ●●●●●●



 [Cancel](#)

***Note:** Once your portal is created, you will need to login using the Administrator information specified above.

Adding a Child Portal

Exporting a Portal Template

How to export a portal template for use with the Site Wizard or when creating a new portal. The portal template includes all portal pages, pages settings and module settings. Module content for modules which allow import/export can optionally be included.

1. Navigate to Host > **Portals**.
2. Select  **Export Portal Template** from the menu - OR - click the  [Export Portal Template](#) link.
3. At **Portal**, select the portal to be exported as a template.
4. In the **Template File Name** text box, enter a name to save the new template portal as. E.g. Small Business
5. In the **Template Description** text box, enter a description of the portal template. E.g. Five page web site for a small business. Pages are: Home, Products, Services, About Us, Contact Us.
6. At **Include Content**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to copy portal content to the template. This will copy the content of any modules which have export/import capabilities.
 - Uncheck the check box to NOT copy the portal content.
7. Click the [Export Template](#) link. The address where the exported template file/s are now saved is displayed. The template file has a .template extension. If you included the portal content a second file with a .template.resources extension is also saved.
8. **OPTIONAL**. Go to the saved template files and save them to your local computer for future use.

Tip: See Host > File Manager for details on how to import a portal template for use in another DNN installation.

▼ Export Template
?

🔗 Portal:

🔗 Template File Name:

🔗 Template Description:

Five page website for all members includes Home Page, Blog, Articles Repository, Portfolio Repository and Help. Includes sample content.

🔗 Include Content:






Export Template

Exporting a Portal Template

Editing Portal Host Settings

How to edit hosting settings including hosting space, page quota, user quota, site log history and premium modules for a portal.

1. Navigate to Host > **Portals**.
2. Click the **Edit** button beside the title of the required portal. This opens the Edit Portals page.
3. **Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section.
4. **Maximize** the **Host Settings** section.
5. At **Expiry Date**, click the Calendar link and select the date that hosting contract for this portal expires.
6. In the **Hosting Fee** text box enter the monthly hosting fee for this site.
7. In the **Disk Space** text box, enter the available disc space in Megabytes (MB) allowed for this portal - OR - Leave this field blank for unlimited space.
8. In the **Page Quota** text box, enter the maximum number of pages allowed for this portal. Leave this field blank for unlimited pages.

9. In the **User Quota** text box, enter the maximum number of users allowed for this portal. Leave this field blank for unlimited user accounts.
10. In the **Site Log History (Days)** text box, enter the number of days that Site Log activity is kept for this portal.
11. At **Premium Modules**, perform the following to add or remove premium modules on this site:
 - To add a premium module to the portal:
 1. Click on the module name in the **Available Modules** list.
 2. Click the **Add Module**  button. The module is now listed in the Selected Modules list.
 - To add all premium modules to the portal:
 1. Click on the module name in the **Available Modules** list.
 2. Click the **Add All Modules**  button. All modules are now listed in the Selected Modules list.
 - To remove a premium module from the portal:
 1. Click on the module name in the **Selected Modules** list.
 2. Click the **Remove Module**  button. The module is now removed from the Selected Modules list.
 - To remove all premium modules from the site:
 1. Click on the module name in the **Selected Modules** list.
 2. Click the **Remove All Modules**  button. All modules are now removed from the Selected Modules list.
12. Click the  Update link.

Host Settings

Expiry Date: 7/26/2009 [Calendar](#)

Hosting Fee: 100

Disk Space: 20

Page Quota: 1000

User Quota: 1000

Site Log History (Days): 90

Premium Modules

Available Modules

- Host Settings
- Lists
- Portals
- Scheduler
- Search Admin
- SQL

Selected Modules

- Security
- Tabs
- Vendors
- Banners
- File Manager
- Site Log
- Newsletters
- Recycle Bin






Editing Portal Host Settings

Installing and Allocating Modules

Installing Available Extensions

How to batch install one or more extensions which are available on your DNN installation. Extensions include modules, skins, containers, languages and authentication systems (E.g. Active Directory, CardSpace, LiveID and OpenID). Once an extension is installed can be managed and allocated to one or more portals using the Host > Extensions page.

1. Navigate to Host > **Extensions**.
2. Select  **Install Available Extensions** from the Extensions module menu - OR - Click the  [Install Available Extensions](#) link at the base of the module.
3. Go to the **Available Modules** section.
4. Check the check box beside each module to be installed.
5. Go to the **Available Skins** section.
6. Check the check box beside each skin to be installed.
7. Go to the **Available Containers** section.
8. Check the check box beside each container to be installed.
9. Go to the **Available Languages** section.
10. Check the check box beside each language to be installed.
11. Go to the **Available Authentication Systems** section.
12. Check the check box beside each authentication system to be installed.
13. Click the  [Install Selected Extensions](#) link.

▼ Install Available Extensions

The following extensions are available for you to install. Select the extension(s) you would like to install and then click the Install button.

Available Modules

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Adsense (01.00.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> Announcements (04.00.03) | <input type="checkbox"/> Blog (03.05.01) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Documents (04.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Events (05.00.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> FAQs (04.04.00) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Feedback (04.04.03) | <input type="checkbox"/> FormAndList (05.00.02) | <input type="checkbox"/> Forum (04.04.03) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Help (03.00.02) | <input type="checkbox"/> IFrame (04.03.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Links (04.00.01) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Map (01.00.09) | <input type="checkbox"/> MarketShare (01.00.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Media (03.02.03) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> NewsFeeds (04.00.01) | <input type="checkbox"/> Reports (05.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Repository (03.01.15) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Store (02.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> Survey (04.60.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> UsersOnline (05.01.00) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Wiki (04.01.00) | <input type="checkbox"/> XML (04.03.04) | |

Available Skins

No Skins Available

Available Containers

No Containers Available

Available Languages

No Languages Available

Available Authentication Systems

- ActiveDirectory (05.00.02)

 **Install Selected Extensions**

Installing Selected Extensions

Related Topics:

- See "Installing a New Module"

Installing a New Module

How to install a new module to your DNN installation.

1. Navigate to Host > **Module Definitions**.
2. Select **Install Module** from the module menu - OR - lick the [Install Module](#) link.

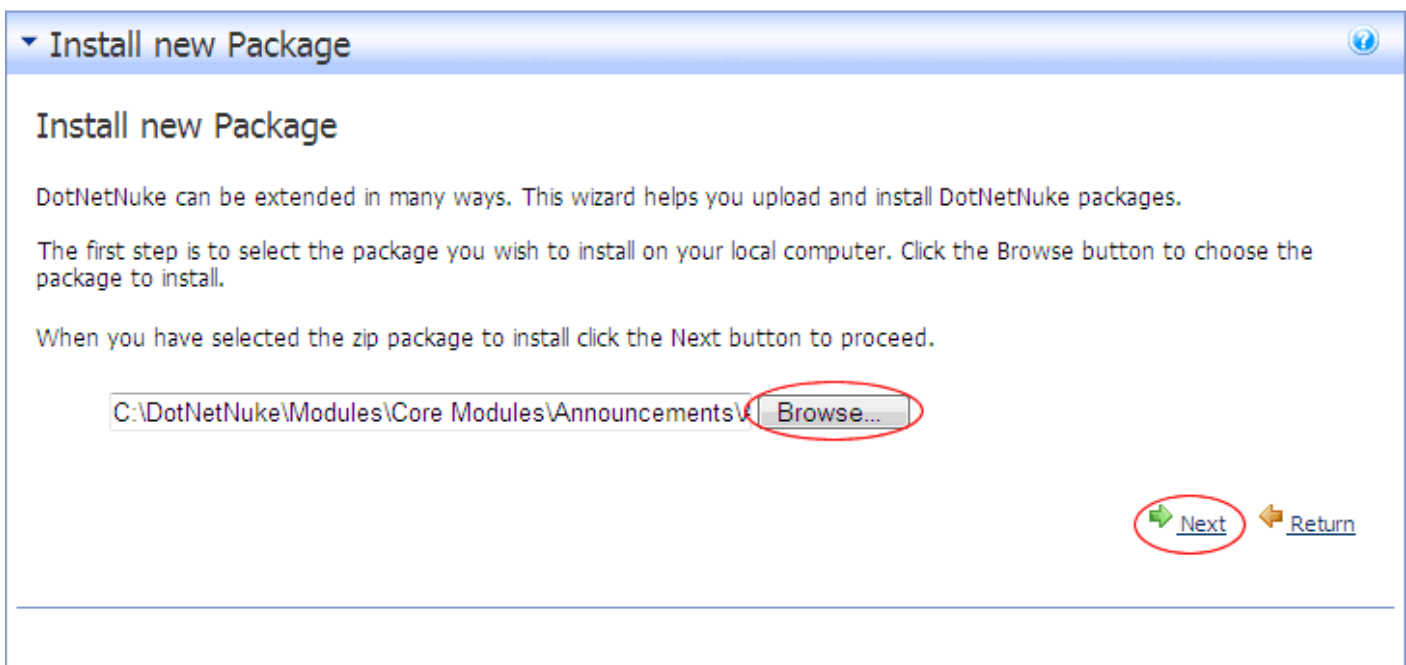
3. On the **Install New Package** page complete the following fields:

a. At **Ignore File Restrictions**, select one of the following:

- Uncheck to observe file restrictions.
- Check the check box to ignore file restrictions. Checking this option will display the message "**WARNING**: You have elected to ignore the check for restricted file types. This action poses a possible security risk for your site, and you should only do this if the package you are installing is from a trusted source."

b. Click the **Browse...** button and select the module zip file from your computer.


c. Click the  [Next](#) link.



4. On the **Package Information** page:










a. Review the information about this package.

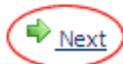

b. Click the  [Next](#) link.


▼ Install new Package 


Package Information

The following information was found in the package manifest.

-  **Name:** DNN_Announcements
-  **Type:** Module
-  **Friendly Name:** Announcements
-  **Description:** This module renders a list of announcements. Each announcement includes title, text and a "read more" link.
-  **Version:** 4.0.1
-  **Owner:**
-  **Organization:**
-  **Url:**
-  **Email Address:**


 [Next](#)  [Return](#)



5. On the **Release Notes** page:
 - a. Review the release notes for this package.
 - b. Click the  [Next](#) link.


▼ Install new Package 

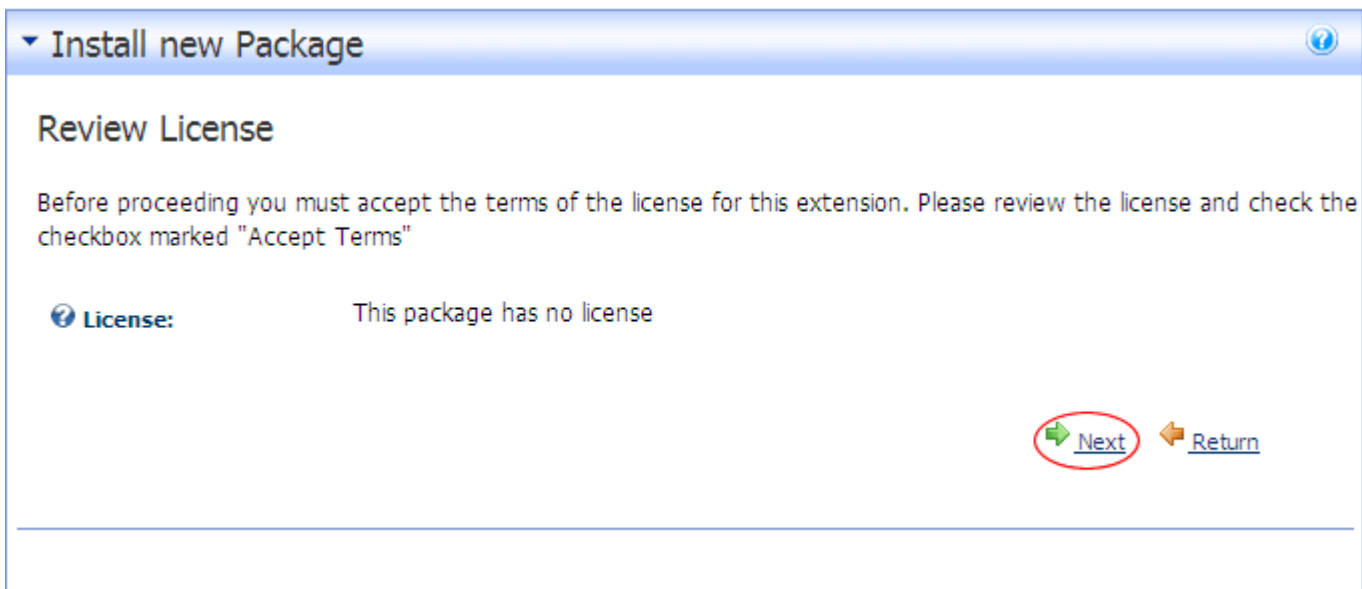
Release Notes


You can review the Release Notes for this package.

-  **Release Notes:**

 [Next](#)  [Return](#)

6. On the **Review License** page:
 - a. Review the license for this package.
 - b. **OPTIONAL.** If available, check the Accept Terms check box to accept the license terms of this package.
 - c. Click the  [Next](#) link.



7. On the **Package Installation Report** page:
 - a. Review the results of the package installation which details the success or failure of the upload.
8. Click the  [Return](#) link to return to the Module Definitions page.

▼ Install new Package ?

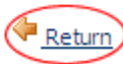
Package Installation Report

See below for the results of the package installation

StartJob Starting Installation

Info Starting Installation - DNN_Survey
 Info Starting Installation - Script
 Info Begin Sql execution
 Info Folder Created - C:\DotNetNuke\Releases\DotNetNuke_05.00.00_InstallB3\DesktopModules\Survey\Providers\DataProviders\SqlDataProvider
 Info Created - Providers\DataProviders\SqlDataProvider\03.01.00.SqlDataProvider
 Info Executing 03.01.00.SqlDataProvider
 Info Start Sql execution: 03.01.00.SqlDataProvider file
 Info End Sql execution: 03.01.00.SqlDataProvider file
 Info Created - Providers\DataProviders\SqlDataProvider\03.03.00.SqlDataProvider
 Info Executing 03.03.00.SqlDataProvider
 Info Start Sql execution: 03.03.00.SqlDataProvider file
 Info End Sql execution: 03.03.00.SqlDataProvider file
 Info Created - Providers\DataProviders\SqlDataProvider\04.00.20.SqlDataProvider
 Info Executing 04.00.20.SqlDataProvider
 Info Start Sql execution: 04.00.20.SqlDataProvider file
 Info End Sql execution: 04.00.20.SqlDataProvider file
 Info Created - Providers\DataProviders\SqlDataProvider\04.00.60.SqlDataProvider
 Info Executing 04.00.60.SqlDataProvider
 Info Component installed successfully - File
 Info Installation committed
 Info Installation successful. - DNN_Survey
 Info Deleted temporary install folder

EndJob Installation successful.



Installing a Module


Related Topics:













- See "Installing Available Extensions"


Enabling/Disabling Premium Module

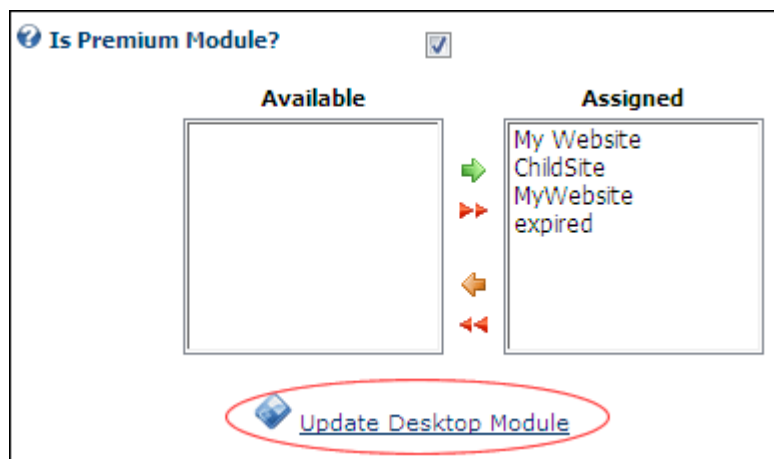
How to set a module as premium using the Module Definitions page. Premium modules can then be assigned (made available for insertion) on selected portals. When a module is set as premium it is selected (assigned) to all existing portals and can then be assigned/unassigned from these portals as required. Once a module is set as

premium, it will be a premium module on all newly created portals. I.e. It will not be auto-assigned to newly created portals.

1. Navigate to Host > **Module Definitions**.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required module.

▼ Module Definitions	
Name	Description
  Announcements	This module renders a list of announcements. Each announcement has a "read more" link.
  Authentication	Allows you to manage authentication settings for sites using Windows Authentication.
  Banners	Banner advertising is managed through the Vendors module in the Admin interface. You can select the number of banners to display as well as the banner type.
  Feed Explorer	Allows users to browse RSS feeds using a tabbed user interface.
  File Manager	Administrators can manage the files stored in their upload directory to upload new files, download files, delete files, and synchronize. It also provides information on the amount of disk space used and available.
  Google AdSense	Allows you to create Google AdSense ads on your site.







3. Go to the **Extension Settings** section.
4. At **Is Premium Module?** select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set the module as premium.
 - Uncheck the check box to set the modules as not premium.
5. Click the  [Update Desktop Module](#) link located at the base of the **Extension Settings** section.

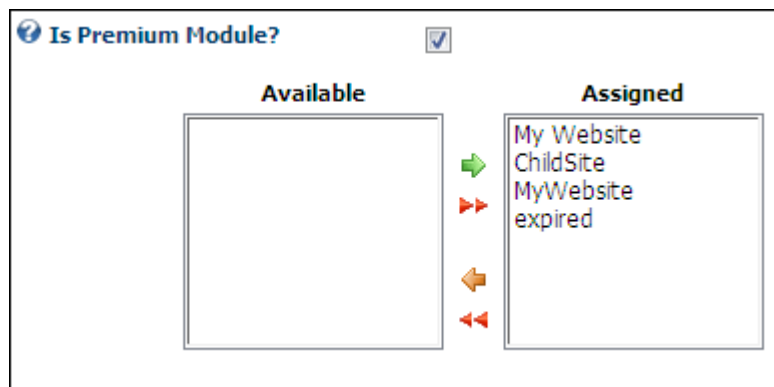


Enabling/Disabling Premium Module

Assigning/Unassigning Premium Modules to Portals

How to assign or unassign a premium module on one or more portals. This tutorial assumes the module has already been set as premium. Note: Premium modules are not auto-assigned to a portal when it is created.

1. Navigate to Host > **Module Definitions**.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required module.
3. Go to the **Extension Settings** section.
4. At **Is Premium Module?** choose from these options:
 - To assign the module to a portal, click on the portal name in the Available list and click the **Add**  button.
 - To assign the module to all portals, click the **Add All**  button.
 - To remove the premium module from one portal, click on the portal name in the Assigned list and click the **Remove**  button.
 - To remove the premium module from all portals, click the **Remove All**  button.
5. Click the  Cancel link to return to the Module Definitions page.



Assigning/Unassigning Premium Modules to Portals

Building Your Portal and Adding Content

Configuring Site Settings For A Portal

About the Site Settings Page

The Site Settings page enables Administrators to configure basic and advanced site settings including design, advertising, payment, DNN usability, and user registration settings, etc. Where two or more languages are enabled on a site, different site settings can be configured for each language as required.

SuperUsers have access to additional Advanced Settings sections called Portal Aliases, SSL Settings and Host Settings. See "Editing Portal Host Settings" and other tutorials in the "Creating and Managing Portals > Managing Portals" section of this manual. See "Editing Portal Host Settings"

Note: For details on using the Stylesheet Editor see the "Managing Site Design" section of this manual. See "About the Stylesheet Editor"

Site Settings

Select Language:

Native Name English Name

English (United States) ▼

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for your site.

Site Details

Title:

My Website

Description:

My Website

Keywords:

DotNetNuke, DNN, Content, Management, CMS

Copyright:

Copyright 2009 by DotNetNuke Corporation

GUID:

8B4B594B-A350-41B8-A3C3-9190160A9EF6

Marketing

Search Engine:

Google

Submit

Site Map URL:

http://dotnetnukeprofessional050401.ir

Submit

Verification:

Create

Banners:

None Site Host

Appearance

Advanced Settings

In this section, you can set up more advanced settings for your site.

Security Settings

User Registration:

None Private Public Verified

Page Management

Splash Page:

<None Specified>

Home Page:

Home

Login Page:

<None Specified>

Registration Page:

<None Specified>

User Profile Page:

User Profile

Home Directory:

Portals/0

Payment Settings

Usability Settings

Other Settings

Stylesheet Editor


Update

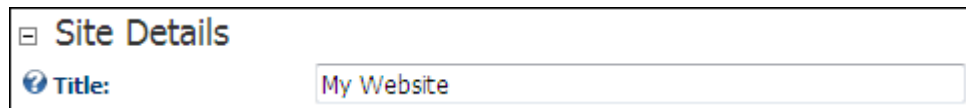
Site Details

Setting the Site Title

How to set the site title which is displayed in the title bar of the web site browser.

Tip: This title is also used as a tool tip when a user places their mouse over the site logo. See "Setting the Site Logo"

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Site Details** section.
4. In the **Title** text box, enter a title for the site.



Site Details



Title: My Website

5. Click the  Update link.



Setting the Site Description

How to set the description used by search engines to index this site.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Site Details** section.
4. In the **Description** text box, enter a description for this site.
5. Click the  Update link.

Site Details

Title:



Description:

Setting the Site Description

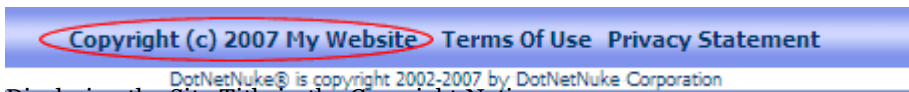
Displaying the Site Title in the Copyright Notice

How to set the copyright notice for the site to automatically display the current year and the site title. This tutorial explains how to display the Site Title and a copyright notice for the current year. E.g. If the title of your site is **My Web site**, leave the field blank to display **Copyright (c) 2009 My Web site**. If the Title field is blank, the copyright notice will display the text **Copyright (c) 2009**.

The copyright notice displays on pages where the applied skin contains the [COPYRIGHT] skin object. In the default DNN skin, the copyright notice appears at the bottom each page.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Site Details** section.
4. In the **Copyright** text box, leave the field blank.
5. Click the  Update link.


Copyright:




Displaying the Site Title in the Copyright Notice

Creating a Unique Copyright Notice

How to create a unique copyright notice for this site. The copyright notice displays on pages where the applied skin contains the Copyright skin object. In the default DNN skin, the copyright notice appears at the bottom each page.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.

3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Site Details** section.
4. In the **Copyright** text box, enter your copyright text.

 **Copyright:**

5. Click the  Update link.

Copyright (C) 2005-2007 - My Website [Terms Of Use](#) [Privacy Statement](#)



DotNetNuke® is copyright 2002-2007 by DotNetNuke Corporation


A Unique Copyright Notice


Appearance

Setting the Site Logo

How to set the logo for this site. The site logo displays on pages where the applied skin contains the Logo skin object. A site logo is typically displayed in the top left corner of all site pages, as it is in the default DNN skins.


1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Appearance** section.
5. At **Logo**, select an existing image file - OR - Upload a new image file.


 **Appearance**

 **Logo:**

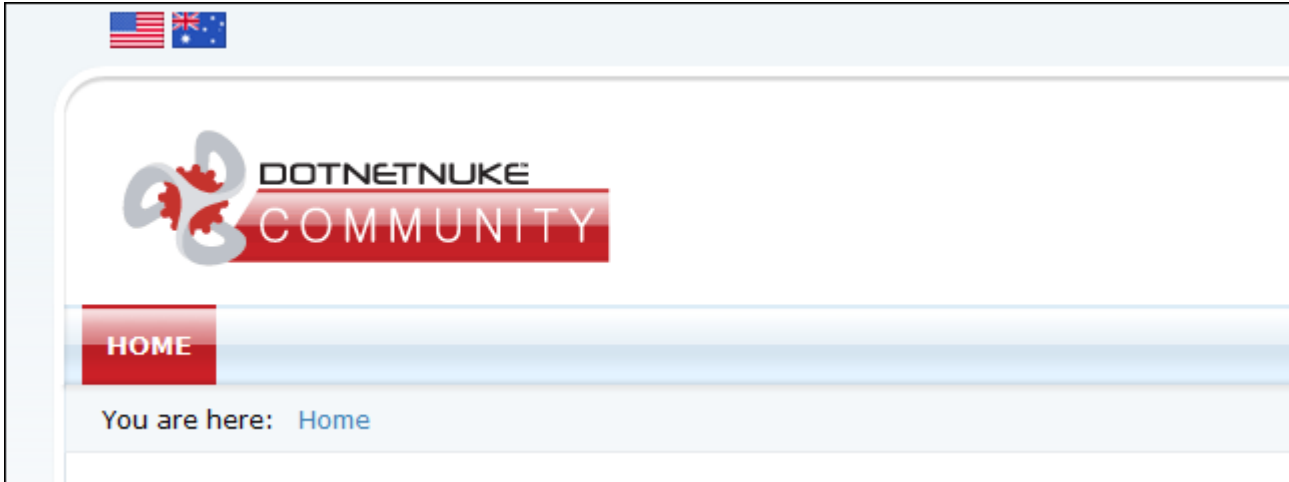
Folder

File

 **Upload File**



6. Click the  Update link.






The Site Logo


Payment Settings

Setting the Payment Processor

How to configure payment processing for this site. This enables you to receive payment from users who subscribe to Member Services (roles) on this site. PayPal is the only payment processor included by default, however your DNN developer can configure DNN to work with other providers. This tutorial uses PayPal as the example.

Tip: Enabling the sandbox allows test orders to be sent to the payment gateway without taking live transactions.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. **Maximize**  the **Advanced Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Payment Settings** section.
5. At **Currency**, select the currency to process payments with.
6. At **Payment Processor**, select a payment processing company from the drop-down list. E.g. PayPal
7. Click [Go To Payment Processor WebSite](#) and sign up for an account.
8. In the **Processor UserId** text box, enter the UserID code provided by PayPal.
9. In the **Processor Password** text box, enter the Password provided by PayPal.
10. **OPTIONAL.** In the **PayPal Return URL** text box, enter the page URL that subscribers are redirected to after payment. Leave blank to return to the Home page.

11. **OPTIONAL.** In the **PayPal Cancel URL** text box, enter page URL that subscribers are redirected if payment is canceled. Leave blank to return to the Home page.
12. At **Use Sandbox?**, select from these options
 - Check the check box to enable PayPal Sandbox.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable Sandbox and enable live transactions.
13. Click the  Update link.

<input type="checkbox"/> Payment Settings	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currency:	<input type="text" value="U.S. Dollars (USD)"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Payment Processor:	<input type="text" value="PayPal"/>
	Go To Payment Processor WebSite
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Processor UserId:	<input type="text" value="MyUserID"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Processor Password:	<input type="text" value="....."/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PayPal Return URL:	<input type="text" value="www.ecozany.com/ThankYou.aspx"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PayPal Cancel URL:	<input type="text" value="www.ecozany.com/Cancellation.aspx"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use Sandbox:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>



Setting the Site's Payment Processor

Other Settings

Setting the Primary Administrator

How to set the primary administrator for this site. This Administrator receives email notification of member activities such as new registrations, unregistered accounts and feedback submitted using the Feedback module (unless this is overridden on the Feedback module).

Tip: To create new Administrators, add a new user account (See "Adding a User Account") and then add the user to the Administrators security role (See "Adding a User to a Security Role").

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. **Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section.
4. **Maximize** the **Other Settings** section.
5. At **Administrator**, select the display name of the required administrator.
6. Click the  Update link.





[-] Other Settings	
Administrator:	Administrator
Default Language:	English (United States)
Portal TimeZone:	(UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada); Tijuana

Setting the Primary Administrator

Setting the Default Language

How to set the default language of this site. This language is allocated to site members upon registration, as well as when a regional language selected by a user is unavailable. Note: Changing the default language doesn't update the language allocated to existing users. Only English (US) is supplied by default, however other languages are freely available from the DotNetNuke.com web site.

For more on languages See "About the Languages Module".



1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. **Maximize**  the **Advanced Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
5. At **Default Language**, select the default language.
6. Click the  **Update** link.



[-] Other Settings	
Administrator:	Administrator
Default Language:	English (United States)
Portal TimeZone:	(UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada); Tijuana

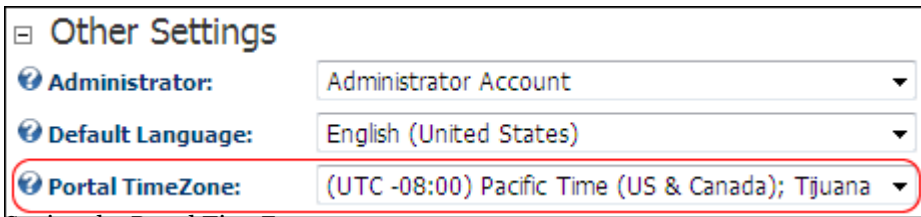
Setting the Default Language

Setting the Portal TimeZone

How to set the time zone for this site. This sets all time related information on this site including the default setting for the CurrentDate skin object.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. **Maximize**  the **Advanced Settings** section.

4. **Maximize**  the **Other Settings** section.
5. At **Portal TimeZone**, select the time zone for this site.
6. Click the  Update link.



Other Settings

Administrator: Administrator Account

Default Language: English (United States)

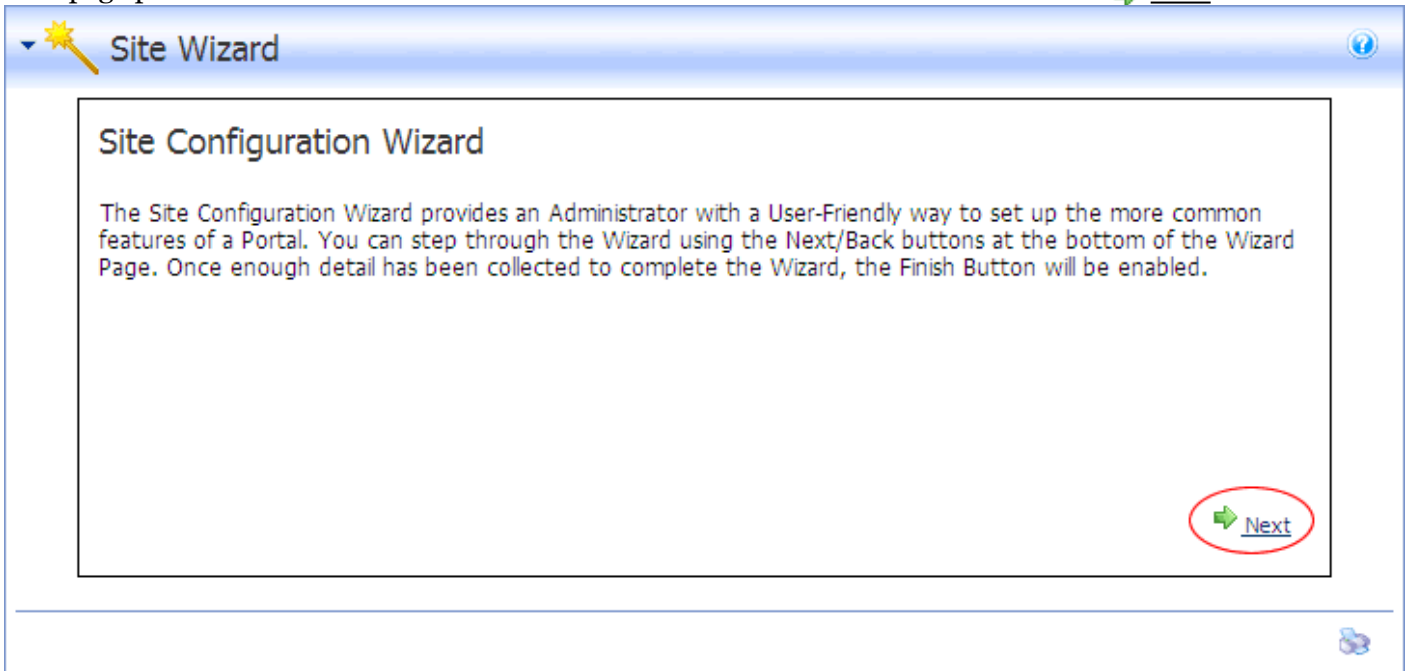
Portal TimeZone: (UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada); Tijuana

Setting the Portal TimeZone

Using the Site Wizard

Step 1 - Site Configuration Wizard

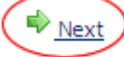
This page provides an introduction to the Site Wizard. Have a read and then click the  Next link.



Site Wizard

Site Configuration Wizard

The Site Configuration Wizard provides an Administrator with a User-Friendly way to set up the more common features of a Portal. You can step through the Wizard using the Next/Back buttons at the bottom of the Wizard Page. Once enough detail has been collected to complete the Wizard, the Finish Button will be enabled.

 Next

Step 2 - Choose a Template for your site

This step enables you to choose a site template. Templates contain pages with modules which may or may not include content.

To skip this step, click the  Next link.

To build the site from an existing template, complete the following steps:

1. At **Build your site from a template (below)**, check the check box. This displays a list of the available templates.
2. Click on the name of a template to select it. This displays a description of the selected template.
3. Choose one of the following options to set how duplicate modules will be handled:
 - **Ignore** - Places a copy of any duplicated modules on the same page.
 - **Replace** - Deletes the existing copy of the duplicate content and replaces it with the templated copy.
 - **Merge** - Combines the existing information and template information into one module.
4. Click the [Next](#) link.

Site Wizard

Choose a Template for your site

You can optionally choose to build your site from a preexisting template. To choose a template click the checkbox to enable the list of templates, and choose a template from the list. If you elect to build your site using a template, you need to choose how to deal with duplicate Modules (Modules that are in the Template and also already on your site).

Build your site from a template (below)

Default Website Template

- DotNetNuke
- OnlineHelp

Choose how to deal with duplicate Modules (Modules that are in the Template and also already on your site).


Ignore Replace Merge

Note: If you choose "Replace", all existing content on pages that are also in the template will be lost.


[Next](#)

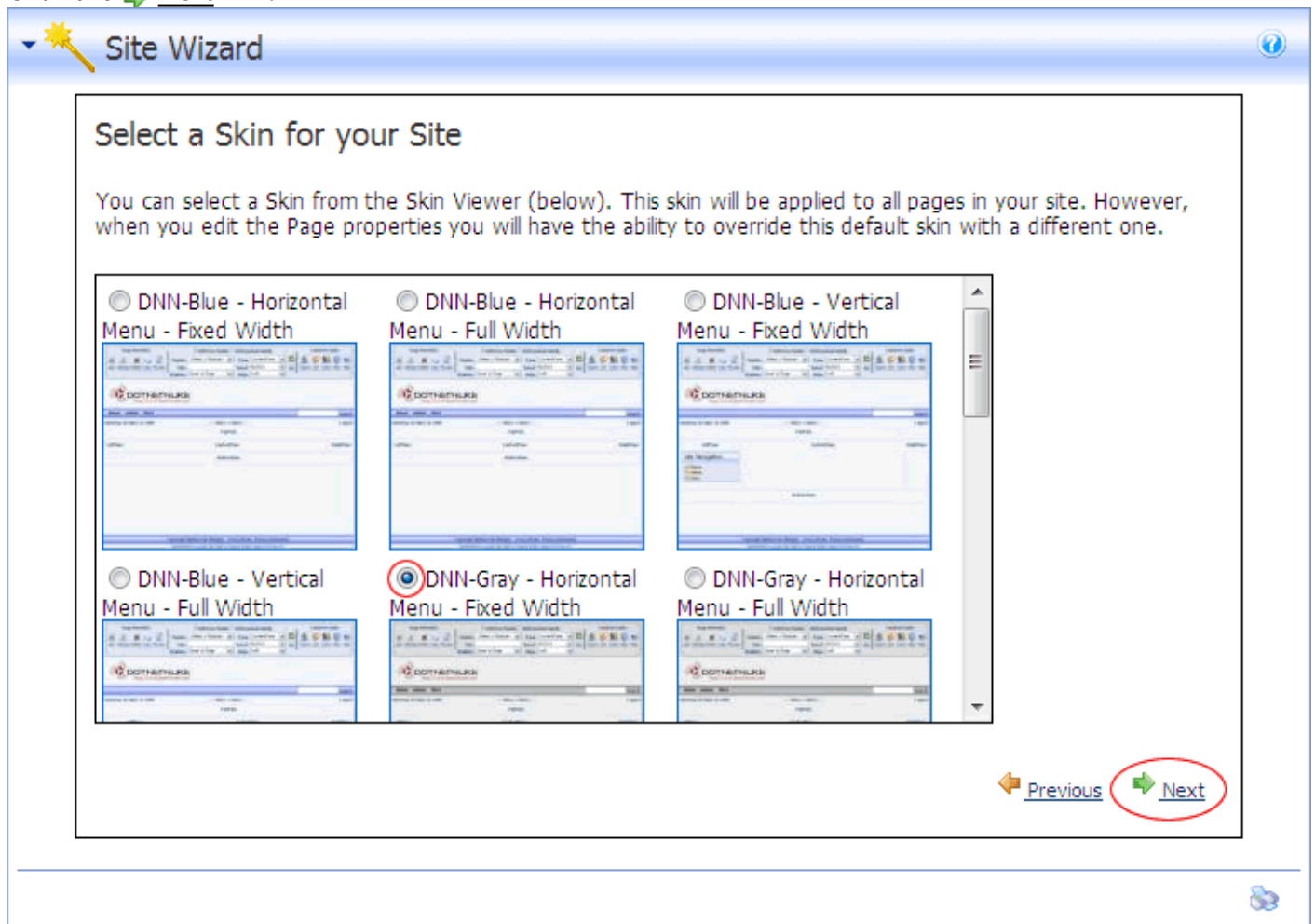
Step 3 - Select a Skin for your Site

Here you can select a skin to be applied to the site pages. This will not override settings on individual pages.

To keep the current skin, click the  [Next](#) link.


To select a new skin, complete the following steps:

1. To preview a skin, click on the thumbnail image (where provided). This will display the skin in a new web site browser.
2. Select a skin.
3. Click the  [Next](#) link.




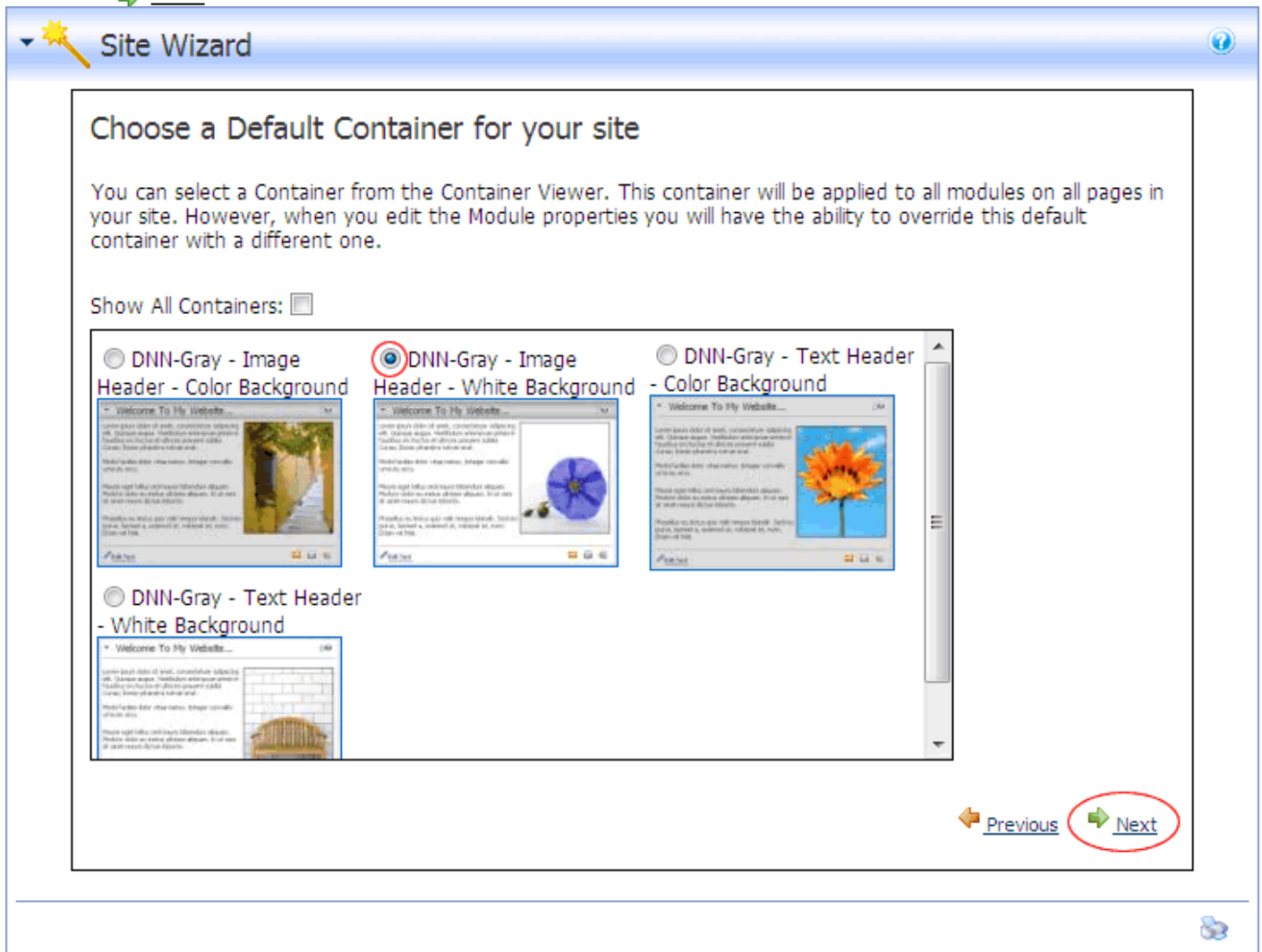
Step 4 - Choose a Default Container for your site

Here you can select the default containers that will be applied to the module on the site. This will not override settings on individual modules.

To keep the current container, click the  [Next](#) link.


To select a new default container, follow the steps below:

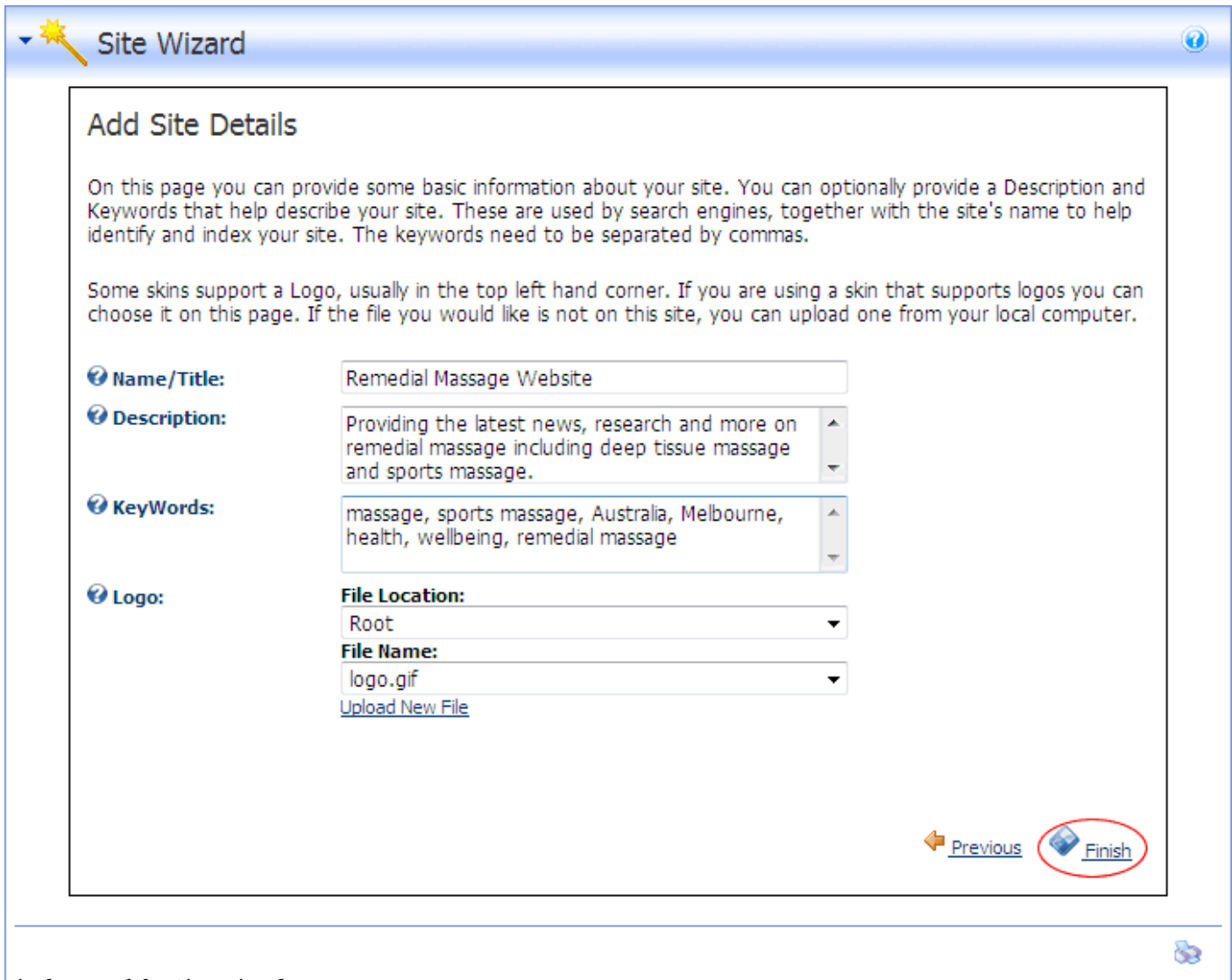
1. If you selected a skin at Step 3, the matching containers will be displayed and the default container will be selected by default.
2. **OPTIONAL.** Check the **Show All Containers** check box to view all of the available containers.
3. **OPTIONAL.** To preview a container click on a thumbnail image (where provided). This displays the container in a new web site browser.
4. Select a container.
5. Click the  [Next](#) link.



Step 5 - Add Site Details

Here you can enter or edit the Site Details for this site. These are the default details used by search engines to index your site.

1. In the **Name/Title** text box, enter the name or title to be applied to the site. This will show in visitors browser window titles.
2. In the **Description** text box, enter description to be applied to the site. This will be the description that Internet search engines will display to visitors. The site must be submitted to these search engines.
3. In the **KeyWords** text box, enter keywords to be applied to the site. This will be what the Internet search engines look for if you choose to submit your site to them.
4. At **Logo**, select or upload a logo. See the Common Tools > Link Control for more details.
5. Click the  **Finish** link. A message reading "If you changed the skin for your site, it should change when you leave this page" is displayed.
6. Click on the Home page to view any skin or module changes and to view any new pages or modules added using a template.



Final page of the Site Wizard

Working with the Control Panel

About the DNN Control Panels

DNN includes two Control Panels - the RibbonBar (DNN Professional Edition only) and the Iconbar which enable the Host, SuperUsers, Administrators, Page Editors and Content Editors (optional) to access and perform a range of content management, and administrative tasks.

Administrators can configure usability settings for the Control Panel. See the Admin Pages > Usability Setting section.

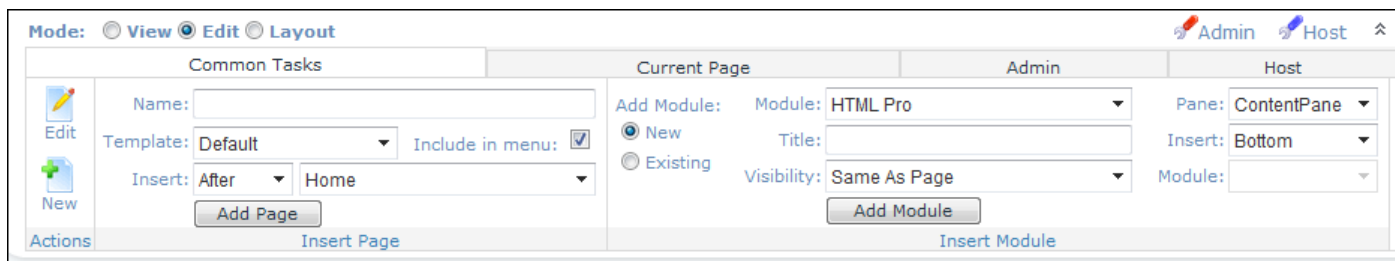
Hosts can set which Control Panel used. "Setting the Control Panel".

Both types of Control Panels include the following quick links:

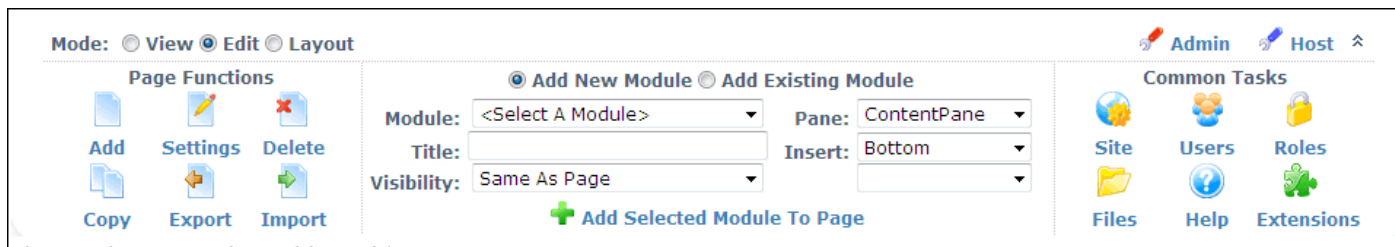
- The  **Admin** and  **Host** links (top right) provides Administrators and SuperUsers with one click access to the Admin Console page and the Host Console page respectively.

Related Topics:

- "Overview of the Iconbar"
- See "Overview of the RibbonBar"



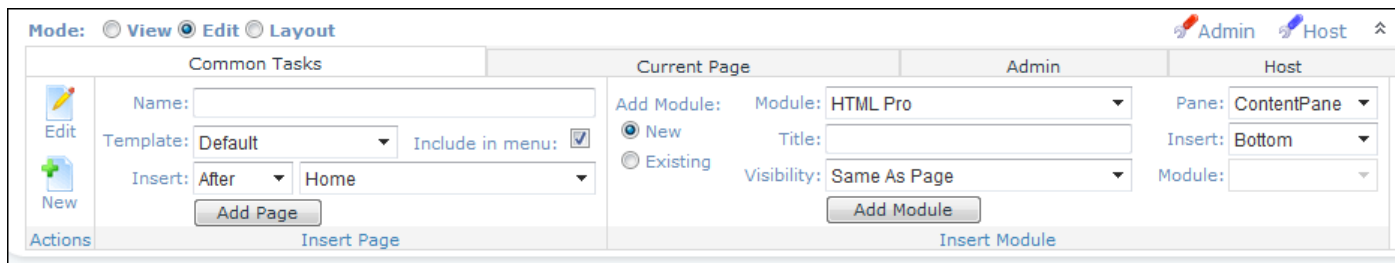
The RibbonBar Control Panel logged in as Host



The Iconbar Control Panel logged in as Host

Overview of the RibbonBar

The RibbonBar displays site management tools grouped under these three categories: Common Tasks, Current Page, Admin and Host. The Common Tasks and Current Page tabs are displayed on pages where users have editing permissions; the Admin tab is displayed to users in the Admin role; and the Host tab is displayed to the Host and SuperUsers.



Here is an overview of the four sections of the RibbonBar:

Common Tasks Tab

Displays these commonly performed tasks:

	Description	Visible When
Actions Section		
Edit	Link to edit current page settings. See "Editing Page Settings"	User has Manage Settings permission
New	Link to create a new page. See "Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page"	User has Add Page permission. See "Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page"
Insert Page Section		
Add Page	Adds a page to the site. See "Inserting a Page (RibbonBar)"	User has Add Page permission
Insert Module Section		
Add Module	Adds a module to the page. See "Adding a New Module" and "Adding an Existing Module (RibbonBar)"	User has Add Content permission. Enabled if the current page is not an Edit page (E.g. Page Settings)

The screenshot shows a ribbon bar interface with the following elements:

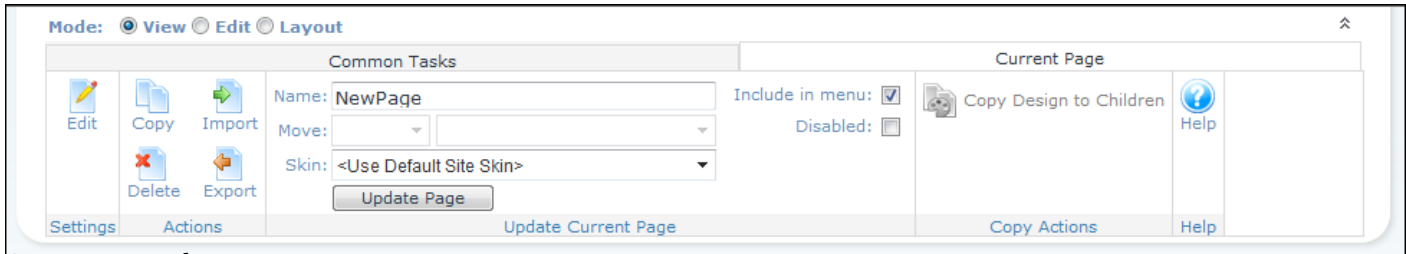
- Mode:** View (selected), Edit, Layout
- Common Tasks Tab:**
 - Edit:** Name: [text box], Template: Default (dropdown), Include in menu:
 - New:** Insert: Child of (dropdown), NewPage (dropdown), Add Page (button)
- Current Page Tab:**
 - Add Module:**
 - Module: [dropdown]
 - Title: [text box]
 - Visibility: Same As Page (dropdown)
 - Add Module (button)
 - Pane:** ContentPane (dropdown)
 - Insert:** Bottom (dropdown)
 - Module:** [dropdown]

Common Tasks Tab

Current Page Tab

	Description	Visible When
Settings Section		
 Edit	Link to edit current page settings. See "Editing Page Settings"	User has Manage Settings permission
Actions Section		
 Copy	Link to copy current page. See "Copying a Page"	User has Copy Page permission
 Delete	Link to delete current page. See "Deleting a Page"	User has Delete Page permission. Enabled if the current page is not a special page. I.e. Admin / Host pages and pages in use under Site Settings > Advanced Settings > Page Management.
 Import	Link to import a page. See "Importing a New Page"	User has Import Page permission. See "Importing a New Page"
 Export	Link to export a page. See "Exporting a Page"	User has Export Page permission. See "Exporting a Page"
Update Current Page Section		
	Add new page. See "Inserting a Page (RibbonBar)"	User has Add Page permission.
Copy Actions Section		
 Copy Permissions to Children*	Copy current page permission to children pages. See "Copying Permissions to Descendant Pages"	User has Manage Settings permission. Enabled if page has child pages.
 Copy Design to Children*	Copy current page design (skin and container settings) to children. See "Copying Design to Children Pages"	User has Manage Settings permission. Enabled if page has child pages.
Help Section		
 Help	Link (new window) to Help URL defined in Host Settings	If Help URL is set. See "Setting the Online Help URL"

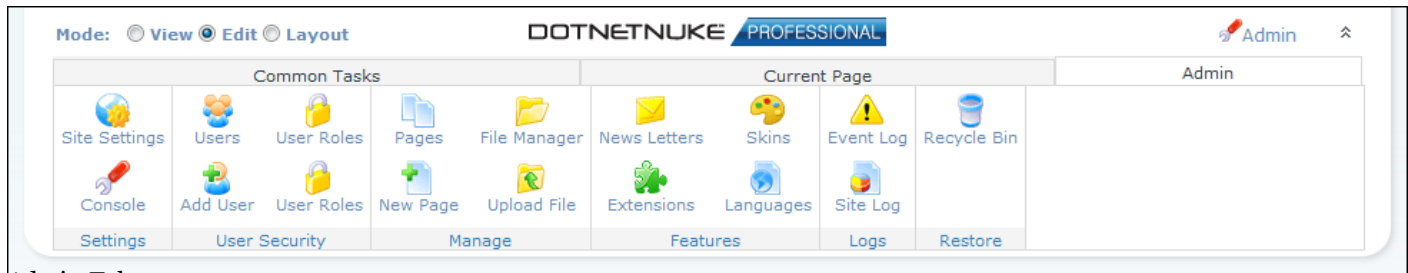
* For Page Editors: Will only update child pages which the page editor has permission to edit.



Current Page Tab

Admin Tab

	Description
Settings Section	
Site Settings	Link to Site Settings. See "About the Site Settings Page"
Console	Link to Admin Console. See "Overview of the Admin Pages"
User Security Section	
Users	Link to Admin > Users Account. See "About the User Accounts Module"
User Roles	Link to Admin > User Roles. See "About the Security Roles Module"
Add User	Link to Admin > Users > Add User. See "Adding a User Account"
Add Role	Link to Admin > User Roles > Add Role. See "Adding a Security Role (Basic Settings)"
Manage Section	
Pages	Link to Admin > Pages. See "About the Tabs module"
File Manager	Link to Admin > File Manager. See "About the File Manager Module"
New Page	Link to Admin > Pages > Add Page. See "Adding a Page"
Upload File	Link to Admin > File Manager > Upload File. See "Uploading a Single File"
Features Section	
News Letters	Link to Admin > Newsletters. See "About the Newsletters Module"
Extensions	Link to Admin > Extensions. See "About the Extensions Module"
Skins	Link to Admin > Skins. See "About the Skins Module"
Languages	Link to Admin > Languages. See "About the Languages Module"
Logs Section	
Event Log	Link to Admin > Event Log. See "About the Log Viewer Module"
Site Log	Link to Admin > Site Log. See "About the Site Log Module"
Restore Section	
Recycle Bin	Link to Admin > Recycle Bin. See "About the Recycle Bin Module"



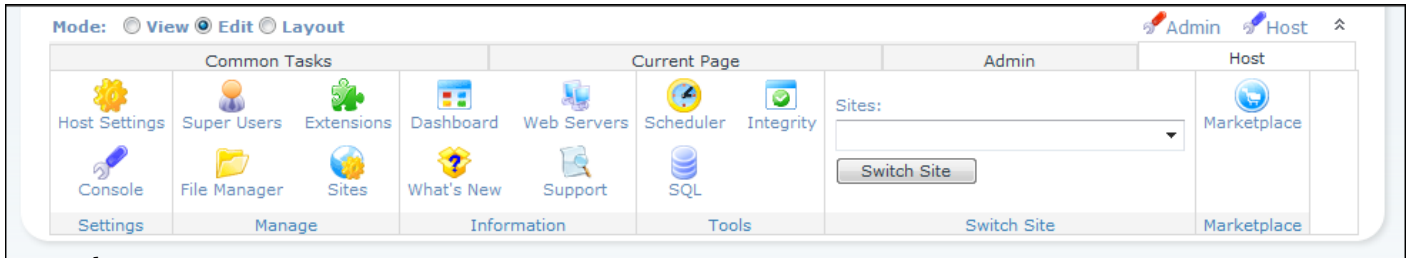
Admin Tab

Host Tab

	Description
Settings Section	
Host Settings	Link to Host Settings. See "About the Host Settings Page"
Console	Link to Host Console. See "About the Host Pages"
Manage Section	
Super Users	Link to Host > Super Users. See "About the Host Page"
File Manager	Link to Host > File Manager. See "About the File Manager Module"
Extensions	Link to Host > Extensions. See "About the Extensions Module"
Sites	Link to Host > Portals. See "About the Portals Page"
Information Section	
Dashboard	Link to Host > Dashboard. See "Viewing Dashboard Information"
What's New	Link to Host > What's New. See "About the What's New Module"
Web Servers	Link to Host > Professional Features > Manage Web Servers. See "About the Web Servers Module"
Support	Link to Host > Technical Support. Opens the DNN Professional Support Ticket system
Tools Section	
Scheduler	Link to Host > Scheduler. See "About the Schedule Page"
SQL	Link to Host > SQL. See "About the SQL Page"
Integrity*	Link to Host > Application Integrity page. See "About the File Integrity Checker Module"
Switch Site Section**	
Switch Site	Allows switching to different portals. See "Switching Sites"
Marketplace Section	
Marketplace	Link to Host > Marketplace. See "About the Marketplace Module"

* *Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition*

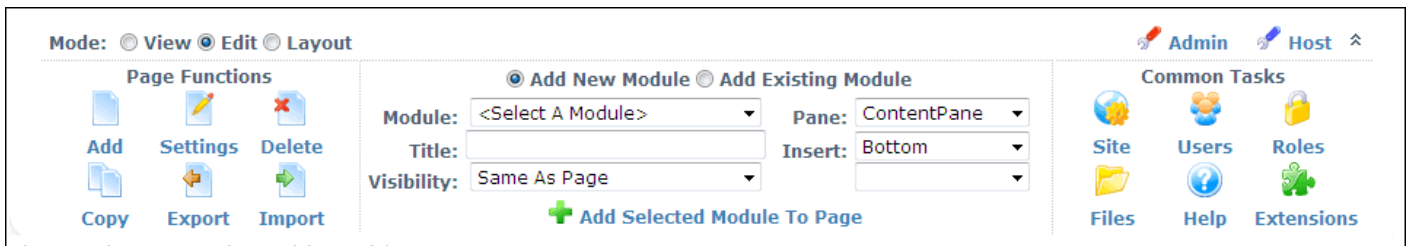
** May require login to the new site



Host Tab

Overview of the Iconbar

The Iconbar Control Panel provides a single interface from which authorized users can access page and module management tools, shortcuts to six common administration tasks and quick links to the Administration and Host pages.

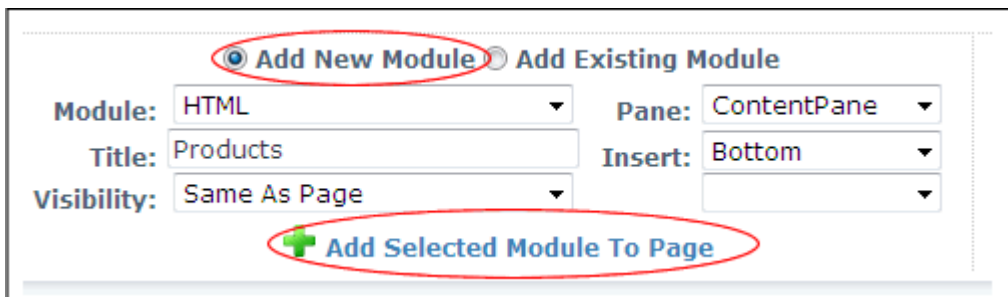


The Iconbar Control Panel logged in as Host

Page Functions

The **Page Functions** section (left) is accessible to Page Editors, Administrators and SuperUsers. It enables users to add new pages (See "Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page"), edit settings for the current page (See "Editing Page Settings"), delete the current page (See "Deleting a Page"), copy the current page (See "Copying a Page"), export the current page (See "Exporting a Page") and import a page (See "Importing a New Page"). Note: Page Editors will have access to one or more of these tools according to the permissions granted to them. Access will change depending on the permissions for the current page.


Module Insertion









Tip: Users must be authorized to deploy a module and be a page editor to add a module to a page.

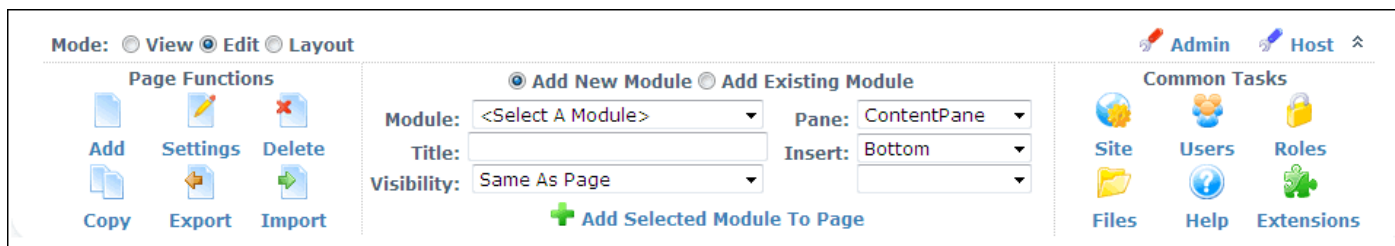
Common Tasks

Page Editors can access this icon:

- **Help**  button which links to the DNN Online Help URL set by the host. This option is disabled if no help link is provided.

Administrators and Hosts can access these additional icons:



-  **Site**: Opens the Admin > Site Settings page. See "About the Site Settings Page"
-  **Users**: Opens the Admin > User Account page. See "About the User Accounts Module"
-  **Roles**: Opens the Admin > Security Roles page. See "About the Security Roles Module"
-  **Files**: Opens the Admin > File Manager page. See "About the File Manager Module"
-  **Help**: Opens the Online Help resource associated with the site.
-  **Extensions**: Opens the Admin > Extensions page. See "About the Extensions Module"



The Iconbar Control Panel (as displayed to the Host)

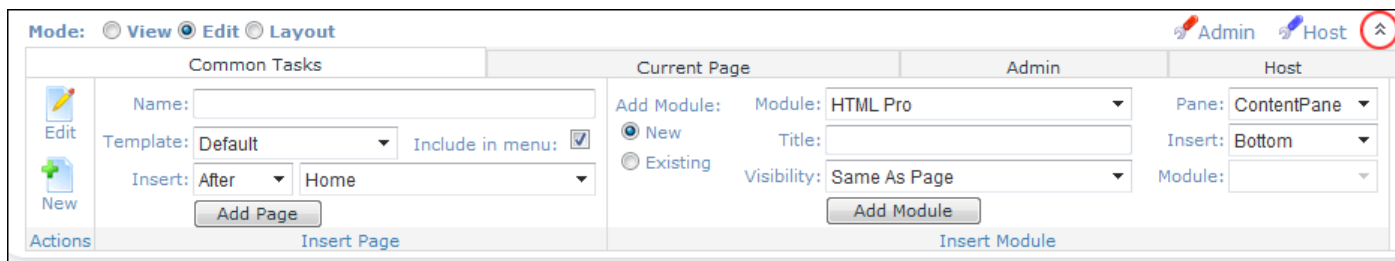
Maximizing/Minimizing the Control Panel

How to maximize or minimize the main section of the Control Panel. This functionality isn't available to Module Editors. The default visibility is set by Administrators. "Setting Control Panel Visibility".

1. In the top right hand corner of the Control Panel, select from these options:
 - Click the **Minimize**  button to hide the Control Panel.
 - Click the **Maximize**  button to display the Control Panel.



Minimized RibbonBar logged in as Host



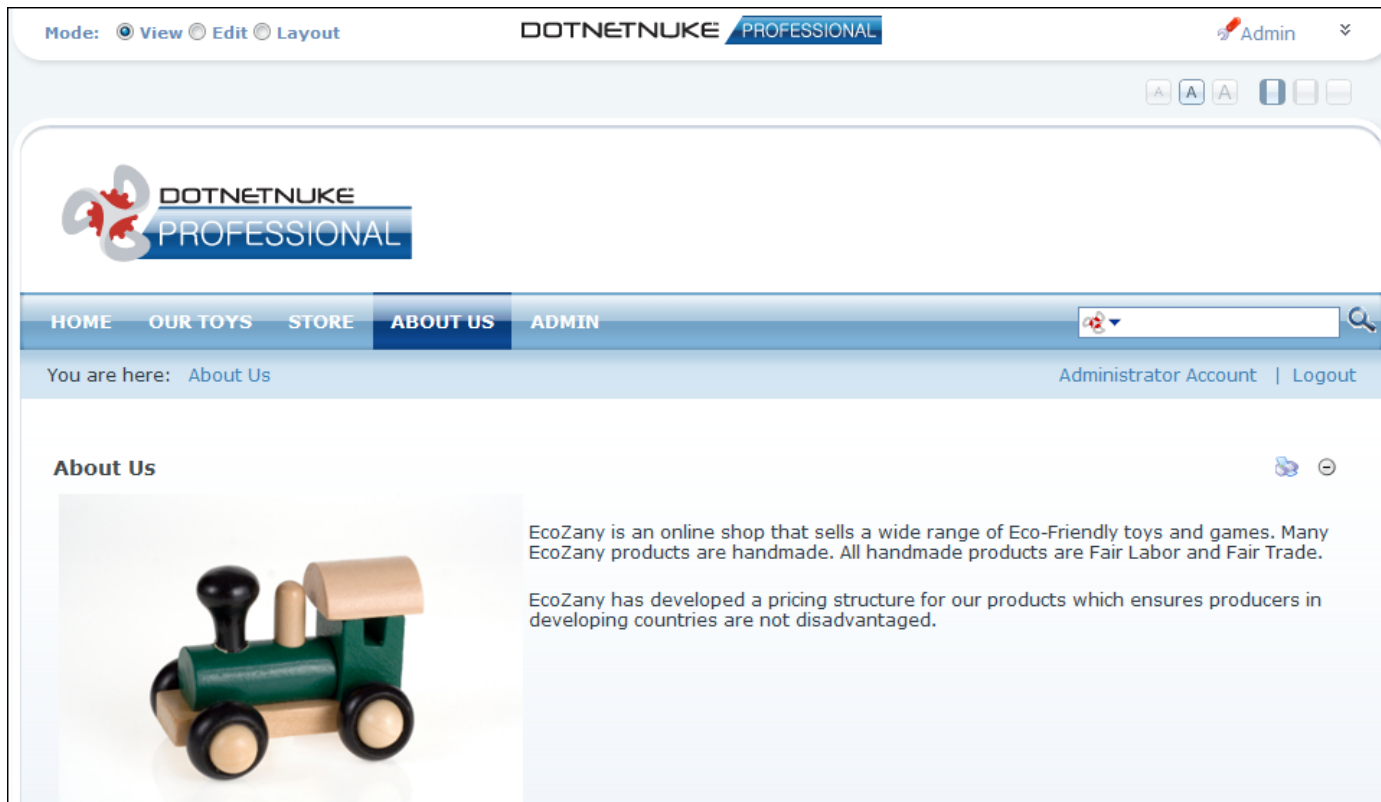
Maximized RibbonBar logged in as Host

Setting Control Panel Mode

How to set the mode of the Iconbar Control Panel.

1. At **Mode**, select from the following options:

- **View:** View the page with module editing tools hidden. This option shows you how the page appears to site visitors.



- **Edit:** Displays all module editing tools available to the current user. E.g. Module menu, add/edit links, Settings button.

Important. This option must be selected to edit the page.

The screenshot displays the DotNetNuke Professional administration interface. At the top, the 'Mode' bar shows 'View', 'Edit', and 'Layout' options, with 'Layout' selected. The 'DOTNETNUKE PROFESSIONAL' logo is visible in the top right corner. Below the mode bar, there are navigation tabs for 'HOME', 'OUR TOYS', 'STORE', 'ABOUT US', and 'ADMIN'. The 'ABOUT US' tab is active. A breadcrumb trail shows 'You are here: About Us'. The main content area features a section titled 'About Us' with a sub-section 'About Us' containing an image of a wooden toy train and two paragraphs of text. The text describes EcoZany as an online shop selling eco-friendly toys and games, and mentions their pricing structure. An 'Edit Content' button is located at the bottom right of the content area.

- **Layout:** Displays the layout of page panes and any modules within those panes. Module content is hidden. This option enables you to view the design of the page skin without the distraction of module

content.

The screenshot shows the DotNetNuke Professional website interface. At the top, the mode is set to "View". The header includes the "DOTNETNUKE PROFESSIONAL" logo and a navigation menu with "HOME", "OUR TOYS", "STORE", "ABOUT US", and "ADMIN". A search bar is located on the right. Below the navigation, a breadcrumb trail reads "You are here: About Us". The main content area is divided into four panes: "LeftPane", "ContentPane", "RightPane", and "BottomPane". The "ContentPane" displays a dropdown menu with "About Us" selected. The footer contains the same navigation menu as the header.

The screenshot shows the DotNetNuke Professional website interface in "Edit" mode. The "Mode:" section at the top is circled in red, with "Edit" selected. The "Common Tasks" panel is visible, containing fields for "Name:", "Template: Default", "Include in menu: [checked]", "Insert: After", and "Home". An "Add Page" button is present. On the right, the "Add Module:" section has "New" selected. The "Actions" section at the bottom shows "Insert Page".

Setting the Control Panel mode

Adding and Managing Pages

About Pages

DNN sites are created by adding one or more pages and then adding modules which display content onto those pages. This section provides information on viewing, adding and managing pages. Additional functionality is available to Administrators and SuperUsers using the Pages (Tabs) module. See "About the Tabs module"

Related Topics:

- See "About Page Permissions"

Viewing Any Page


How to view any page within a site, including those which are not included in the menu.

- **Option One:** If the page is visible (included) in the menu, then navigate to the page using the site menu.
- **Option Two:** If the page is hidden (not included in the menu), click on a link to the hidden page. Authorized users can create a page link using the Links module. See "Setting a Page Link"

Adding Pages

Inserting a Page (RibbonBar)

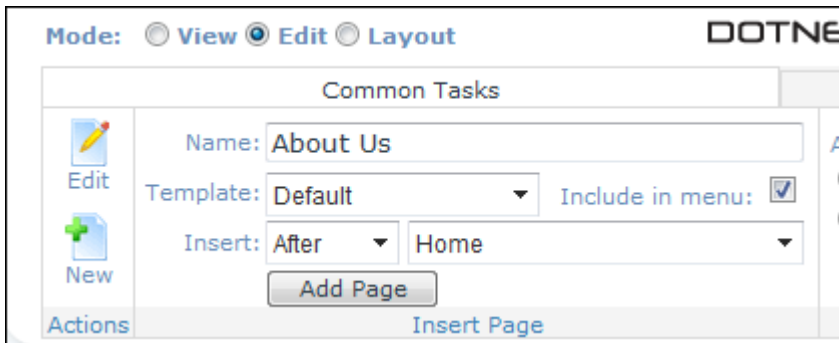
How to add a page to a site using the RibbonBar. Note: If content localization is enabled, this task adds a page which is a neutral culture and will be the same for all languages. This tutorial assumes you are viewing the site in its default language.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. Go to the Common Tasks tab.
3. Go to the Insert Page section.
4. In the **Name** text box, enter a name for the page. This is the name which appears in the menu. Skip to Step 7 accept the default options which adds this page to the save level of the menu after (to the right of) the current page.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Template**, select the page template for this page. The **Default** template is selected by default.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Include In Menu**, check the check box to include this page in the menu - OR - Uncheck the check box to hide the page.

7. **OPTIONAL.** At **Insert**, select from these options:

- Skip this step to add the page after (to the right of) the page you are currently on.
- Select to add the page either **Before** (to the left of) or **After** (to the right of) the page name selected in the second drop-down box. This adds the page on the same level in the menu.
- Select to add the page as a **Child Of** the page name selected in the second drop-down box.




8. Click the **Add Page** button. The page will now be added and set as visible to Administrators only. This allows you to add content to the page before setting it as viewable by one or more user roles. See "Setting Page Permissions"



Adding a Page using the RibbonBar


Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page

How to add a new page to a site.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, select the Common Tasks tab and then select  **New** - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and then select  **Add**.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
4. In the **Page Name** text box, enter a name for the page. This is the name which appears in the menu.
Note: Page Name is the only mandatory field.
5. **OPTIONAL.** Complete **Permissions** if displayed. Note: If permissions are not displayed, the new page will inherit the permissions of its parent page. If Permissions are displayed but not set then the page will be visible to Administrator's only. See "Setting Page Permissions"
6. **Recommended.** Complete the other basic settings for this page. "Basic Settings for New Pages"
7. In the **Localization** section, select the required option. See "Localization Settings for New Pages". Note: The Localization section only displays if content localization is enabled. See "About Content Localization".

8. **OPTIONAL.** Complete advanced page settings as required. "Setting Advanced Settings for New Pages"

9. Click the  Update link.

 **Page Settings**

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this page.

Page Details

- Page Name:**
- Page Title:**
- Description:**
- Keywords:**
- Tags:**
- Parent Page:**
- Insert Page:** Before After Add to End
- Template Folder:**
- Template Folder:**
- Page Template:**
- Include In Menu?**
- Permissions:**

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



Username: + Add

Copy Page

Localization

- Culture Type:**
 - Create Single Neutral Culture Page
 - Create in Current Culture only.
 - Create Localized Versions of Page

Advanced Settings

 **Update**  **Cancel**





Adding a New Page

Related Topics:

- See "Adding a Page to Secondary Language"

Adding a New Page from a Template

How to add a new page based on an existing page template. This option allows you to configure page settings before the new page is displayed on the site. Note: The Localization section only displays if content localization is enabled. See "About Content Localization".

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, select the Common Tasks tab and then select  New - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and then select  Add
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
4. In the **Page Name** text box, enter a name for the page. If this page is displayed in the menu, this will be the name in the menu.
5. At **Template Folder**, select the folder of your File Manager where the template is located. This will enable the template field below and populate the drop-down list with all templates within this folder.
6. At **Page Template**, select a template from the drop-down list.
7. Complete the remaining basic settings as required. "Basic Settings for New Pages"
8. In the **Localization** section, select the required option. See "Localization Settings for New Pages"
9. **OPTIONAL.** Complete advanced page settings as required. "Setting Advanced Settings for New Pages"
10. Click the  Update link.

Page Settings

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this page.

Page Details

Page Name: Testers

Page Title: EcoZany Product Testers

Description:

Keywords:

Tags:

Parent Page: <None Specified>

Insert Page: Before After Add to End

Home

Template Folder: Templates/

Page Template: Default

Include In Menu?

Permissions:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: **+ Add**

Copy Page

Localization

Culture Type:

Create Single Neutral Culture Page

Create in Current Culture only.

Create Localized Versions of Page

Advanced Settings

Update **Cancel**




Adding a new page from a template

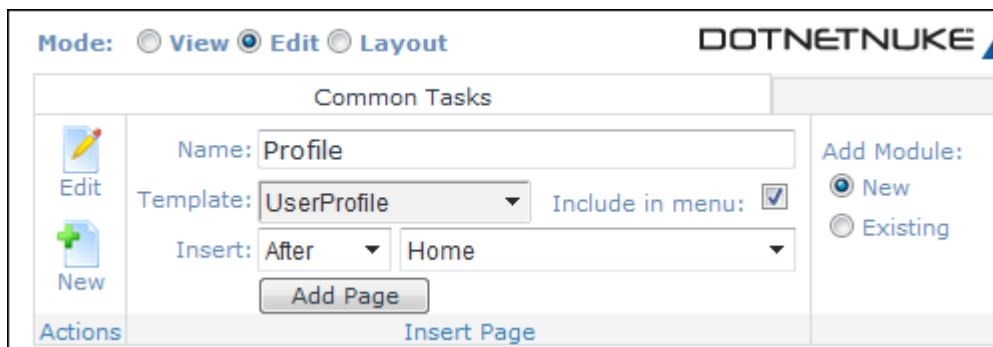
Related Topics:

- See "Adding a Page to Secondary Language"

Inserting a User Profile Page

How to add a user registration/profile page to a site using the RibbonBar.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. Go to the Common Tasks tab.
3. Go to the Insert Page section.
4. In the **Name** text box, enter a name for the page. E.g. Profile
5. At **Template**, select **UserProfile** as the page template for this page.
6. At **Include In Menu**, check the check box to include this page in the menu - OR - Uncheck the check box to hide the page. Typically you would uncheck the check box so the page is only accessible when the user clicks their [Display Name] link to go to their profile.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **Insert**, select from these options:
 - Skip this step to add the page after (to the right of) the page you are currently on.
 - Select to add the page either **Before** (to the left of) or **After** (to the right of) the page name selected in the second drop-down box. This adds the page on the same level in the menu.
 - Select to add the page as a **Child Of** the page name selected in the second drop-down box.
8. Click the **Add Page** button.
9. Go to Admin > Pages or to a Tabs module.
10. Select the new page and click the **Edit Selected Page**  button.
11. At **Permissions**, grant **All Users** permission to **View** the page.
12. Click the  Update link.



Adding a User Profile Page using the RibbonBar

Manage Pages

Viewing Any Page





How to view any page within a site, including those which are not included in the menu.

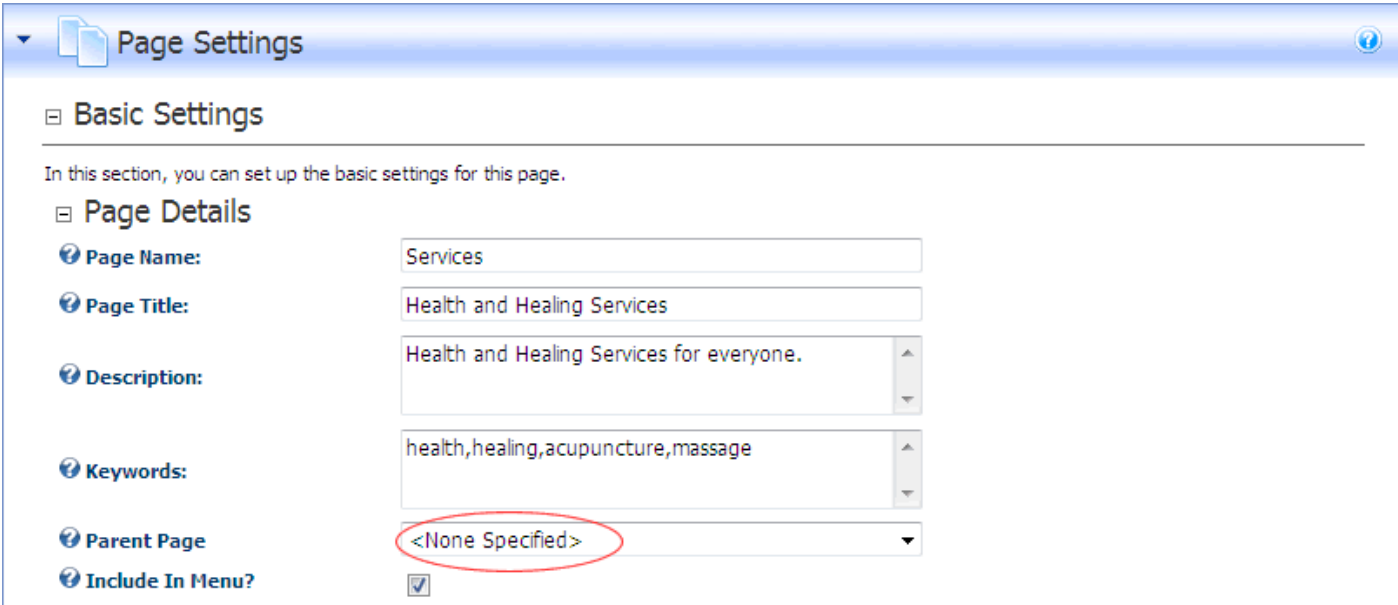
- **Option One:** If the page is visible (included) in the menu, then navigate to the page using the site menu.
- **Option Two:** If the page is hidden (not included in the menu), click on a link to the hidden page. Authorized users can create a page link using the Links module.
- **Option Three:** See "Viewing any Page (Tabs Module)"

Moving Page Location

How to move a page to a new location on the site menu.

Admin Tip: Additional options are available to Administrators. See "Moving Page Position in Menu"

1. Go to the required page. See "Viewing Any Page".
2. Maximize  the Control Panel.
3. On the RibbonBar, go to either the Current Page or the Common Tasks tab and select  Edit - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Settings.
4. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
5. At **Parent Page**, select a new parent page, or select **<None Specified>** to change this page to a parent page.
6. Click the  Update link.







The screenshot shows a window titled "Page Settings" with a "Basic Settings" section. Under "Page Details", there are several fields: "Page Name" (Services), "Page Title" (Health and Healing Services), "Description" (Health and Healing Services for everyone.), and "Keywords" (health,healing,acupuncture,massage). The "Parent Page" dropdown menu is currently set to "<None Specified>" and is circled in red. The "Include In Menu?" checkbox is checked.

Moving the position of a page

Copying a Page

How to copy any existing page including modules and optional module content. Note: Page Name is the only mandatory field

Note: The Localization section only displays if content localization is enabled. See "About Content Localization".

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, go to the Current Page tab and select  Copy - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Copy
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
4. In the **Page Name** text box, enter a name for the new page. The page name is displayed in the menu.
5. Complete additional basic settings for this page. "Basic Settings for New Pages"
6. Go to the **Copy Page** section complete the following fields:
 - a. At **Copy From Page**, select the page be copied.
 - b. At **Specify Modules**, complete the following steps for each module:
 - c. To copy a module:
 - i. In the module title text box, enter a new module title if required.
 - ii. Select one of the following options:
 1. **New**: This will add the module without any content.
 2. **Copy**: This will add the module with an independent copy of the module content. Modifying copied content doesn't update the content of the original module. Note: This option will be disabled for modules which don't have content which can be copied such as the Feedback and Account Login modules.
 3. **Reference**: This will add the module with a referenced version of the copied content. Modifying referenced content updates both copies of the module.
 - d. To NOT copy a module:
 - a. Uncheck the check box beside any module you do NOT want copy.
7. In the **Localization** section, select the required option. See "Localization Settings for New Pages"
8. **OPTIONAL**. Complete the advanced page settings as required. "Setting Advanced Settings for New Pages"
9. Click the  Update link. You are now taken to the new page.

Copy Page

Copy From Page: Home

Specify Modules:



<input type="checkbox"/> Welcome	RightPane	<input type="radio"/> New <input type="radio"/> Copy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Reference
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> About Us	BottomPane	<input type="radio"/> New <input checked="" type="radio"/> Copy <input type="radio"/> Reference
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Feedback	ContentPane	<input checked="" type="radio"/> New <input type="radio"/> Copy <input type="radio"/> Reference
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sponsors	BottomPane	<input type="radio"/> New <input type="radio"/> Copy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Reference
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Links	ContentPane	<input type="radio"/> New <input type="radio"/> Copy <input checked="" type="radio"/> Reference

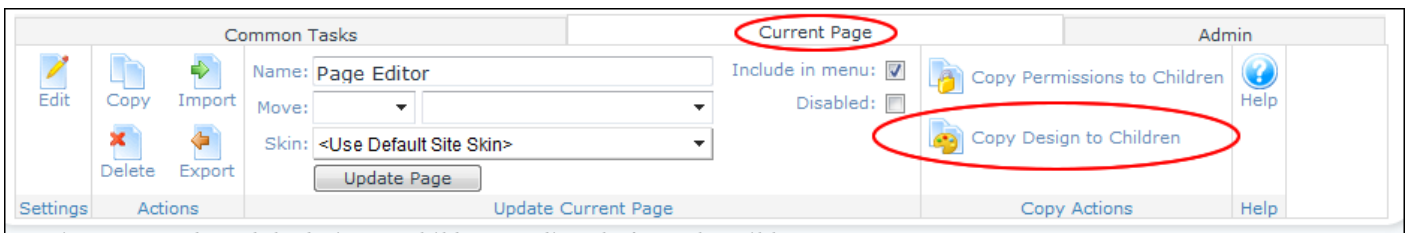
Copying a page

Copying Design to Children Pages

How to copy the design applied to a page to all of its child (descendant) pages. This applies the Page Skin and Page Container settings of the parent page to all child pages. This setting is only available for existing pages with child pages.

Option One - Using the Ribbonbar




1. Navigate to the required parent page.
2. Maximize  the Control Panel.
3. Go to the Current Page tab.
4. Select  **Copy Permissions to Children**. This displays Confirm message box which reads "Skin and container will be replaced for all children of this page. Are you sure you want to continue?"
5. Click the **OK** button to confirm.



Copying page and module design to child pages directly from the RibbonBar

Option Two -Using the Ribbonbar or Iconbar

1. Navigate to the required parent page.
2. Maximize the Control Panel.

3. On the RibbonBar, go to either the Current Page or the Common Tasks tab and select  Edit - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Settings.
4. Go the **Advanced Settings - Appearance** section.
5. At **Copy Design to Descendants**, click the Copy Design link.
6. Click the  Update link.

Appearance

Icon:

Link Type:
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image

File Location:
 Root ▼

File Name:
 <None Specified> ▼

[Upload New File](#)

Large icon:

Link Type:
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image


File Location:
 Root ▼

File Name:
 <None Specified> ▼

[Upload New File](#)


Page Skin:

Host **Site**

<Use Portal Default> ▼  **Preview**

Page Container:

Host **Site**

<Use Portal Default> ▼  **Preview**

Copy design to descendants:



[Copy design](#)

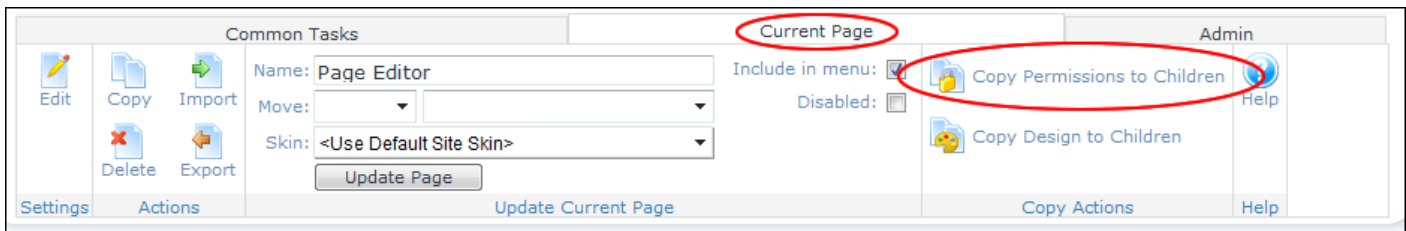
Copying page and module design to child pages on the Page Settings page

Copying Permissions to Descendant Pages




How to copy the permissions applied to a parent page to all of its descendant (child) pages. This applies the Permissions set for viewing and editing pages. This setting is only displayed for pages with existing child pages.

Option One - Using the Ribbonbar

1. Navigate to the required parent page.
2. Maximize  the Control Panel.
3. Go to the Current Page tab.
4. Select  Copy Design to Children. This displays Confirm message box which reads "Skin and container will be replaced for all children of this page. Are you sure you want to continue?"
5. Click the **OK** button to confirm.



Option Two - Using the Ribbonbar or Iconbar

1. Navigate to the required parent page.
2. Maximize the Control Panel.
3. On the RibbonBar, go to either the Current Page or the Common Tasks tab and select  Edit - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Settings.
4. Go the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
5. At **Copy Permissions to Descendants**, click the Copy Permissions link.
6. Click the  Update link.

Page Settings

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this page.

Page Details

Page Name:

Page Title:

Description:

Keywords:

Parent Page:

Include In Menu?

Permissions:

Filter By Group:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Product Managers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: [+ Add](#)


Copy Permissions to Descendants:




Copy Permissions

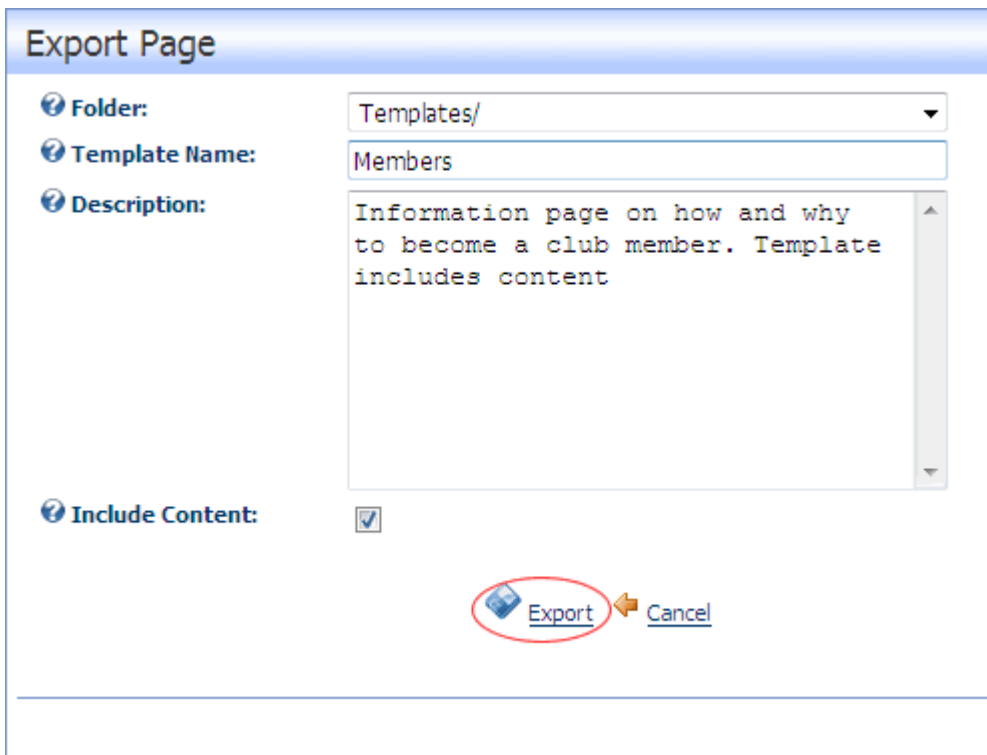
Copying permissions to descendant pages

Exporting a Page

How to export a page. This enables you to create a page template which you can then import. This option is only available on the Iconbar Control Panel.

1. Navigate to the required page. "Viewing Any Page"
2. Maximize  the Control Panel.

3. On the RibbonBar, go to the Current Page tab and select  Export - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Export
4. At **Folder**, select a folder of the site's File Manager where the exported page will be stored.
5. In the **Template Name** text box, the name of the exported page is displayed. You can either use this as the name of the page template or change it to a new name.
6. In the **Description** text box, enter a description of the page you are exporting. This description is exported with the page template. Typically the description provides a brief overview of the page and (if included) it's content.
7. **OPTIONAL**. At **Include Content?**, check the check box to include module content - OR - Uncheck the check box to add the modules without any content.
8. Click the  **Export** button. This displays a message with the path where the page template has been created.





Export Page

Folder: Templates/

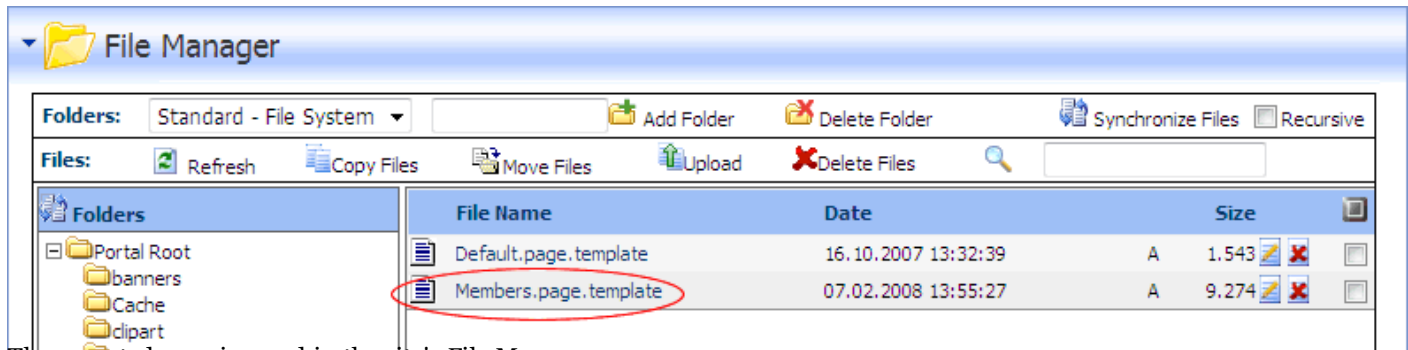
Template Name: Members

Description: Information page on how and why to become a club member. Template includes content

Include Content:

 **Export**  **Cancel**




The Export Page page



The exported page is saved in the site's File Manager

Importing a New Page

How to add a new page using the Import function. This enables you to apply a page template that has previously been exported. The new page is added to the site before user can change the page settings. This tutorial can only be performed using the Iconbar Control Panel.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, go to the Current Page tab and select  Import- OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Import
3. At **Folder**, select the folder of your File Manager where the template is located. This enables the template field below and populates the drop-down list with all templates within this folder.
4. At **Template**, select a template from the drop-down list. This displays a description of the selected template providing more details of the template.
5. At **Import Mode**, select **Create A New Page**.
6. In the **Page Name** text box, the name of the template will be displayed. You can choose to enter a new page name or use this name,
7. At **Parent Page**, select **<None Specified>** to set this page as a parent page - OR - Select the parent page from the drop-down box. Note: Page Editors can only select parent pages which they are editors of.
8. At **Insert Page**, select from these options to choose the location of the new page in the menu:
 - Select a page from the drop-down box and then select to add the new page either **Before** or **After** that page in the menu on the current level.
 - Select **Add to End** to add the new page to the end of the menu on the current level.
9. At **Redirect Mode?** select from the following options to set where you will be redirected to once you complete this importing:

- a. Select **View Imported Page** to be redirected to the newly created page upon creation (Import).
- b. Select **Edit Imported Page** to be redirected to the Page Settings page of the newly created page upon creation (Import). This enables you to configure the page settings immediately.




10. Click the Import link.

Tip: View the new page to ensure that any modules that are set to display on all pages are not duplicated. This may occur if the selected template includes modules that are displayed on all pages.

Importing a New Page

Replacing the Current Page with a Page Template (Import Page)

How to replace the modules on the current page with a page template. This option is only available on the Iconbar control panel.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, go to the Current Page tab and select  Import - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select  Import.
3. At **Folder**, select the folder of your File Manager where the template is located. This will enable the template field below and populate the drop-down list with all templates within this folder.
4. At **Template**, select a template from the drop-down list. The description of the selected template will be displayed providing you with more details of the template.
5. At **Import Mode**, select **Replace The Current Page**.

6. At **Redirect Mode?** select from the following options to set where you will be redirected to once you complete this importing:
 - Select **View Imported Page** to be redirected to the newly created page upon creation (Import).
 - Select **Edit Imported Page** to be redirected to the Page Settings page of the newly created page upon creation (Import). This enables you to configure the page settings immediately.
7. Click the Import link. The new page will now be added to the top level of the menu. If Edit Imported Page was selected at Step 6 you can now edit page settings as required.

Tip: View the new page to ensure that any modules that are set to display on all pages are not duplicated. This may occur if the selected template includes modules that are displayed on all pages.

The screenshot shows the 'Import Page' dialog box with the following settings:


- Folder:** Templates/
- Template:** Members (Members page with membership details, benefits, rates and registration form.)
- Import Mode:** **Replace the current Page** (circled in red)
- Redirect Mode?:** **View imported Page** **Edit imported Page**
- Buttons:** **Import** **Cancel** (both circled in red)

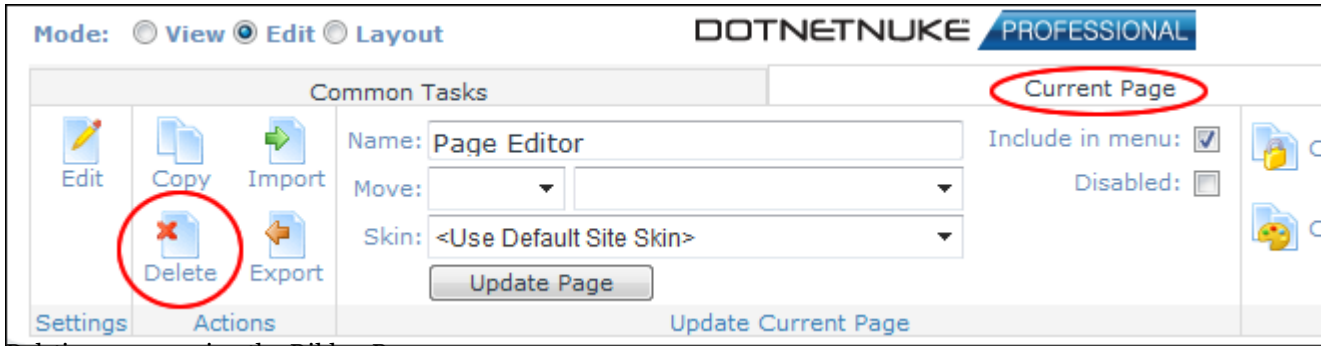
Replacing the Current Page with a Page Template (Import Page)

Deleting a Page

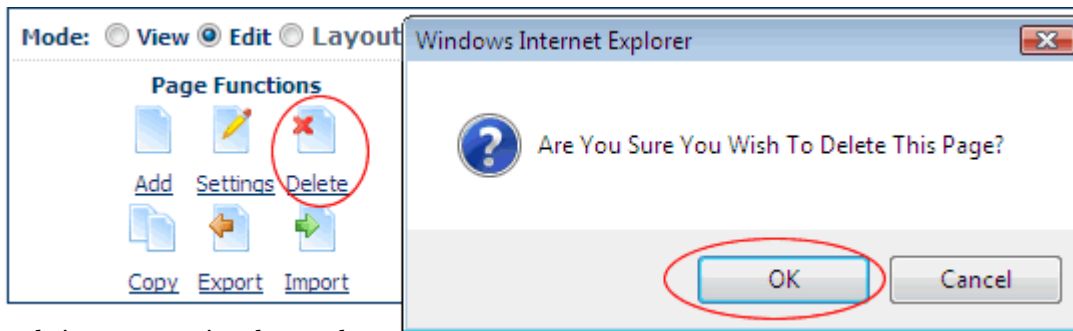
How to delete a page from a site. Pages set as either the Splash page, Home page, Login page, or the User page cannot be deleted until the setting is removed. The last visible portal page can also not be deleted. Deleted pages are stored in the Recycle Bin where they can be restored or permanently deleted by authorized users.

Option One - Directly from the Control Panel

1. Navigate to the required page.
2. **Maximize** ∨ the Control Panel.
3. On the RibbonBar, go to the Common Tasks tab - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section.
4. Select  Delete. This displays the message box which reads "Are you sure you want to delete this page?"
5. Click the **OK** button to confirm.



Deleting a page using the RibbonBar



Deleting a page using the Iconbar

Option Two - Via the Site Settings Page

1. Navigate to the required parent page.
2. **Maximize** ∨ the Control Panel.
3. On the RibbonBar, go to either the Current Page or the Common Tasks tab and select Edit - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select Settings.
4. Click the Delete link located at the base of the page. This displays the message box which reads "Are you sure you want to delete this page?"
5. Click the **OK** button.

Related Topics:

- See "About the Recycle Bin Module"
- See "Deleting a Page from a Secondary Language"

Manage Settings

About Page Permissions

How to set access to view, edit and manage pages and page content setting permissions by roles and/or user-names. This tutorial provides an overview of the different page permissions available. For full details See "Setting Page Permissions".

IMPORTANT: In DNN Community edition, page management permissions consist of only two settings: **View Page** and **Edit Page**. In DNN Professional, page management has ten permissions.

Professional Edition Permissions

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

Here is the full list of page permissions available in Professional Edition:

- **View:** View permissions enable users to view the page.
- **Add:** Users with Add permissions for a page can add child pages to that page. They cannot add any parent pages, and they cannot add child pages to any other pages.
- **Add Content:** Users with Add Content permissions for a page can edit content on the page. These users can add, move and delete modules, as well as manage the content and settings for modules on the page.
- **Copy:** Users with Copy permission can make a copy any page they can view. The new page can only be a child of the page they have copy permissions for.
- **Delete:** Users with Delete permissions can delete the page. If the page has child pages they are also deleted when the parent is deleted, however the user does not automatically have Delete permissions for these child pages.
- **Export:** Users with Export permissions can export the page.
- **Import:** Users with Import permissions can import a page.
- **Manage Settings:** Users with Manage Settings permissions can change the page settings. Users can edit all of the settings on the Settings page, except for the permissions section which will not be visible.
- **Navigate:** Users with Navigate permissions can view a page in the navigation menu. Users can have this permission without view permissions, in which case they will not be able to view any content on the page but the page will be visible in the menu.
- **Full Control:** Users with Full Control permissions have full administrative rights for the page. This permission is the same as the Edit Page permission in the Community Edition.

Permissions:

Filter By Group:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bloggers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chat Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EditUser	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Admin	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Member	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Global Moderator	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Module Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>						<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Page Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: Add

Copy Permissions to Descendants: [Copy Permissions](#)

Page Permissions in DNN Professional Edition

Community Edition Permissions

Here is the list of page permissions available in Community Edition:

- **View Page:** View permissions enable users to view the page.
- **Edit Page:** Edit permissions give users full administrative rights for the page.

Permissions:

Filter By Group:

	View	Edit Page
Administrators		
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bloggers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chat Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EditUser	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Forum Admin	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Member	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Global Moderator	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Module Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Page Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: [+ Add](#)

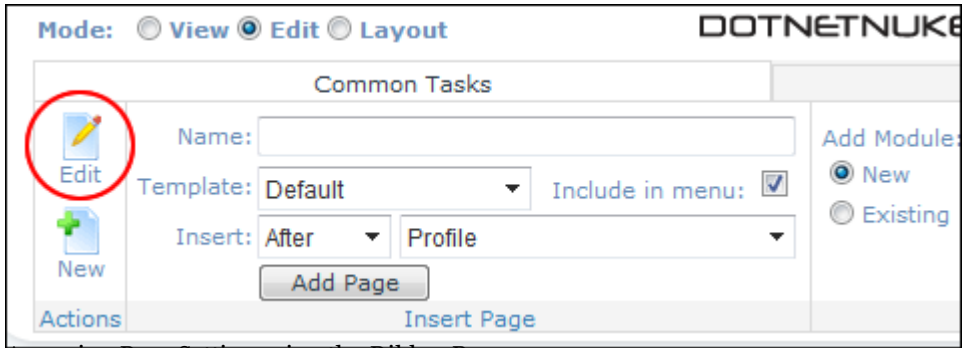
Copy Permissions to Descendants: [Copy Permissions](#)

Page Permissions in DNN Community Edition

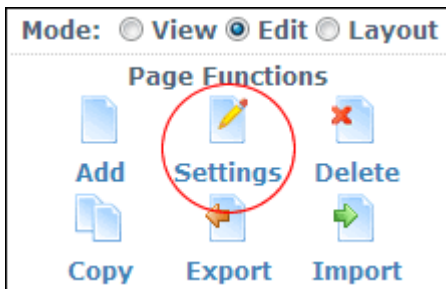
Editing Page Settings

How to edit the settings of the current page.

1. Go to the required page. See "Viewing Any Page".
2. Maximize the Control Panel.
3. On the RibbonBar, go to the Common Tasks tab and select Edit - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Page Functions section and select Settings. This opens the Page Settings page.
4. Edit page settings as required. See "Basic Settings for Existing Pages", and "Advanced Settings for Existing Pages"
5. Click the Update link.



Accessing Page Setting using the RibbonBar



Accessing Page Settings using the Iconbar

Basic Settings for New Pages

How to set the basic page settings. Note: The Page Name field is the only mandatory field. This tutorial assumes you have already begun the process of adding a new page. See "Inserting a Page (RibbonBar)", or "Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page"

1. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section.
2. In the **Page Name** text box, enter a name for the page. If this page is displayed in the menu, this will be the name in the menu.
3. In the **Page Title** text box, enter a short, descriptive sentence summarizing the page content. The title is used by search engines to identify the information contained on the page. It is recommended that the title contains at least 5 highly descriptive words and does not exceed 200 characters.
4. In the **Description** text box, enter a description of the page content. The description is used by search engines to identify the information contained on the page. It is recommended that the description contains at least 5 words and does not exceed 1000 characters.
5. In the **Keywords** text box, enter key words for this page separated by comma.
6. At **Tags**, select one or more tags associated with this page. Page tagging is a way of categorizing content for more meaningful search results.
7. At **Parent Page**, select **<None Specified>** to set this page as a parent page - OR - Select the parent page from the drop-down box. Note: Page Editors can only select parent pages which they are editors of.

8. At **Insert Page**, select from these options to choose the location of the new page in the menu:
 - Select a page from the drop-down box and then select to add the new page either **Before** or **After** that page in the menu on the current level.
 - Select **Add to End** to add the new page to the end of the menu on the current level.
9. **OPTIONAL.** Page templates allow you to add modules with optional content to a new page. Complete the following to use a template for this page:
 - i. At **Template Folder**, select the folder where the required template is located.
 - ii. At **Page Template**, select the required template.
10. At **Include In Menu?**, check the check box to include this page in the menu- OR - Uncheck the check box to hide the page.
11. At **Permissions**, set the permissions to view and manage this page. "Setting Page Permissions"

Tip: When setting Permissions, change the selection at Filter By Group to set permissions for any of the related roles.

Page Settings

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this page.

Page Details

Page Name:

Page Title:

Description:

Keywords:

Tags:

Parent Page:

Insert Page: Before After Add to End

Template Folder:

Template Folder:

Page Template:

Include In Menu?

Permissions:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: [+ Add](#)

Copy Page

Localization

Culture Type:

Create Single Neutral Culture Page

Create in Current Culture only.

Create Localized Versions of Page

Advanced Settings

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Basic Settings for New Pages

Basic Settings for Existing Pages

How to set the basic setting for existing pages on the Page Settings page. See "Editing Page Settings". Note: The Page Name field is the only mandatory field.

1. Go to the **Basic Settings - Page Details** section and edit any of the following settings.
2. In the **Page Name** text box, enter a name for the page. If this page is displayed in the menu, this will be the name in the menu.
3. In the **Page Title** text box, enter a short, descriptive sentence summarizing the page content. The title is used by search engines to identify the information contained on the page. It is recommended that the title contains at least 5 highly descriptive words and does not exceed 200 characters.
4. In the **Description** text box, enter a description of the page content. The description is used by search engines to identify the information contained on the page. It is recommended that the description contains at least 5 words and does not exceed 1000 characters.
5. In the **Keywords** text box, enter key words for this page separated by comma.
6. At **Tags**, select one or more tags associated with this page. Page tagging is a way of categorizing content for more meaningful search results. Note: Tags can be created by users (See "Tagging Page Content") or editors (See "Creating a Vocabulary").
7. At **Parent Page**, select **<None Specified>** to set this page as a parent page - OR - Select the parent page from the drop-down box. Note: Users can only select parent pages which they have been granted **Add, Full Control** permissions for (Edit permissions in Community Edition)
8. At **Include In Menu?**, check the check box to include this page in the menu - OR - Uncheck the check box to hide the page.
9. At **Permissions**, set the permissions to view and manage this page. See "Setting Page Permissions"
10. **OPTIONAL.** At **Copy Permissions to Descendants**, click the [Copy Permissions](#) link. "Copying Permissions to Descendant Pages"
11. Click the [Update](#) link.

Tip: When setting Permissions, you can change the selection at Filter By Group and set permissions for any of the related roles before updating.

For Example: In the below screen capture, permission have been set to enable All Users to view the page, members of the Page Editors role to edit the page, and the user with the username Jack has been denied permission to edit the page. This means that Jack will not be able to edit the page even if he is a member of the Page Editor role.

Page Settings

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this page.

Page Details

Page Name:

Page Title:

Description:

Keywords:

Tags:

Parent Page:

Include In Menu?

Permissions:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Product Managers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: [+ Add](#)

Copy Permissions to Descendants: [Copy Permissions](#)

Advanced Settings







Update Delete Cancel


Basic page settings when adding a new page

Setting Page Permissions



How to set page permissions by username and roles. This tutorial assumes you are on the Page Settings page of a page. Note: Access to view and set page permissions is only available to Administrators and users with Edit/Full Control permissions for the page. See "About Page Permissions"

IMPORTANT: In DNN Community edition, page management permissions consist of View and Edit permissions only. In DNN Professional, page management includes ten different permissions for page management which are the same for both users and roles. See "About Page Permissions"



1. Go to the Basic Settings - Page Details section.
2. Go to **Permissions**.
3. At **Username**, enter the username of a user that you want to grant or deny page viewing permissions to, and then click the  Add link.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Filter By Group**, select from the following options:
 - **< All Roles >**: Select to view all roles (both global role and roles groups) in one single list.
 - **< Global Roles >**: Select to view all roles which are not associated with a Role Group. E.g. Administrators, All Users, Registered Users, and Unauthenticated Users.
 - **[Role Group Name]**: Select the name of a Role Group to view the roles within that group.
5. In the **View** (or **View Page**) column, click on the check box beside a user/role repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed.
 -  **Permission Granted**:: Permission to view the page is granted.
 -  **Permission Denied**: Permission to view the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
 - **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot view the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control/Edit Page permissions.
6. If you are using DNN Community Edition, Skip to Step 15.
7. In the **Add** column, select from these options:
 -  **Permission Granted**: Users with Add permissions for a page can add child pages to that page. They cannot add any parent pages, and they cannot add child pages to any other pages.
 -  **Permission Denied**: Permission to add child pages is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
 - **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to add pages unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.
8. In the **Add Content** column, select from these options:
 -  **Permission Granted**: Users with Add Content permissions for a page can edit content on the page. These users can add, move and delete modules, as well as manage the content and settings for modules on the page.

-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to add and manage module content is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to view the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.



9. In the **Copy** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Copy permission can make a copy any page they can view. The new page can only be a child of the page they have copy permissions for.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to copy the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to copy the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.



10. In the **Delete** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Delete permissions can delete the page. If the page has child pages they are also deleted when the parent is deleted, however the user does not automatically have Delete permissions for these child pages.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to delete the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to delete the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.


11. In the **Export** column, select from these options:


-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Export permissions can export a page.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to export the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to export the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

12. In the **Import** column, select from these options:



-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Import permissions can import a page.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to import the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Users cannot import the page unless Full Control/Edit permission is granted.

13. In the **Manage Settings** column, select from these options:



-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Manage Settings permissions can change the page settings. Users can edit all of the settings on the Settings page, except for the permissions section which will not be visible.

-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to manage settings the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to manage settings for the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

14. In the **Navigate** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Navigate permissions can view a page in the navigation menu. Users can have this permission without view permissions, in which case they will not be able to view any content on the page but the page will be visible in the menu.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to navigate to the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to navigate to the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

15. In the **Full Control** (or **Edit Page**) column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Full Control permissions have full administrative rights for the page. This permission is the same as the Edit Page permission in the Community Edition. This role overrides other settings.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to delete the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified.

16. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Permissions:

Filter By Group:

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bloggers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chat Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EditUser	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Admin	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Member	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Global Moderator	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Module Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>						<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Page Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: Add


Copy Permissions to Descendants: [Copy Permissions](#)

Page Permissions in DNN Professional Edition

Setting Advanced Settings for New Pages

An overview of the advanced settings for new pages. All advanced page settings are optional. This tutorial assumes you are in the process of adding a new page or editing an existing page. See "Adding a Page via the Page Settings Page", or "Editing Page Settings"

1. **Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section.
2. In the **Appearance** section, complete any of the following **optional** settings:
 - a. At **Icon**, select an image to be displayed beside the page name in the menu. This is also used as the Small Icon in the Console module.
 - b. At **Large Icon**, select an image to be displayed as the Large Icon for the Console module.
 - c. At **Page Skin**, select **Host** or **Site** to view the associated skins and then select a skin from the drop down list. If **<Use Portal Default>** is selected, the default Portal Skin is used.

- d. At **Page Container**, select **Host** or **Site** to view the associated containers and then select a container from the drop down list. If **<Use Portal Default>** is selected, the default Portal Container is used.
 - e. At **Disabled**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if the page name is not a link. I.e. When you click on the page name in the menu nothing happens. Typically this option is selected for Parent pages and provides a way for users to navigate to a Child page.
 - Unchecked the check box for this page name to be a link to the page. This is the default option.
 - f. At **Refresh Internal (seconds)**, enter the interval to wait between automatic page refreshes. (E.g. Enter "60" for 1 minute or 60 seconds.) Leave field blank to disable.
 - g. At **Page Header Tags** enter any tags (i.e. meta-tags) that should be rendered in the "HEAD" tag of the HTML for this page.
3. In the **Other Settings**, the following **OPTIONAL** settings are available:
- a. At **Secure?** check the check box to force this page to use a secure connection or secure socket layer (SSL). This option requires the Administrator to configure the SSL Settings on the Admin > Site Settings page.
 - b. At **Site Map Priority**, enter the desired priority (between 0 and 1.0). This helps determine how this page is ranked in Google with respect to other pages on your site (0.5 is the default).
 - c. At **Start Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select the first date the page is viewable.
 - d. At **End Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select the last date the page is viewable. Note: Expired pages can be viewed by Administrators via the Admin > Pages page.
 - e. **OPTIONAL**. At **Link URL**, to set this page to be a navigation link to another resource, select or add the Link here. See "About the Link Control"
 - f. At **Permanently Redirect?**, check the check box to notify the client that this page should be considered as permanently moved. This would allow Search Engines to modify their URL's to directly link to the resource. Note: This setting is ignored if the Link Type is set to None.
4. Click the  [Update](#) link.

[-] **Advanced Settings**

In this section, you can set up more advanced settings for this page.

[-] **Appearance**

 **Icon:**

Link Type:

- File (A File On Your Site)**
- System Image**

File Location:

Root

File Name:

<None Specified>

[Upload New File](#)

 **Large icon:**

Link Type:

- File (A File On Your Site)**
- System Image**

File Location:

Root

File Name:

<None Specified>

[Upload New File](#)

 **Page Skin:**

- Host**
- Site**

<Use Portal Default>


 [Preview](#)

 **Page Container:**


- Host**
- Site**

<Use Portal Default>

 [Preview](#)

 **Copy design to descendants:**

 **Disabled:**

 **Refresh Interval (seconds):**

 **Page Header Tags:**

[-] **Other Settings**

 **Secure?**

 **Site Map Priority:**

 **Start Date:**

[Calendar](#)

 **End Date:**

[Calendar](#)

 **Link Url:**

Link Type:

- None**
- URL (A Link To An External Resource)**
- Page (A Page On Your Site)**
- File (A File On Your Site)**


 **Permanently Redirect?**

Advanced settings for new pages

Advanced Settings for Existing Pages

How to set the advanced settings for existing pages on the Page Settings page. See "Editing Page Settings". All advanced page settings are optional.

1. **Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section.
2. In the **Appearance** section, complete any of the following optional settings:
 - a. At **Icon**, select an image to be displayed beside the page name in the menu. This is also used as the Small Icon in the Console module.
 - b. At **Large Icon**, select an image to be displayed as the Large Icon for the Console module.
 - c. At **Page Skin**, select **Host** or **Site** to view the associated skins and then select a skin from the drop down list. If **<Use Portal Default>** is selected, the default Portal Skin is used.
 - d. At **Page Container**, select **Host** or **Site** to view the associated containers and then select a container from the drop down list. If **<Use Portal Default>** is selected, the default Portal Container is used.
 - e. At **Copy Design to Descendants**, click the [Copy Design](#) link. "Copying Design to Children Pages"
 - f. At **Disabled**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if the page name is not a link. I.e. When you click on the page name in the menu nothing happens. Typically this option is selected for Parent pages and provides a way for users to navigate to a Child page.
 - Uncheck the check box for this page name to be a link to the page. This is the default option.
 - g. At **Refresh Internal (seconds)**, enter the interval to wait between automatic page refreshes. (E.g. Enter "60" for 1 minute or 60 seconds.) Leave field blank to disable.
 - h. At **Page Header Tags** enter any tags (i.e. meta-tags) that should be rendered in the "HEAD" tag of the HTML for this page.
3. In the **Cache Settings** section, set the following optional setting:
 - a. At **Output Cache Provider**, select the provider to use for this page.

4. In the **Other Settings**, the following settings are available:
 - a. At **Secure?**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to force this page to use a secure connection (SSL). This option will only be enabled if the host has enabled SSL. See "Setting Portal SSL Settings".
 - Uncheck the check box remove use of SSL connection.
 - b. In the **Site Map Priority** text box, enter the desired priority (between 0 and 1.0). This helps determine how this page is ranked in Google with respect to other pages on your site (0.5 is the default).
 - c. At **Start Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select the first date the page is viewable.
 - d. At **End Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select the last date the page is viewable. Note: Expired pages can be viewed by Administrators via the Admin > Pages page. See "Viewing any Page (Tabs Module)"
 - e. At **Link URL**, to set this page to be a navigation link to another resource, select or add the link here. See "About the Link Control"
 - f. At **Permanently Redirect?**, check the check box to notify the client that this page should be considered as permanently moved. This would allow Search Engines to modify their URL's to directly link to the resource. Note: This setting is ignored if the Link Type is set to None.
5. Click the  [Update](#) link.

[-] **Advanced Settings**

In this section, you can set up more advanced settings for this page.

[-] **Appearance**

 **Icon:**

Link Type:

- File (A File On Your Site)**
- System Image**

File Location:

Root

File Name:

<None Specified>

[Upload New File](#)

 **Large icon:**

Link Type:

- File (A File On Your Site)**
- System Image**

File Location:

Root

File Name:

<None Specified>

[Upload New File](#)

 **Page Skin:**

- Host**
- Site**

<Use Portal Default>


 [Preview](#)

 **Page Container:**


- Host**
- Site**

<Use Portal Default>

 [Preview](#)

 **Copy design to descendants:**

 **Disabled:**

 **Refresh Interval (seconds):**

 **Page Header Tags:**

[-] **Other Settings**

 **Secure?**

 **Site Map Priority:**

 **Start Date:**

[Calendar](#)

 **End Date:**

[Calendar](#)

 **Link Url:**

Link Type:

- None**
- URL (A Link To An External Resource)**
- Page (A Page On Your Site)**
- File (A File On Your Site)**

 **Permanently Redirect?**

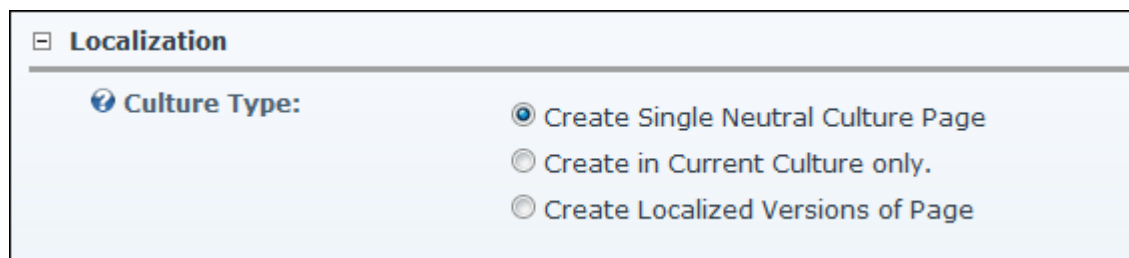
Advanced settings for existing pages

Localization Settings for New Pages

How to set the localization setting for new pages on the Page Settings page. Note: The Localization section only displays if content localization is enabled. See "About Content Localization"

In the **Localization** section, select from the following:

- **Create Single Neutral Culture Page:** Select to create a single page which is shared for all languages.
- **Create in Current Culture only:** Select to create a page for the language you are currently viewing the site in.
- **Create Localized Versions of Page:** Select to a version of this page for each language. This is the default option.



Setting Localization Settings for New Pages

Adding and Managing Modules

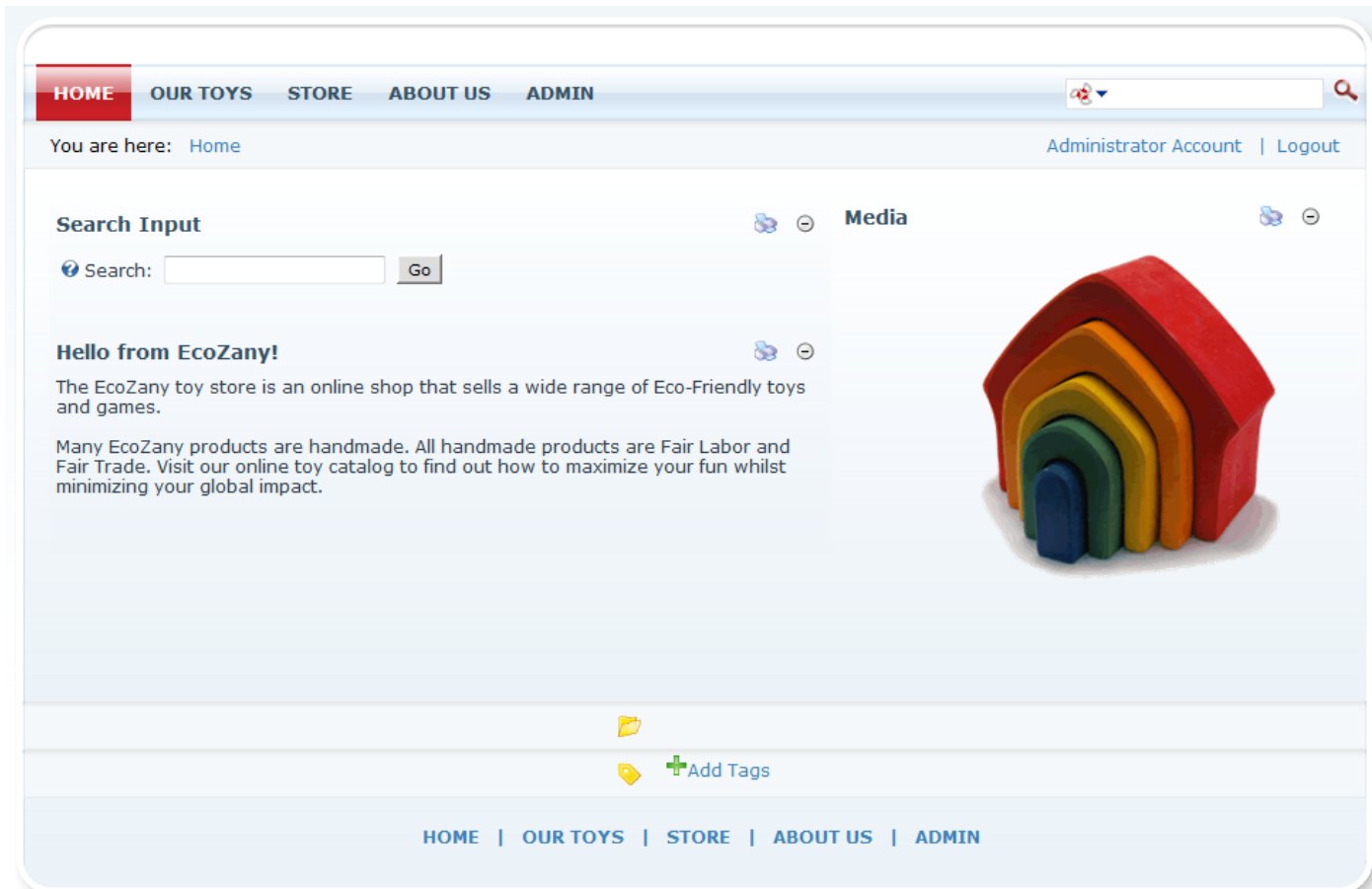
About Modules

DNN uses a modular design system to display content on a page. One or more modules are added to each site page to create and manage the site content. There are many different types of modules, each managing a different type of site content or site administrative tasks.

Your Host can install additional modules. Additional modules can be purchased from the Snowcovered.com.

Related Topics:

- See "About Module Settings" and the related section for details on setting the module settings which are common to all modules
- See "Installing Available Extensions"
- See "Installing a New Module"



A page which has the Search Input, HTML and Media modules added to it

Module Basics

About Module Basics

All users can perform the following actions on modules, however these actions may be disabled on one or more modules.


- See "Minimizing and Maximizing Content"
- See "Printing Content"
- See "Subscribing to Syndicated Content"
- See "Tagging Page Content"

Adding a New Module

How to add a new module to a page using the RibbonBar. Adding a new module inserts a module without content into the current page.

Tip: You must be authorized to deploy a module and have the appropriate page editing permissions to add a module to a page.

Important. If content localization is enabled, See "Adding a Module to all Languages" or "Adding Modules to a Secondary Language Only" as required.

1. Maximize the Control Panel.
2. On the RibbonBar, select the Common Tasks tab and at **Add Module** select **New** - OR - On the Iconbar, go the Module Insertion section and select **Add New Module**.
3. At **Module**, select the module to be added. E.g. HTML Pro
4. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Title** text box, enter a Title for the module. E.g. Products. If no title is entered, the name of the module is used by default. E.g. About Us
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Visibility**, select from the following options:
 - **Same As Page:** This sets the module as visible to all roles/users who can view this page. This is the default setting.
 - **Page Editors Only:** The sets module as only visible only to the roles/user who can edit this page. Select this option if you want to add content and configure the module settings before others can view the module.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Pane**, select the pane you want to insert the module into. The module is added to the Content Pane by default. The names of other panes will depend upon the skin applied to this page. If you select a pane other than the Content Pane, the position of the pane is briefly shown on the page.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **Insert**, select the placement of the module from the first drop-down box. One or more of the following options is available, depending on the number of modules located in the selected pane:
 - **Top:** Select to add the module above all existing modules within the selected pane. Skip to Step 9.
 - **Above:** Select to add the module above another chosen module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added above.
 - **Below:** Select to add the module below another module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added below.
 - **Bottom:** This adds the module below all existing modules within the selected pane. This is the default option.
8. Click the **Add Module** button on the RibbonBar - OR - Click the  Add Module To Page link on the Iconbar. For modules that enable you to add content, "Adding Module Content"

Tip: When you add the module listed as Users & Roles, three separate modules (Security Roles, My Profile and User Accounts) are added to the page. These modules do not need to be used on the same page. You can delete one or all of them, or move them to different pages as you like.

Adding a New Module using the RibbonBar

Adding a New Module using the Iconbar

Adding an Existing Module (RibbonBar)

How to add an existing module to the current page using the RibbonBar. The module content is shared so if you update the content on one module the content in the other module also updates. **Important.** You cannot add an existing module to the page where it already exists.

Tip: You must be authorized to deploy a module and have the appropriate page editing permissions to add a module to a page.

1. Maximize ∇ the Control Panel.
2. Select the Common Tasks tab and at **Add Module** select **Existing**.
3. At **Page**, select the page where the existing module is located.
4. At **Module**, select the module to be added. Note: Selecting the module here appends either 'with content' or 'without content' to the Copy Module field below depending on whether the selected module supports copying of content.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Visibility**, select from the following options:
 - **Same As Page:** This sets the module as visible to all roles/users who can view this page. This is the default setting.
 - **Page Editors Only:** The sets module as only visible only to the roles/user who can edit this page. Select this option if you want to add content and configure the module settings before others can view the module.

6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Pane**, select the pane you want to insert the module into. The module is added to the Content Pane by default. The names of other panes will depend upon the skin applied to this page. If you select a pane other than the Content Pane, the position of the pane is briefly shown on the page.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **Insert**, select the placement of the module from the first drop-down box. One or more of the following options is available, depending on the number of modules located in the selected pane:
 - **Top:** Select to add the module above all existing modules within the selected pane. Skip to Step 9.
 - **Above:** Select to add the module above another chosen module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added above.
 - **Below:** Select to add the module below another module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added below.
 - **Bottom:** This adds the module below all existing modules within the selected pane. This is the default option.
8. At **Copy Module**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to create an independent instance of this module. This new module contains both the settings and (where applicable) the content of the existing module however you can modify this module without affecting the existing module.
 - Uncheck the check box to display the existing module on this page. This module shares the settings and (where applicable) the content of the existing module and modifying either instance will update both versions.
9. Click the **Add Module** button.

Related Topics:

- "Adding Module Content"

The screenshot shows a dialog box for adding a module. It has several dropdown menus and radio buttons. The 'Existing' radio button is selected and circled in red. The 'Page' dropdown is set to 'About Us', the 'Module' dropdown is also set to 'About Us', and the 'Visibility' dropdown is set to 'Same As Page'. On the right side, the 'Pane' dropdown is set to 'ContentPane', the 'Insert' dropdown is set to 'Above', and the 'Module' dropdown is set to 'Links'. At the bottom of the dialog, there is an 'Add Module' button and a link that says 'Insert Module'.



Adding an Existing Module using the RibbonBar

Adding an Existing Module (Iconbar)

How to add an existing module to the current page using the Iconbar. The module content is shared so if you update the content on one module the content in the other module also updates.

Important. You cannot add an existing module to the page where it already exists.

Tip: You must be authorized to deploy a module and have the appropriate page editing permissions to add a module to a page.

1. Maximize  the Control Panel.
2. Go the Module Insertion section and select **Add Existing Module**.
3. At **Page**, select the page where the existing module is located.
4. At **Module**, select the module to be added.
5. **OPTIONAL**. At **Visibility**, select from the following options:
 - **Same As Page**: This sets the module as visible to all roles/users who can view this page. This is the default setting.
 - **Page Editors Only**: The sets module as only visible only to the roles/user who can edit this page. Select this option if you want to add content and configure the module settings before others can view the module.
6. **OPTIONAL**. At **Pane**, select the pane you want to insert the module into. The module is added to the Content Pane by default. The names of other panes will depend upon the skin applied to this page. If you select a pane other than the Content Pane, the position of the pane is briefly shown on the page.
7. **OPTIONAL**. At **Insert**, select the placement of the module from the first drop-down box. One or more of the following options is available, depending on the number of modules located in the selected pane:
 - **Top**: Select to add the module above all existing modules within the selected pane. Skip to Step 9.
 - **Above**: Select to add the module above another chosen module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added above.
 - **Below**: Select to add the module below another module within the selected pane.
 - a. At **Module**, select the module the new module will be added below.
 - **Bottom**: This adds the module below all existing modules within the selected pane. This is the default option.
8. Click the  [Add Module To Page](#) link. For modules that enable you to add content.

Related Topics:


- "Adding Module Content"

Add New Module
 Add Existing Module

Module:
 Pane:

Title:
 Insert:


Visibility:
 Module:

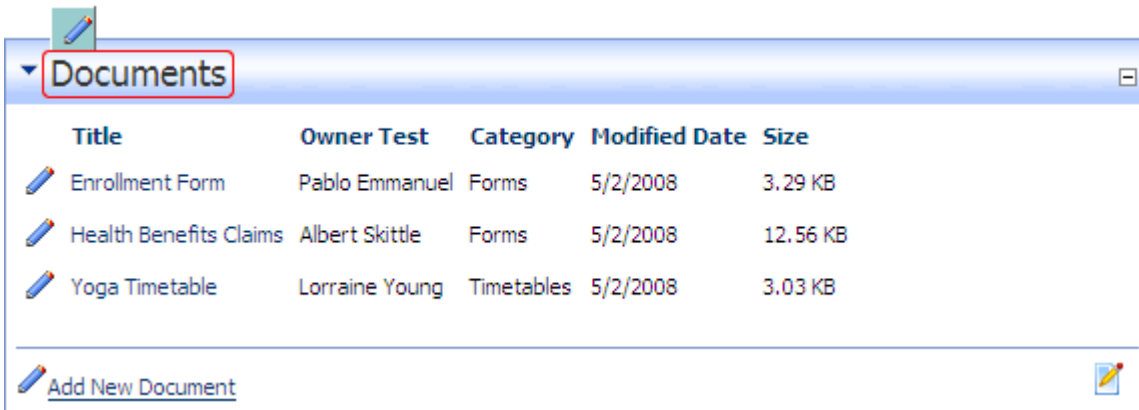


Adding an Existing Module using the Iconbar




Editing Module Title Inline



How to edit the title of a module inline. Note: If this setting has been disabled, the title can instead be edited by a Page Editor on the Module Settings page. See "About Module Settings".


1. Place your mouse over the module title to be edited. This displays the **Edit**  button above the module title.

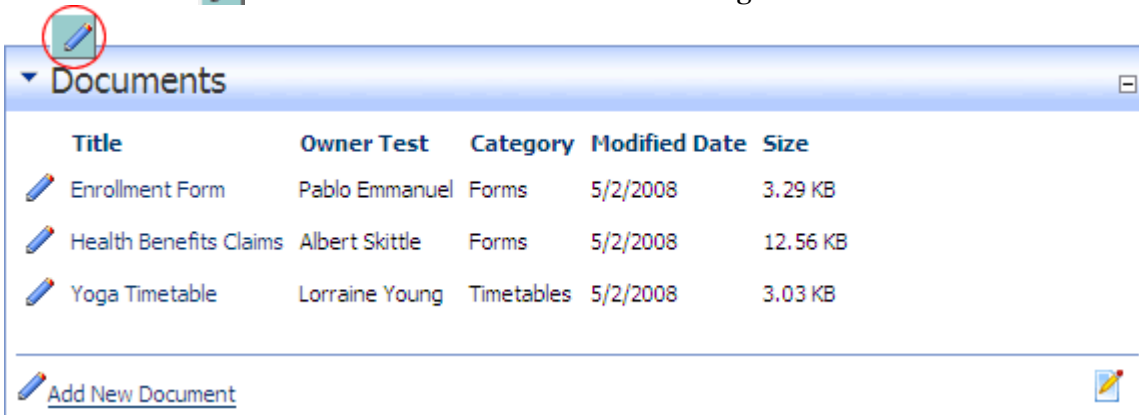


The screenshot shows a table titled "Documents" with the following columns: Title, Owner Test, Category, Modified Date, and Size. The table contains three rows of data. An edit icon (pencil) is positioned above the "Documents" title, which is also highlighted with a red box.

Title	Owner Test	Category	Modified Date	Size
 Enrollment Form	Pablo Emmanuel	Forms	5/2/2008	3.29 KB
 Health Benefits Claims	Albert Skittle	Forms	5/2/2008	12.56 KB
 Yoga Timetable	Lorraine Young	Timetables	5/2/2008	3.03 KB



 [Add New Document](#) 

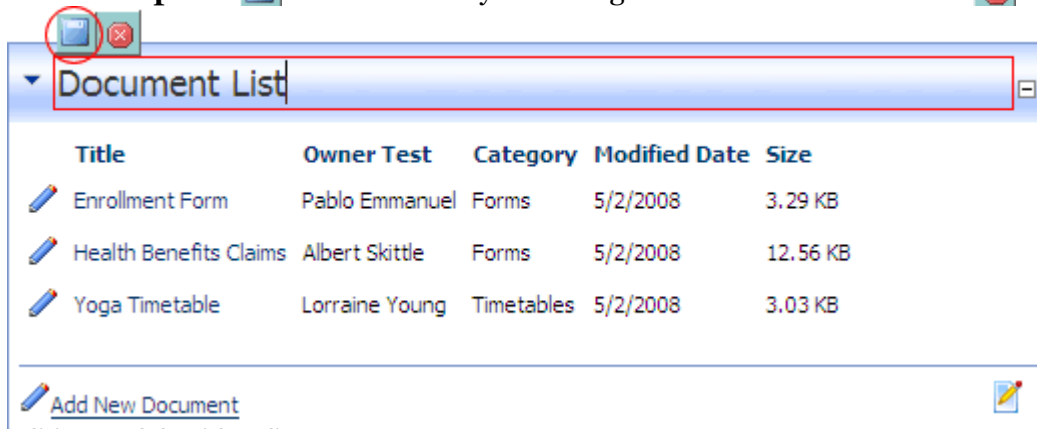
2. Click the **Edit**  button. This enables inline title editing.



The screenshot is identical to the previous one, but the edit icon above the "Documents" title is now circled in red, indicating it has been clicked.

3. Edit the title.

Click the **Update**  button to save your changes - OR - Click the **Cancel**  button to cancel your changes.







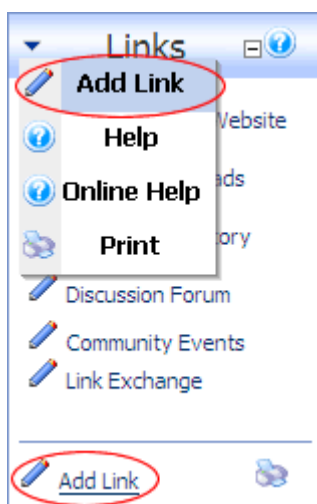
Editing Module Title Inline

Adding Module Content

How to add content to a module. This tutorial demonstrates how content is typically added to modules, however this is not typical of all modules. For detailed tutorials on add content to different module types, see the "Managing Individual Modules" and "Advanced Site Management" sections of this manual.

Tip: If the Control Panel is displayed, ensure EDIT mode is selected.

1. Select  **Add [Item]** from the  module menu - OR - Click the  [Add \[Item\]](#) link (typically located at the base of the module).
2. Complete the form fields.
3. Click the  [Update](#) link.







Adding module content

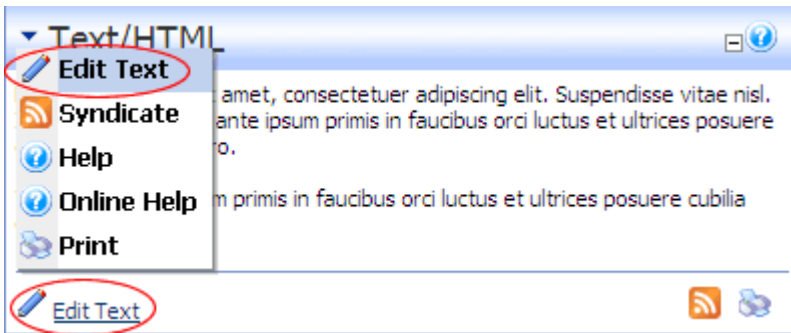
Editing Module Content

How to edit module content. This tutorial demonstrates how content is typically edited on modules, however this is not applicable to all modules. For detailed information on editing content for individual module types, see the "Managing Individual Modules" section of this manual.



*Tip: If the Control Panel, ensure **EDIT** mode is selected.*

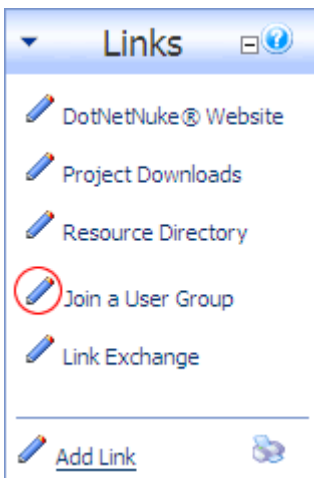
Editing modules with a single content item such as the HTML and IFrame modules:

1. Select  **Edit [Item]** from the  module menu - OR - click the  Edit [Item] link (typically located at the base of the module). This opens the Edit page for this module.
2. Edit the fields.
3. Click the  Update link.



Editing modules with multiple items such as the Announcements and Links modules:

1. Click the **Edit**  button located beside the content to be edited. This opens the edit page for this module.
2. Edit the fields.
3. Click the  Update link.



Editing Module Content


Related Topics:

- See "Editing (Translating) Localized Module Content"
- See "Editing the Content of Shared Modules"

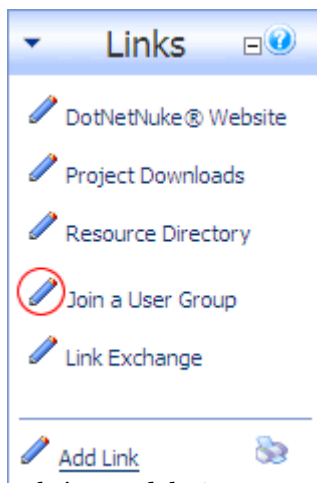
Deleting Module Content

How to delete module content. This tutorial demonstrates how content is typically deleted from a module, however this is not applicable to all modules. For full details on deleting content for individual module types, see the "Managing Individual Modules" section.

Tip: If the Control Panel, ensure EDIT mode is selected.

1. Click the **Edit**  button located beside the content to be deleted.
2. Click the Delete link. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
3. Click the **OK** button to confirm deletion.



Tip: To delete content from modules with a single content item such as the HTML and IFrame modules you can either remove all the content or simply delete the module.

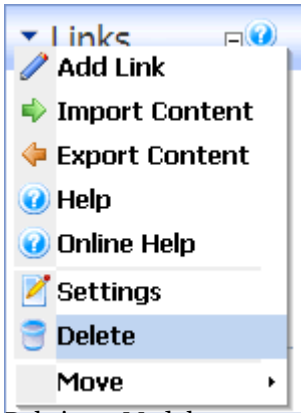


Deleting a Module

How to delete a module from a page.

Tip: Deleted modules are stored in the Recycle Bin.

1. Select  **Delete** from the  module menu. A dialog box asking "Are You Sure You Want To Delete This Module?" is displayed.
2. Click the **OK** button to confirm.



Deleting a Module

Related Topics:





- See "Delete Modules from Secondary Language"

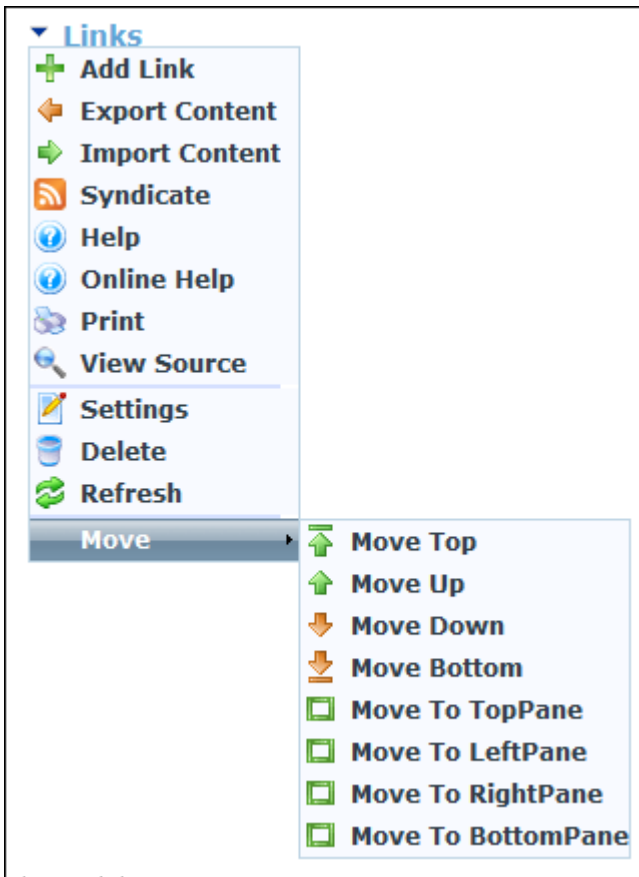
Managing Modules

About the Module Menu

An overview of the tools available from the module menu, also known as the module action menu. This menu enables users with the correct permissions to add and edit module content, delete or move modules, import/export module content, print module content, and view a Syndicated URL of the module content. The menu also provides access to the Module Settings page where users can set module specific setting such as view and edit permissions and design settings can be configured.

Icon	Name	Function
	Add/Edit [Item]	Add a new record to the module or edit the existing content.
	Export Content	Export content from the module. This content can then be imported to a new instance of the same module type. This option is not available on all modules.
	Import Content	Import content to the module. Content must first be exported from another instance of the same module type. This option is not available on all modules.
	Syndicate	The Syndicate option enables users to view a syndicated feed of the module content. This feed can be downloaded to your computer or displayed in another module such as the News Feeds (RSS) module. Syndication must be enabled on the Module Setting page of a module.
	Help	Displays an overview of the purpose of the module as well as basic help on using the module. If Online Help is enabled, a link to view more help is displayed. The Host can also view technical details of the module such as the module creator and module version.
	Online Help	Opens the advanced Online Help as set by the Host in a new web site browser. Note: This setting may be disabled.
	Print	Provides a print friendly copy of the module content for printing. Print must be enabled on the Module Setting page of a module.

Icon	Name	Function
	View Source	Enables the Host to view and update the source files for a module. IMPORTANT. Requires advanced knowledge of ASP.net and DNN.
	Settings	Opens the module settings page for this module.
	Delete	Delete the module. Administrators are able to restore modules from the Recycle Bin.
	Refresh	Refreshes the module with the latest content.
(None)	Move	Move the module to a new pane on the current page, or to a new position within the current pane.




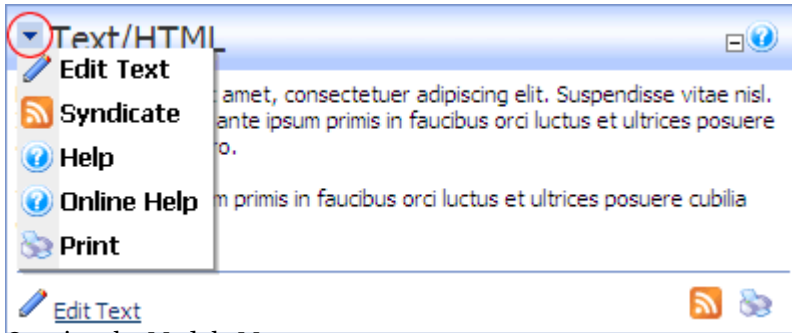
The Module Menu

Opening the Module Menu

How to open the Module Menu, also known as the Module Action Menu.

Tip: If the Control Panel is displayed, ensure Mode is set to Edit.



1. Mouse over the  module menu. This opens the drop-down menu. The range of actions displayed will depend upon your access to this module.

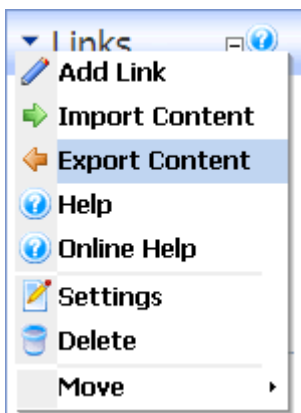


Opening the Module Menu

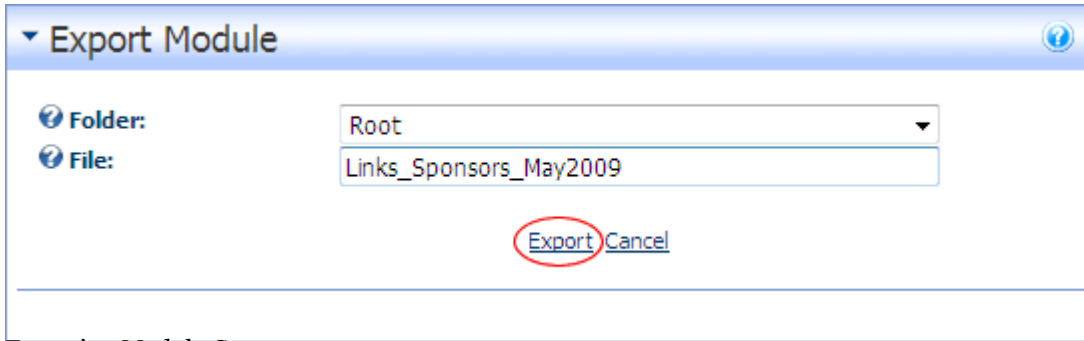
Exporting Module Content

How to export module content. Exported content can then be imported it into another module of the same type. E.g. You can only import content from a Links module into another Links module. Examples of modules which permit importing/exporting include the Announcements, Documents, FAQs, Help, Links, Media, Repository, Survey, HTML, User Defined Table and XML modules.

1. Select  **Export Content** from the  module menu. This opens the Export Module.



2. At **Folder**, select the folder where you want to save the exported content.
3. In the **File** text box, enter a name for the export file. Note: The module type is entered by default. It is useful to keep this as the start of the file name so you can easily identify the module type in the future. E.g. Links_Sponsors_December2011
4. Click the Export link. This creates an XML file which is saved to the selected folder.

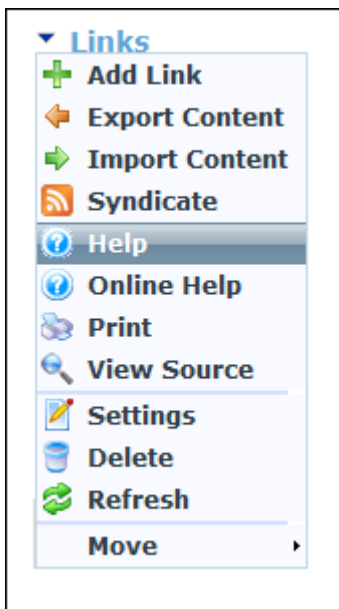


Exporting Module Content

Viewing Module Help

How to read an overview of the module's purpose as well as basic help on using a module. Technical information is also displayed to Host users.

1. Select **Help** from the module menu. This opens the Module Help page for this module.
2. **OPTIONAL.** Click the View Online Help link to view detailed help for this module online. This opens the Online Help resource in a new Web site browser.
3. Click the Cancel link to return to the module.



Viewing Module Help

About The Links Module

The Links Module produces a list of hyperlinks to any tab, image or file on your portal or to a web page, image or file on the web. The links can be set to display vertically, horizontal or in a drop down box. The links appear alphabetically by default. An indexing field facilitates custom sorting. A supplemental description can be set to appear either on mouseover or on the click of a dynamically generated link. Link click tracking and logged are available.

Add Link

1. Add a **Links** module, or go to an existing **Links** module.
2. Click **Add Link**.
3. At **Title**, enter the title for the link.
4. At **Link Type**, select **URL**, **Page** or **File** and then at **Link** select or enter the required link, page or file.
5. At **Track Number Of Times This Link Is Clicked?** (optional), check the box if required.
6. At **Log The User, Date, And Time For Every Link Click** (optional), check the box if required.
7. At **Description**, enter a description of the Link.
8. At **View Order** (optional), enter the View Order for the Link.
9. Click **Update**.

Cancel **View Online Help**

Module Information

Displays the technical details of the associated module instance.

Organization:

Owner: DNN

Email:

Url:

Module: DNN_Links

Version: 4.0.1

Definition: Links


Control:

Source: DesktopModules/Links/Links.ascx

The Module Help Page

Importing Module Content

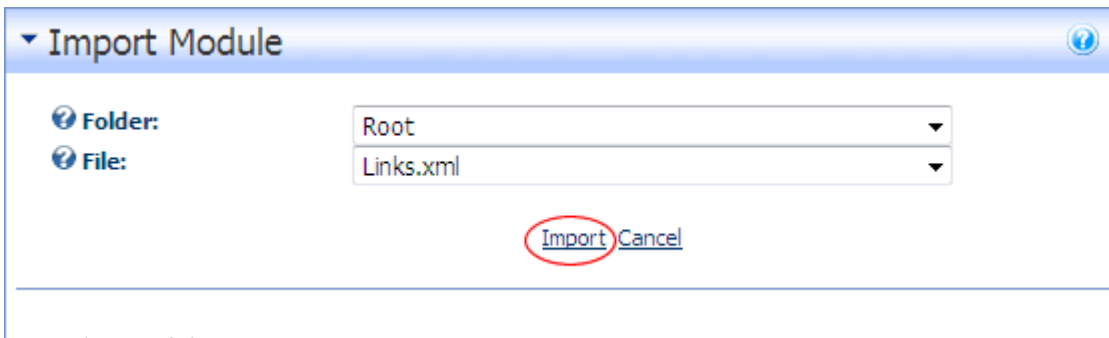
How to import module content. Content must first be exported from a module of the same type. E.g. You can only import content from a Links module into another Links module. Examples of modules which have importing/exporting include the Announcements, Documents, FAQs, Help, Links, Media, Repository, Survey, HTML, User Defined Table and XML modules.

1. Select  **Import Content** from the ▼ module menu. This opens the Import Module.



2. At **Folder**, select the folder where exported file is located from the drop-down list.
3. At **File**, select the file name from the drop-down list.
4. Click the Import link.

Tip: If the module already contains content, the imported content is merged with the existing content.



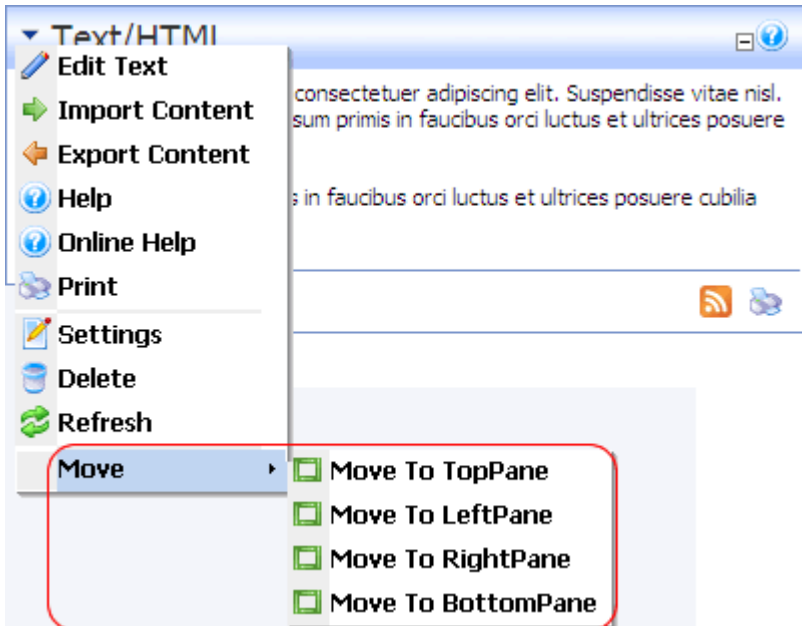
Importing Module Content

Moving a Module to a New Pane

How to move a module to another pane on the same page.

1. Mouse over the ▾ module menu.
2. Mouse over the **Move** option.
3. Select **Move To [PaneName]** from the available options. The pane names and number of panes listed depends upon the panes included in the skin set for this page. Typical options are:
 - **Move To TopPane**
 - **Move To LeftPane**
 - **Move To ContentPane**






- **Move To RightPane**
- **Move To BottomPane**

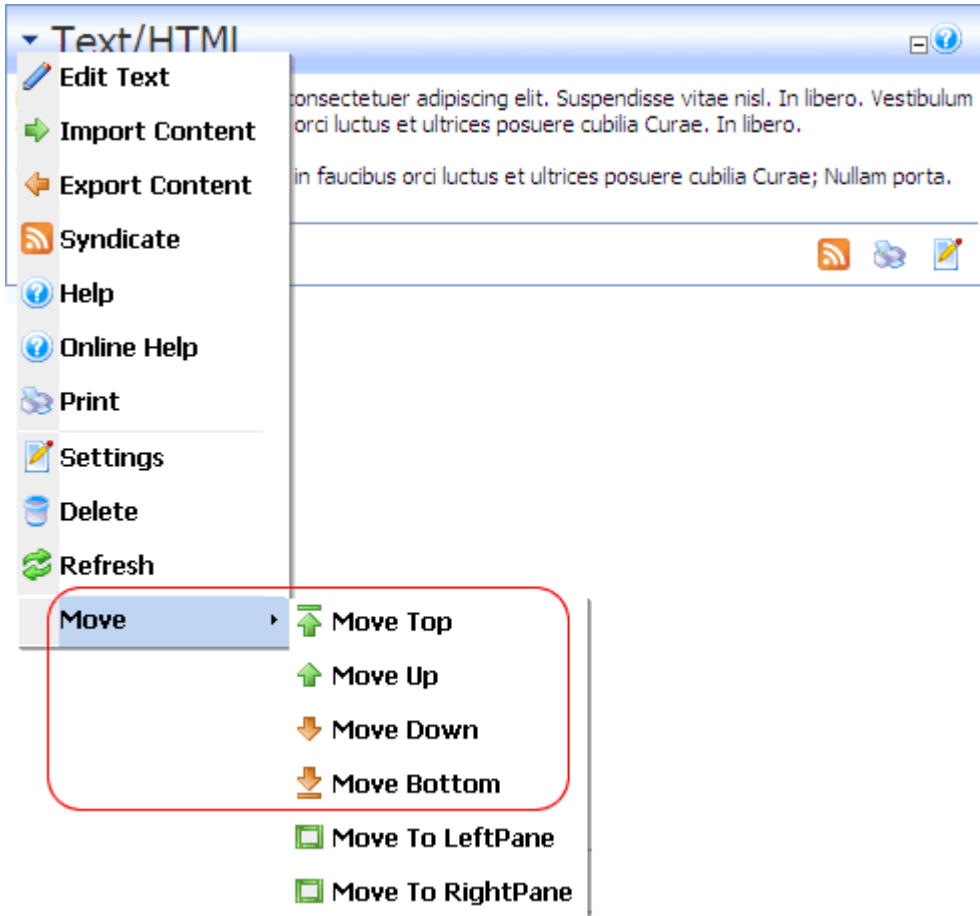


Moving a Module to a New Pane

Moving Module Position in Same Pane

How to move a module to a new position in the same pane.

1. Mouse over the  module menu.
2. Mouse over the **Move** option.
3. Select a **Move [Position]** from the available options. These options depend upon the number of modules located in the pane. Typical options are:
 -  **Move Top:** Moves the module to the top position in this pane
 -  **Move Up:** Moves the module down one position in this pane
 -  **Move Down:** Moves the module down one position in this pane
 -  **Move Bottom:** Moves the module to the bottom position in this pane



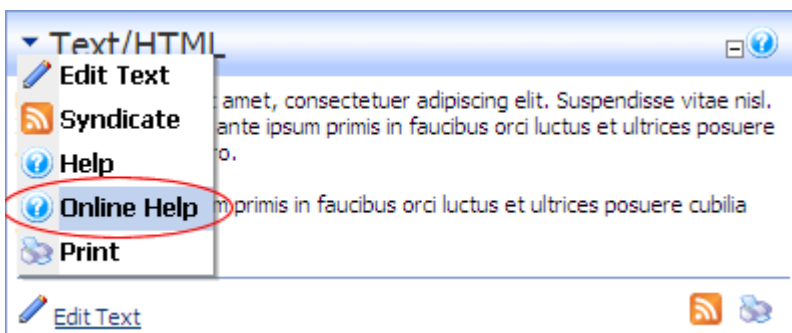
Moving a module to a new position in the same pane

Viewing Online Help

How to view the Online Help web site associated with your site. This option may not be available on your site. By default, this opens the free resource called DNN Online Help which is maintained by DNN Corp.

Here's how to read basic help on using the current module:

1. Select **Online Help** from the **Text/HTML** module menu. This opens the Online Help web site in a new Web site browser.



Viewing Online Help

Refreshing Module Content




How to refresh module content.

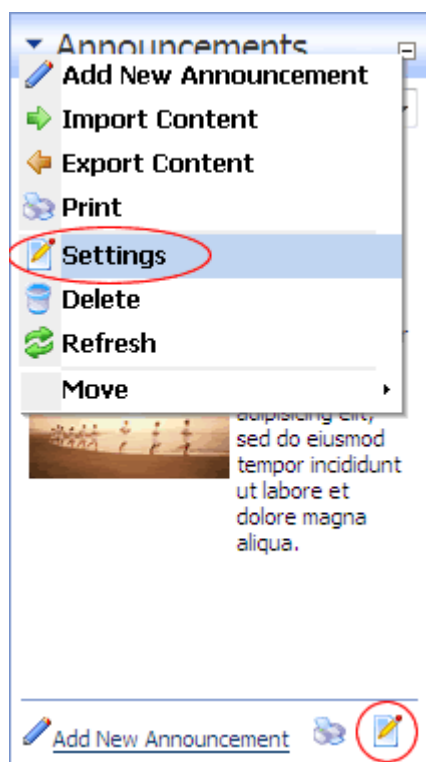
1. Select  **Refresh** from the  module menu.

Viewing/Editing Module Settings

How to access the Module Settings page of any module. This page provides Page Editors and Administrators with access to configure a wide range of module options such as permissions, design and layout.

Tip: Ensure Mode is set to Edit on the Control Panel.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.



2. Edit one or more settings as required and then click the  Update link.

▼ Module

☐ Module Settings

In this section, you can define the settings that relate to the Module content and permissions (ie. those settings that will be the same on all pages that the Module appears).

☐ Basic Settings

🔒 Module:

🔒 Module Title:

🔒 Tags:

🔒 Permissions:

Filter By Group: < Global Roles >

	View	Edit Content	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Full Control
Administrators	🔒	🔒	🔒	🔒	🔒	🔒	🔒
All Users	🔒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Product Managers	🔒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Registered Users	🔒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Subscribers	🔒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Unauthenticated Users	🔒	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Username: + Add

Inherit View permissions from Page

The Module Settings page

Managing Module Settings

About Module Settings

All modules include a Module Settings page which enables authorized users to modify basic settings related to the module content (e.g. module title, module header and footer, module start and end dates) and module permissions (e.g. which roles or users are able to view and manage the module). This page also controls more advanced settings related to the design of the module (containers, borders, printing) and site wide module settings.

All modules have a Settings page which is accessed by clicking the Settings option in the module menu, or by clicking the **Settings** button at the base of the module. The Module Settings page enables authorized users to modify basic module settings related to the module content (e.g. module title, module header and footer, module start and end dates) and module permissions (e.g. which roles are able to view and edit a module). This page also controls more advanced settings related to the design of the module (containers, borders, printing) and site wide module settings.

The page is divided into these three major sections:

- **Module Settings:** Settings relating to the Module content. Module Settings are settings which are the same on all pages where the Module appears. This section includes module permissions where access to view, edit and manage the module is set. Some modules have additional permissions to add/edit and manage module content. This section is divided into Basic Settings, Advanced Settings and Added to Pages.
- **Page Settings:** Settings specific to this particular occurrence of the module for this page. This section is divided into Basic Settings and Advanced Settings.
- **Module Specific Settings:** Several modules have additional settings which are specific to this module type. This section is typically named according to the module type. E.g. This section is named Links Settings on the Links module. Modules which have specific settings include the Announcements, Documents, Events, FAQs and many more.

Module Settings




Basic Settings

Setting the Module Title


How to edit the module title via the Module Settings page. You may also be able to edit to title inline. See "Editing Module Title Inline".


*Tip: The **Display Container?** setting must be checked for this setting. If it isn't, the Title cannot be viewed.*

Tip: The Title only displays if the container applied to the module includes the [TITLE] skin token.

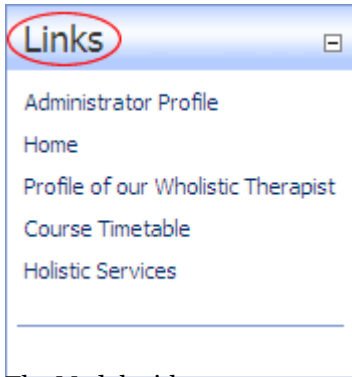
1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Module Settings - Basic Settings** section.
3. In the **Module Title** text box, edit the module title.

☐ **Basic Settings**

 **Module:**

 **Module Title:**





4. Click the  Update link.



The Module title

Setting Module Tags

How to associate one or more tags with a module.





1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Module Settings - Basic Settings** section.
3. At **Tags**, select one or more tags to be associated with this page. Page tagging is a way of categorizing content for more meaningful search results. Note: Tags can be created by users (See "Tagging Page Content") or editors (See "Creating a Vocabulary").
4. Click the  Update link.

Setting Module Permissions

How to set permissions to view and edit a module. Permission can be granted or denied for a role or for an individual user. Additional permission types are available on some modules such as the Events module.


Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

Fine grain management of modules is available In Professional Edition by providing these additional settings: Delete, Import, Export, Manage Settings, and Full Control.



1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Module Settings - Basic Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Permissions** field and select from the following options.
4. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Username** text box, enter the username of a user to whom you wish to grant or deny module permissions, and then click the  Add link. Repeat for additional usernames.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Filter By Group**, select from the following options:

- **< All Roles >**: Select to view all roles (both global and group roles) in one single list.
- **< Global Roles >**: Select to view all roles which are not associated with a Role Group. This includes Administrators, All Users, Registered Users, and Unauthenticated Users.
- **[Role Name]**: Select the name of a Role Group to view the roles within that group.

6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Inherit View permissions from Page**, select from these options:



- Check the check box if the users authorized to view this module are the same as the page it is located on. This displays the  Security Roles image in the View (or View Module) column indicating that the view security is 'locked'. Skip to step 7.
- Uncheck the check box to set different permissions for viewing this module than set for the page it is located on. If you choose to uncheck this option, the check boxes at View Module will become available.

7. In the **View** (or **View Module**) column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:



- **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot view the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions. Note: Users with Edit Module permissions in DNN Community Edition cannot view the module.
-  **Permission Granted**: Users can view the module.
-  **Permission Denied**: Users cannot view the module, unless Full Control is granted.


8. If you are using DotNetNuke Community Edition, Skip to Step 14.

9. In the **Edit Content** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:

- **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot edit content unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
-  **Permission Granted**: Users can edit content.
-  **Permission Denied**: Users cannot edit content, unless Full Control is granted.

10. In the **Delete** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:

- **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot delete the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
-  **Permission Granted**: Users can delete the module.
-  **Permission Denied**: Users cannot delete the module, unless Full Control is granted.

11. In the **Export** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot export the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can export the module.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot export the module, unless Full Control is granted.
12. In the **Import** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot import the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can import the module.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot import the module, unless Full Control is granted.
13. In the **Manage Settings** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot manage module settings unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can manage module settings.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot manage module settings, unless Full Control is granted.
14. In the **Full Control (or Edit Module)** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users have full control to view the module, manage module content and manage module settings. Note: In DNN Community Edition, View Module permissions must also be granted.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users are denied full control.
15. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Tip: When setting Permissions, you can change the selection at Filter By Group and set permissions for any of the related roles before updating.

For Example: In the below screen capture, permission to view the module are inherited from the page and permission to edit the module has been granted to all Registered Users, apart from the user with the username John.

Permissions:

	View Module	Edit Module
Administrators		
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers		<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users		<input type="checkbox"/>
John		

Username: [Add](#)

Inherit **View** permissions from **Page**

Setting module permissions

About Module Permissions

How to set access to view, edit and manage module content by roles and/or usernames. Here you will find an overview of the different module permissions available. For full details See "Setting Module Permissions"

IMPORTANT: In DNN Community edition, module management permissions consist of only two settings: View and Edit. In DNN Professional, module management has seven permissions.

Professional Edition Module Permissions:

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

Here is the full list of module permissions available in Professional Edition:

- **View:** Users can view the module.
- **Edit Content:** Users with Edit Content permissions can edit the module content.
- **Delete:** Users with delete permissions can delete the module through the module menu.
- **Export:** Users with export permissions will be able to export the content of the module through the module menu.
- **Import:** Users with import permission can import content for the module through the module menu.
- **Manage Settings:** Users with Manage Settings permissions can change any of the module's settings except for the permissions.
- **Full Control:** This is the same as the edit permission from previous versions. Users with full control permissions have full administrator rights for the module.

Permissions:

Filter By Group:

	View	Edit Content	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Full Control
Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bloggers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chat Members	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EditUser	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Admin	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Member	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Global Moderator	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Module Editor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username:

Inherit **View** permissions from **Page**

Module Permissions in DNN Professional Edition

Community Edition Module Permissions:

Here is the list of module permissions available in Community Edition:

- **View Module:** Enable users to view the module on the page.
- **Edit:** Give users full control to edit the module.

Permissions:

	View	Module	Edit	Module
Administrators				
All Users			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users				
Subscribers			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
John				

Username: [Add](#)

Inherit **View** permissions from **Page**

Module Permissions in DNN Community Edition

Page Settings

Basic Settings

Setting Module Content Alignment

How to set the alignment of module content.

Tip: This setting doesn't override the alignment of content formatting using the Rich Text Editor of the HTML module.

1. Select **Settings** from the module menu - OR - Click the **Settings** button.
2. **Maximize** the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Alignment**, select **Left**, **Center**, **Right** or **Not Specified**.
5. Click the [Update](#) link.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon: **Link Type:**

None
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: Calendar

Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):

Alignment of module content

Setting Module Background Color

How to set the background color of a module.

Tip: The look of this setting is dependent on the design of the module container applied to the module.

1. Select **Settings** from the module menu - OR - Click the **Settings** button.
2. **Maximize** the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.

4. In the **Color** text box, enter a color name or hex number. E.g. Navy or #CFCFCF. Find Color code charts at http://www.w3schools.com/Html/html_colors.asp.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:

Link Type:

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

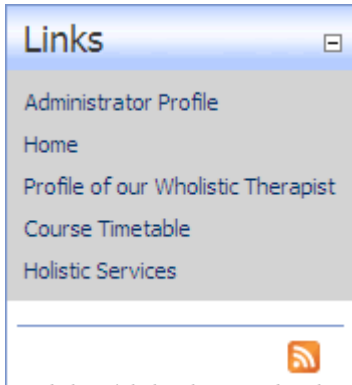
Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**

Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):





5. Click the  Update link.



Module with background color set

Setting Module Border Width

How to set the border width on a module.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. In the **Border** text box, enter a number to set the width of the border in pixels. E.g. 1 = 1 pixel width.
Leave this field blank for no border.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:

Link Type:

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**

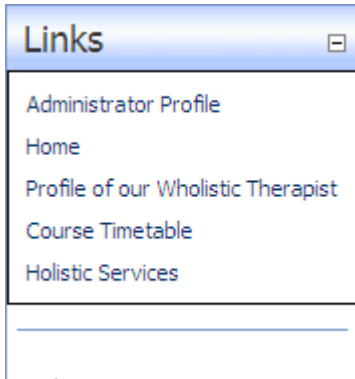
Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):

5. Click the  Update link.

Tip: Uncheck the Display Container? check box to see how the border looks without a module container.









Border set to 1

Setting Visibility of Module Content

How to enable or disable the Maximize/Minimize button on a module. This button is typically displayed in top right corner of the module container. When content is minimized only the module title, header and footer are visible. **IMPORTANT:** The **Display Container?** setting must be checked to enable this function. If it is not, the Maximize/Minimize button cannot be viewed.

Tip: The icon image is only displayed if the container applied to the module includes the [VISIBILITY] skin token.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Collapse/Expand**, select from the following options:
 - **Maximized:** Module content is displayed (maximized) and the **Minimize**  button is displayed.
 - **Minimized:** Module content is hidden (minimized) and the **Maximize**  button is displayed.
 - **None:** Module content is displayed. No button is displayed.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:

Link Type:

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?


Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**

Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):

5. At **Display Container?**, check the check box to display the module container.
6. Click the  Update link.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:

Link Type:

- None
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

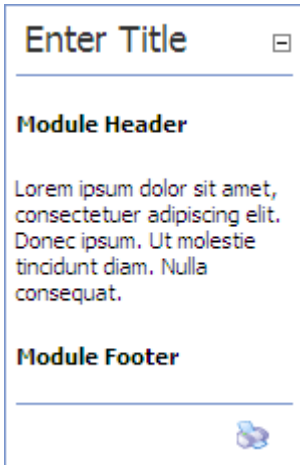
Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: [Calendar](#)

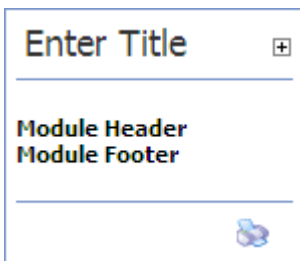
Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 [Preview](#)

Cache Time (secs):







Maximized (Expanded) Content



Minimized (Collapsed) Content





Setting a Module as a WebSlice

How to set a module as a Web Slice. A Web Slice is a snippet of information (in this case the content of a module) that a user can subscribe to using some web site browsers such as Internet Explorer 8 (IE8). Content within Web Slices are automatically updated by IE8 and can be view directly from the Favorites toolbar.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Is a WebSlice?**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set the module as a WebSlice. This displays the following settings:
 - a. In the **Web Slice Title** text box, enter a title for the Web Slice - OR - Leave blank to use the module title.
 - b. At **Web Slice Expires:** Enter a date when the Web Slice will expire - OR - Leave blank to use the End date . See "Working with the Calendar".
 - c. In the **Web Slice TTL** text box, enter the Time to Live (TTL) for this web slice in minutes - OR - Leave blank to use the default to the cache time (converted as minutes).

- Uncheck the check box to set the module as not a WebSlice.






5. Click the  Update link.

 Is a WebSlice?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
 Web Slice Title:	<input type="text" value="MyWebslice"/>
 Web Slice Expires:	<input type="text" value="7/31/2010"/> Calendar
 Web Slice TTL:	<input type="text" value="10"/>

Setting a Module as a WebSlice

Overriding the Default Container

How to set a module container which will override the default container set for the site.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Module Container**, select from the following to view the associated containers:
 - **Host:** Populates the drop-down box with a list of all module containers uploaded by the Host. These containers are available to all sites.
 - **Site:** Populates the drop-down box with a list of the module containers with are available to this site.
5. Select a module container from the drop-down list.
6. **OPTIONAL.** Click the Preview link to view the container applied to the module. If this option is selected you will need to repeat the above steps again.
7. Click the  Update link.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:

Link Type:

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**

Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):

Localization Settings

About Localization Settings

The Localization section only displays if content localization is enabled.

For full details on working with this section See "About Content Localization"

Managing Content for Individual Modules

HTML Pro

About the HTML /HTML Pro Module

The HTML module (known as the HTML Pro module in DNN Professional Edition) displays basic text, rich text or HTML. This module typically uses a Rich Text Editor (See "About the Rich Text Editors") to enable editors to add content including images, flash, and script. The module can be set to replace tokens with user or portal specific information such as user details, portal name etc.

Tip: A basic version of this module called the HTML module is provided with the DNN Community Edition, and is typically titled the Text/HTML module.

Workflow

The module offers workflow support and includes two default configurations - Direct Publish and Content Staging. Direct Publish maintains the legacy behavior of the module and allows content to be published directly to the site. Content Staging allows the author to save and view content in a staging area prior to publishing.



Advanced Workflow Management enables you to create your own content staging workflow's to suit your business needs. *Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition*

Version History

Another feature added to the module which directly correlates to the workflow feature is the version history which displays information regarding each version of the HTML module's content. Included in the version history table is the ability to preview and "rollback" to any of the versions listed on the table. Finally an item history table contains more detailed information about the history of either the current version, or the version that is currently being previewed.

Module Version: 05.02.00


Minimum DNN Version: 05.02.00

Text/HTML  

Dear John Citizen,

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean dolor erat, fringilla vehicula porta non, mattis ut neque. Nullam rhoncus, lectus et vehicula aliquam, nisl metus volutpat nunc, ut consequat libero turpis in urna. Vestibulum porta dui non sapien sollicitudin bibendum. Morbi varius lacus magna. Etiam blandit rhoncus posuere.

- Vivamus at nisi eu lectus malesuada lobortis.
- Donec commodo neque sed enim vulputate sed ornare felis imperdiet.
- Quisque venenatis tincidunt tellus, in mattis libero euismod nec.
- Quisque ultrices lacus eu enim accumsan quis dapibus justo dapibus.






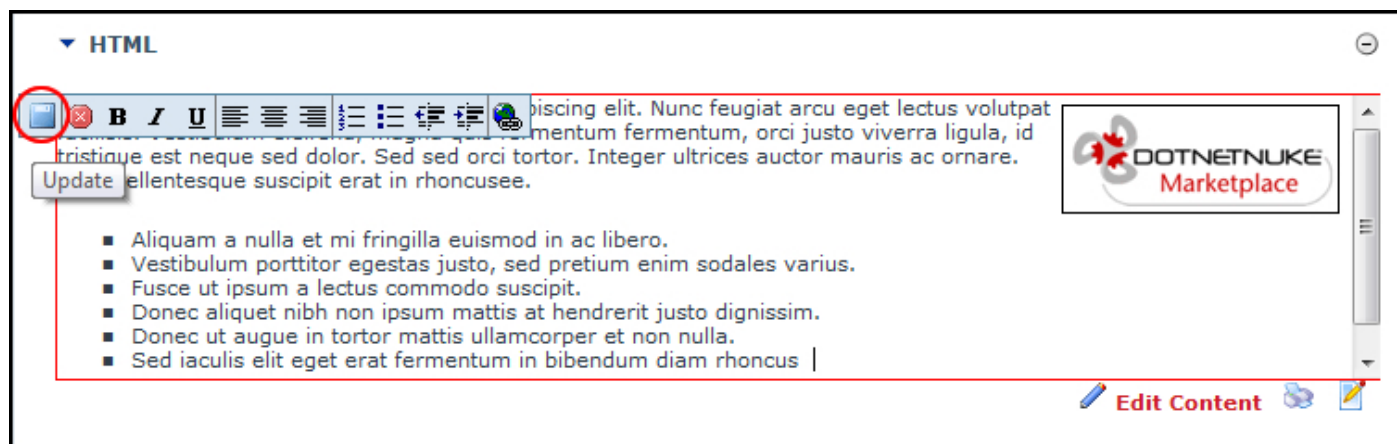
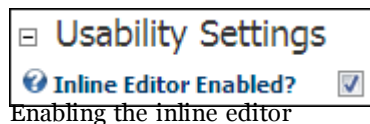
The HTML Pro module

Administrators

Enabling/Disabling Inline Editor

How to enable or disable inline editing. If selected, this setting enables authorized users to perform basic editing of HTML module content directly on the page. Inline editing also enables authorized users to edit module titles on the page. These inline editing features are offered in addition to the usual methods for editing content and module titles.


1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **Maximize**  the **Advanced Settings** section.
3. **Maximize**  the **Usability Settings** section.
4. At **Inline Editor Enabled**, check the check box to enable inline editing - OR - Uncheck to disable it.
5. Click the Update link.



Editing content inline


Troubleshooting: Image Not Displaying

An image will not display in the HTML modules if it is set as hidden. You must be an Administrator of this site to remove the hidden property from a file.

1. Navigate to Admin > **File Manager** - OR - Click  **Files** in the Control Panel.
2. Click the **Rename File** button beside the file to be edited.
3. Uncheck the **H:** check box to remove the hidden property from the file.
4. Click the **Save Changes** button to save your changes.

Troubleshooting: Image Not Displaying



An image will not display in the HTML modules if it is set as hidden. You must be an Administrator of this site to remove the hidden property from a file.

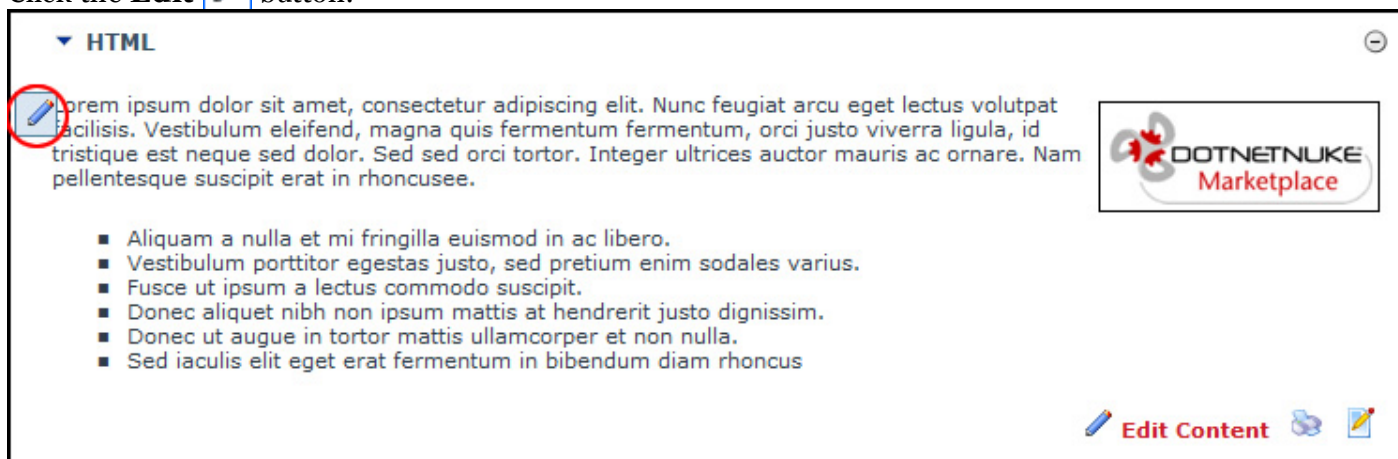
1. Navigate to Admin > **File Manager** - OR - Click  **Files** in the Control Panel.
2. Click the **Rename File** button beside the file to be edited.
3. Uncheck the **H:** check box to remove the hidden property from the file.
4. Click the **Save Changes** button to save your changes.

Module Editors


Adding/Editing Text Inline

How to add and edit text inline on the HTML module. Note: Inline editing may not be enabled.




1. Hover your mouse over the content of the HTML module. An **Edit**  button will appear.
2. Click the **Edit**  button.





HTML

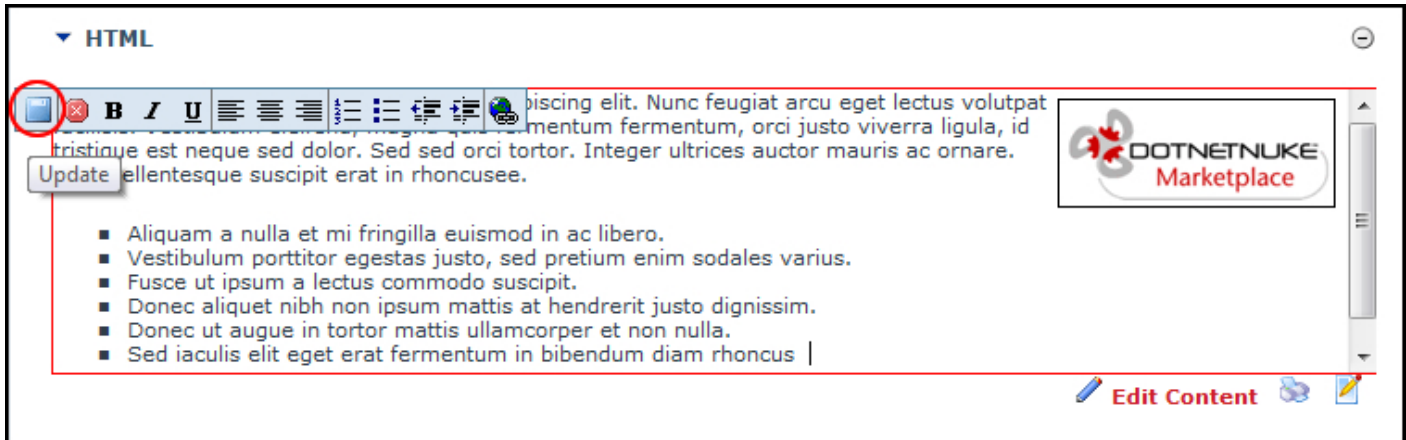
 Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nunc feugiat arcu eget lectus volutpat facilisis. Vestibulum eleifend, magna quis fermentum fermentum, orci justo viverra ligula, id tristique est neque sed dolor. Sed sed orci tortor. Integer ultrices auctor mauris ac ornare. Nam pellentesque suscipit erat in rhoncusee.

- Aliquam a nulla et mi fringilla euismod in ac libero.
- Vestibulum porttitor egestas justo, sed pretium enim sodales varius.
- Fusce ut ipsum a lectus commodo suscipit.
- Donec aliquet nibh non ipsum mattis at hendrerit justo dignissim.
- Donec ut augue in tortor mattis ullamcorper et non nulla.
- Sed iaculis elit eget erat fermentum in bibendum diam rhoncus

 **Edit Content**  

3. Add or edit content as required. A tool bar with a number basic text formatting tools and link insertion is available.
4. Click the **Save**  button to save your changes - OR - Click the **Cancel**  button to cancel your changes.

Note: If Content Staging is enabled, this new content will require publishing before it is displayed. "Publishing a Draft"



Inline text editing

Related Topics:

- See "Enabling/Disabling Inline Editing"

Adding Basic Text

How to add basic text including basic HTML using the Basic Text Box of the HTML module.

1. Select **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the [Edit Content](#) link.
2. At **Editor**, select the **Basic Text Box** radio button above the Editor. This displays the Editor as a Basic Text Box. Content displays as HTML.
3. At **Render Mode** (below the Editor), select **Text**.
4. Click inside the Editor and then enter or paste (Ctrl + V) your text.
5. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview](#) link.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Publish?**, check the check box to publish - OR - Uncheck the check box if the content is not yet ready for publishing. Note: This field only displays when Content Staging is enabled. "Setting a Workflow"
7. Click the [Save](#) link.

Tip: Strike the Enter key on your keyboard to create a line break. HTML tags can be used.

▼ Edit Content

Editor:

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

```
<p><span style="background-color: #ffff00"><strong>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Donec ipsum. Ut molestie tincidunt diam. Nulla consequat.</strong></span></p>  
<p><span style="background-color: #ffff00"><strong>version 2</strong></span></p>my new text  
my new text
```

Render Mode: Text Html Raw

Publish?



Save



Cancel



Preview

⊕ Version History



⊕ Item History

⊕ Preview Content

Adding basic text

Adding Rich Text

How to add rich text to the HTML module.

1. Select **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the [Edit Content](#) link.
2. At **Editor**, select the **Rich Text Editor** radio button. This displays the content as rich text.
3. Enter your text, insert images, links, etc.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Click the  [Preview](#) link.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Publish?**, check the check box to publish - OR - uncheck the check box if the content is not yet ready for publishing. Note: This field only displays when Content Staging is enabled. "Setting a Workflow"
6. Click the  [Save](#) link.

Related Topics:

- See "About the RadEditor"
- See "About the FCK Editor"

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Paragraph St... Font Name Real ...

B *I* U abc [List Icons] [W3C] [Apply CSS Cl...]

Ω [Table Icon] [Image Icon] [Link Icon] [Info Icon]

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean dolor erat, fringilla vehicula porta non, mattis ut neque. Nullam rhoncus, lectus et vehicula aliquam, nisl metus volutpat nunc, ut consequat libero turpis in urna. Vestibulum porta dui non sapien sollicitudin bibendum. Morbi varius lacus magna. Etiam blandit rhoncus posuere.

- Vivamus at nisi eu lectus malesuada lobortis.
- Donec commodo neque sed enim vulputate sed ornare felis imperdiet.
- Quisque venenatis tincidunt tellus, in mattis libero euismod nec.
- Quisque ultrices lacus eu enim accumsan quis dapibus justo dapibus.

DOTNETNUKE PROFESSIONAL

Design HTML Words: 85 Characters: 569

Publish?


Save Cancel Preview

Adding rich text to the HTML module

Pasting HTML

How to paste HTML into the HTML module.

1. Select **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the [Edit Content](#) link.
2. Select the **Basic Text Box** radio button above the Editor. This displays the Editor as a Basic Text Box. Content is displayed as HTML.
3. At **Render Mode** (which is displayed at the base of the Editor), select **Html**.
4. Paste in your Html.
5. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview](#) link.

6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Publish?**, check the check box to publish - OR - Uncheck the check box if the content is not yet ready for publishing. Note: This field only displays when Content Staging is enabled. "Setting a Workflow"
7. Click the  Save link.

*Tip: HTML can also be pasted into the **Raw** Render Mode*

▼ Edit Content


Editor:

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

```
<p>Dear [User:FirstName] [User:LastName],</p> <p>Lorem ipsum dolor sit
amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nunc feugiat arcu eget lectus volutpat facilisis. Vestibulum eleifend,
magna quis fermentum fermentum, orci justo viverra ligula, id tristique est neque sed dolor. Sed sed
orci tortor. Integer ultrices auctor mauris ac ornare. Nam pellentesque suscipit erat in
rhoncusee.</p> <ul> <li>Aliquam a nulla et mi fringilla euismod in ac libero.</li> <li>Vestibulum
porttitor egestas justo, sed pretium enim sodales varius.</li> <li>Fusce ut ipsum a lectus commodo
suscipit.</li> <li>Donec aliquet nibh non ipsum mattis at hendrerit justo dignissim.</li> <li>Donec ut
augue in tortor mattis ullamcorper et non nulla.</li> <li>Sed iaculis elit eget erat fermentum in
bibendum diam rhoncu</li> </ul>
```

Render Mode: Text Html Raw

Publish?

 Save  Cancel  Preview

⊕ Version History

⊕ Item History

⊕ Preview Content

Pasting HTML

Adding Replacement Tokens

How to add replacement tokens into the HTML module. "Enabling/Disabling Token Replacement"

1. Select **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the [Edit Content](#) link.
2. Enter the replacement token into the Rich Text Editor. E.g. [User:FirstName] [User:LastName]

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Dear [User:FirstName] [User:LastName],

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean dolor erat, fringilla vehicula porta non, mattis ut neque. Nullam rhoncus, lectus et vehicula aliquam, nisl metus volutpat nunc, ut consequat libero turpis in urna. Vestibulum porta dui non sapien sollicitudin bibendum. Morbi varius lacus magna. Etiam blandit rhoncus posuere.

- Vivamus at nisi eu lectus malesuada lobortis.
- Donec commodo neque sed enim vulputate sed ornare felis imperdiet.
- Quisque venenatis tincidunt tellus, in mattis libero euismod nec.
- Quisque ultrices lacus eu enim accumsan quis dapibus justo dapibus.

DOTNETNUKE PROFESSIONAL

Design HTML Words: 88 Characters: 597


3. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview](#) link. This displays the content with token replacement enabled in the **Preview Content** section below.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Publish?**, check the check box to publish - OR - Uncheck the check box if the content is not yet ready for publishing. Note: This field displays if Content Staging is enabled. "Setting a Workflow"
5. Click the [Save](#) link.

Text/HTML

Dear John Citizen,

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean dolor erat, fringilla vehicula porta non, mattis ut neque. Nullam rhoncus, lectus et vehicula aliquam, nisl metus volutpat nunc, ut consequat libero turpis in urna. Vestibulum porta dui non sapien sollicitudin bibendum. Morbi varius lacus magna. Etiam blandit rhoncus posuere.

- Vivamus at nisi eu lectus malesuada lobortis.
- Donec commodo neque sed enim vulputate sed ornare felis imperdiet.
- Quisque venenatis tincidunt tellus, in mattis libero euismod nec.
- Quisque ultrices lacus eu enim accumsan quis dapibus justo dapibus.



Replacement tokens display the first and last name of the logged in user

HTML Replacement Tokens

The list of replacement tokens for the HTML module.



Token	Example	Token Description
[Portal:Currency]	USD	Displays the portal currency set on the Site Settings page.
[Portal:Description]		Displays the portal description set on the Site Settings page.
[Portal:Email]	admin@domain.com	Displays the email address of the primary Administrator as set on the Site Settings page.
[Portal:FooterText]	Copyright 2009 by My Website	Displays the copyright text in the Copyright field on the Site Settings page.
[Portal:HomeDirectory]	/Portals/o/MyWebsite/	Portal (relative) Path of Home Directory.
[Portal:LogoFile]	logo.gif	Portal Path to Logo file. E.g. logo.gif
[Portal:PortalName]	My Website	The portal description as set on the Site Settings page.
[Portal:TimeZoneOffset]	-480	Difference in minutes between portal default time and UTC.
User Tokens		
[User:DisplayName]	John Smith	The display name of the user.
[User:Email]	JohnSmith@domain.com	The email address of the user.
[User:FirstName]	John	The first name of the user.
[User:LastName]	Smith	The last name of the user.
[User:Username]	Smithy	The username of the user.
Membership Tokens		

[Membership:Approved]	Yes / No	Indicates if the user is approved.
[Membership:CreateDate]	10/4/2007 1:08 PM	Displays the date and time the user registered on the site.
[Membership:IsOnline]	Yes / No	Indicates if the user is currently online.
Page (Tab) Tokens		
[Tab:Description]	Welcome to My Website	Displays the description of the current page.
[Tab:FullUrl]	http://www.domain.com/Services/tabid/73/Default.aspx	Displays the full URL of the current page.
[Tab:IconFile]	icon.gif	Page relative path to icon file.
[Tab:KeyWords]	health, wellbeing, yoga, yoga classes,	Displays the keywords for the current page.
[Tab:TabName]	Home	Page name
[Tab:TabPath]		Page relative path
[Tab:URL]		Page URL
Date Tokens		
[DateTime:Now]	10/17/2007 9:08 AM	Current date and time.
[DateTime:Now]	&lP;7or2aP&A.D.P;	For date/time and numeric values you can also append a string defined by the .NET framework for example: Current date/time formatted according to , e.g. [DateTime:Now f} displays current date in short format (does not allow expressions of calculated content).
Tick Tokens		
[Ticks:Now]	633282985407609550	CPU tick count for current page.
[Ticks:Today]	633282624000000000	CPU tick count since midnight.
[Ticks:TicksPerDay]	864000000000	CPU ticks per day (for calculation).


Previewing Content

How to preview either the current content or previous versions of content in an HTML module.



For either workflow you may feel you want to preview the content before saving/publishing it.

1. Select  **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the  Edit Content link.

- **OPTION ONE** - Previewing content currently displayed in the RTE:

1. Click the  Preview link. This displays the content in the **Preview Content** section below.

- **OPTION TWO:**

1. This option provides more information about the content and lets you preview the content for previous versions (as well as the current one).
2. **Maximize**  the **Version History** section.
3. Locate the version you wish to preview.
4. Click the **Preview Content**  button beside the required version. This displays the content in the Preview Content section below. The Item History section displays information for that version.

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Paragraph St... Font Name Real ...

B *I* U abc [List Icons] [W3C] [Apply CSS Cl...]

Ω [List Icons]

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consetetur adipisicing elit. Aenean dolor erat, fringilla vehicula porta non, mattis ut neque. Nullam rhoncus, lectus et vehicula aliquam, nisl metus volutpat nunc, ut consequat libero turpis in urna. Vestibulum porta dui non sapien sollicitudin bibendum. Morbi varius lacus magna. Etiam blandit rhoncus posuere.

- Vivamus at nisi eu lectus malesuada lobortis.
- Donec commodo neque sed enim vulputate sed ornare felis imperdiet.
- Quisque venenatis tincidunt tellus, in mattis libero euismod nec.
- Quisque ultrices lacus eu enim accumsan quis dapibus justo dapibus.

DOTNETNUKE PROFESSIONAL

Design HTML Words: 85 Characters: 569

Publish?

Save **Cancel** **Preview**

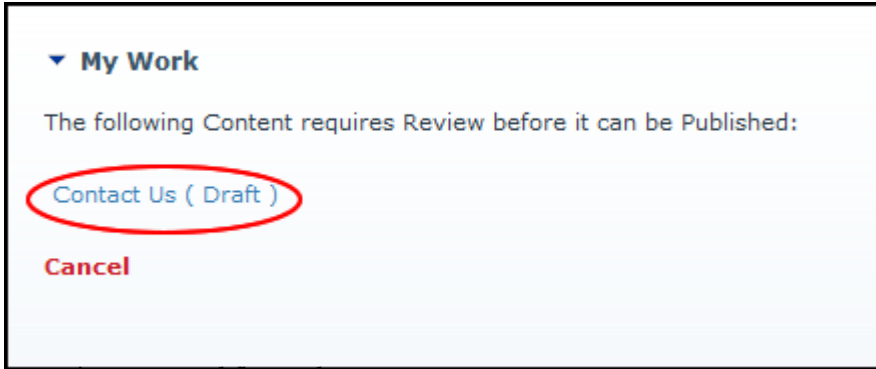
Previewing content

Managing My Workflow Tasks

How to view and update content that required reviewing before it can be published using the HTML module.

Note: This task requires that Workflow is NOT set to direct publish. "Setting a Workflow"

1. Select **My Work** from the HTML module menu. This displays the My Work page and a list of the content to be reviewed and published.
2. Click on one of the listed [Page Name] links. This displays the selected module.
3. You can now choose to edit, preview and/or publish the unpublished content. "Publishing a Draft", or you can rollback to a previous version. "Rolling Back Content".







Managing your workflow tasks

Approving or Rejecting Content

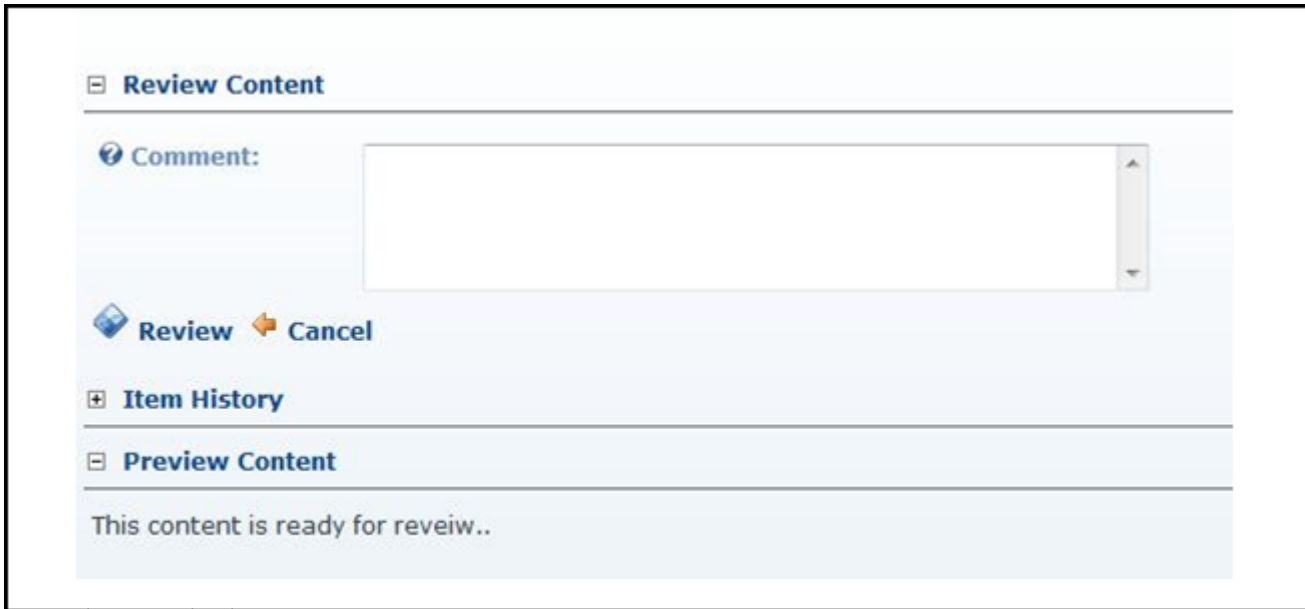
This section applies to the Content Approval workflow only. Once a user adds new content to a Content Approval HTML module, content edits must either approve or reject the content before it can be published.

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

1. Go to the HTML module.
2. Select  **Approve** or  **Reject** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the  Approve or  Reject link. This displays the new content in the "Review Content" page.





3. In the **Comment** text box, add a comment. For rejections the comment should explain why the content has been rejected.
4. Click the Review link to finish the approval/rejection. From this page you can view the Item History table for this version of content, and preview the content awaiting approval.

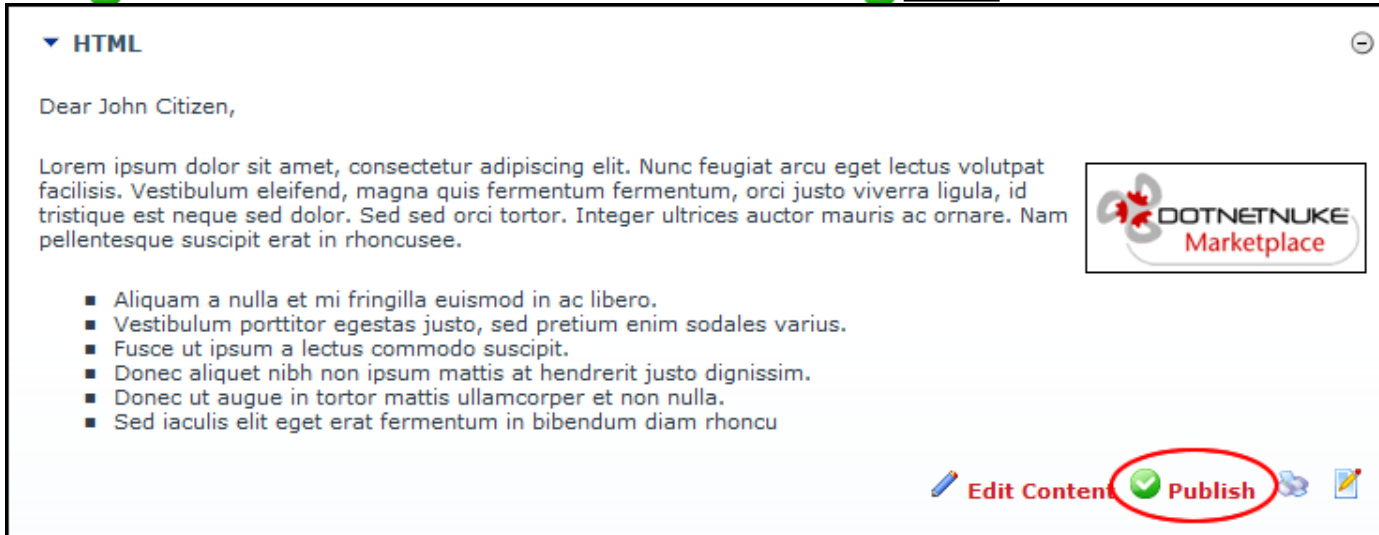


Approving or Rejecting Content





Publishing a Draft

How to publish a draft of content using the HTML module. Note: This tutorial only applies to the Content Staging workflow only.

1. Go to the HTML module.
- OPTION ONE:
 1. Select  **Publish** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the  Publish link.




• OPTION TWO:

1. Select  **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the  Edit Content link.
2. **OPTIONAL.** Edit content as required.
3. **OPTIONAL.** Click the  Preview link.
4. At **Publish?**, check the check box to publish - OR - Uncheck the check box if the content is not yet ready for publishing.
5. Click the  Save link.


▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor






Dear [User:FirstName] [User:LastName],

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Nunc feugiat arcu eget lectus volutpat facilisis. Vestibulum eleifend, magna quis fermentum fermentum, orci justo viverra ligula, id tristique est neque sed dolor. Sed sed orci tortor. Integer ultrices auctor mauris ac ornare. Nam pellentesque suscipit erat in rhoncusee.



- Aliquam a nulla et mi fringilla euismod in ac libero.
- Vestibulum porttitor egestas justo, sed pretium enim sodales varius.
- Fusce ut ipsum a lectus commodo suscipit.
- Donec aliquet nibh non ipsum mattis at hendrerit justo dignissim.
- Donec ut augue in tortor mattis ullamcorper et non nulla.
- Sed iaculis elit eget erat fermentum in bibendum diam rhoncus

Publish?







 **Save**  **Cancel**  **Preview**

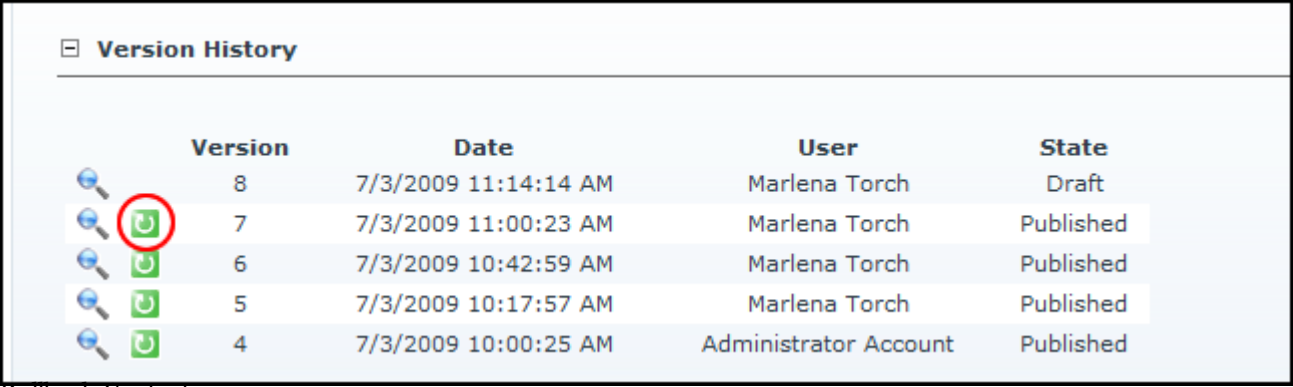
Publishing content using the Edit Content page










Rolling Back Content

How to rollback to a previous content version using the HTML module.

Note: This task requires that Workflow is NOT set to direct publish. "Setting a Workflow"

1. Select  **Edit Content** from the HTML module menu - OR - Click the  [Edit Content](#) link.
2. **Maximize**  the **Version History** section.
3. Locate the required version.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Click the **Preview**  button to preview a version.
5. Click the **Rollback Content**  button. The selected version is published immediately, even if the version was initially a draft (Content Staging).
6. Click the  [Cancel](#) link to return.



	Version	Date	User	State
	8	7/3/2009 11:14:14 AM	Marlena Torch	Draft
 	7	7/3/2009 11:00:23 AM	Marlena Torch	Published
 	6	7/3/2009 10:42:59 AM	Marlena Torch	Published
 	5	7/3/2009 10:17:57 AM	Marlena Torch	Published
 	4	7/3/2009 10:00:25 AM	Administrator Account	Published



Rollback Content

Module Settings

Adding a Workflow State

How to add a new state to a workflow for a HTML module.

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition




1. Select  **Settings** from the module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. Click the [Manage Workflows](#) link. This opens the Manage Workflows page. You can now do any of the following:
4. Go to the **Workflow** section.
5. At **Workflow**, select the required workflow from the workflow drop-down box.
6. Go to the **States** section.

7. Click the [Add New State](#) link.
8. Go to the **State Configuration** section.
9. In the **State** text box, enter a name for the workflow.
10. At **Reviewers**, to add reviewers for the state select them using the permissions grid.
11. At **Notify?**, check the check box to set the reviewers specified at Permissions to receive an email notification once a version reaches this state. For the published state the author of the version will receive an email notification once it is published.
12. At **Active?**, check the check box to enable this new state - OR - Uncheck the check box to disable.
13. Click the [Save](#) link.

Adding a Workflow

How to add a workflow to the HTML module.




Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. Click the [Manage Workflows](#) link. This opens the Manage Workflows page. You can now do any of the following:
4. Go to the **Workflow** section.
5. Click the [Add New Workflow](#) link.
6. In the **Workflow** text box, enter a new for this workflow.
7. In the **Description** text box, enter a description of this workflow.
8. Click the [Save](#) link. This saves the new workflow and adds the default workflow states of Draft and Published. "Adding a Workflow State" to add one or more new states to this workflow.

Changing the Version History Setting

How to change the version history settings for a HTML module. This setting applies to how many versions are kept in memory for the workflow selected

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition




1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. Click the [Manage Workflows](#) link. This opens the Manage Workflows page.
4. **Maximize** the **Version History** section.

5. In the **History** text box, enter the new number of versions to be kept in memory in the History text box. If the new number is lower than what was originally set, then the number of versions available will not change until content for the module has been saved (content does not have to be changed, just saved).
6. Click the Save link.

Deleting a Workflow

How to set an existing workflow as active or inactive for the HTML module. This sets the workflow as inactive on the site and removes it from the list of Workflows in the HTML Module Settings section.




Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. Click the Manage Workflows link. This opens the Manage Workflows page.
4. Go to the **Workflow** section.
5. At **Workflow**, select the required workflow from the workflow drop-down box.
6. At **Deleted?** check the check box to set the workflow as inactive.
7. Click the Save link.

Editing a Workflow State

How to edit an existing state in a workflow for a HTML module.





Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition

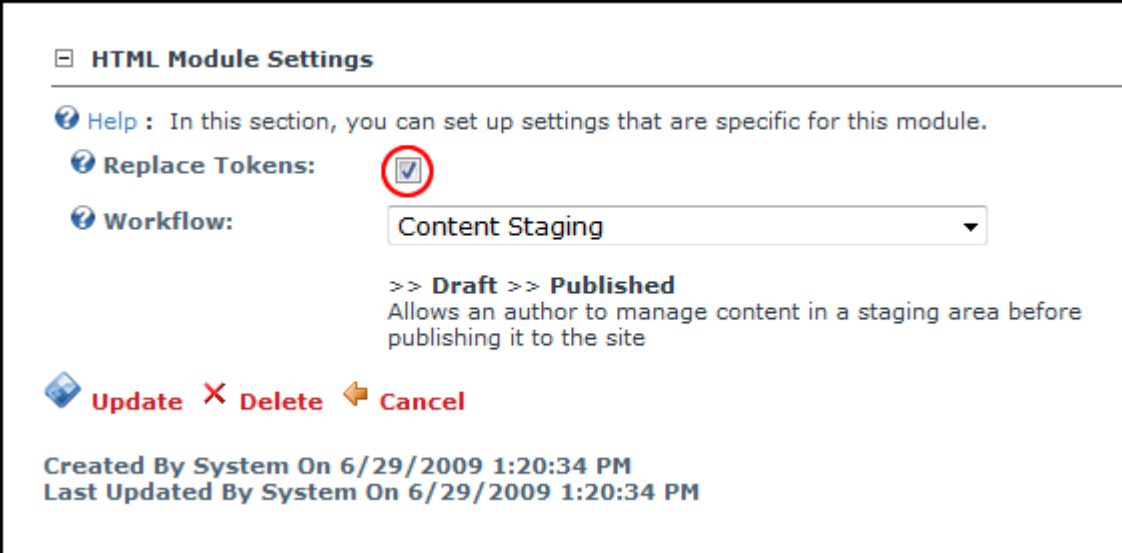
1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. Click the Manage Workflows link. This opens the Manage Workflows page. You can now do any of the following:
4. Go to the **Workflow** section.
5. At **Workflow**, select the required workflow from the workflow drop-down box.
6. Go to the **States** section.
7. Click the **Edit** button beside the state to be edited.
8. Go to the **State Configuration** section and edit any of the following as required:
 - a. In the **State** text box, edit the workflow name.
 - b. At **Reviewers**, select permissions are required.

- c. At **Notify?**, check the check box to set the reviewers specified at Permissions to receive an email notification once a version reaches this state. For the published state the author of the version will receive an email notification once it is published.
 - d. At **Active?**, check the check box to enable this new state - OR - Uncheck the check box to disable.
9. Click the Save link.

Enabling/Disabling Token Replacement

How to enable or disable token replacement on the HTML module. Token replacement enables you to replace tokens like "[object:property|format]" for objects Tab, Module, Portal Settings or User with the appropriate environment values. Note: Inline editing and module caching are displayed if Token replacement is used.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **HTML Module Settings** section.
3. At **Replace Tokens**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to enable full token replacement.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable token replacement. Any tokens will display as text.
4. Click the Update link.






The screenshot shows the 'HTML Module Settings' interface. At the top, there is a title 'HTML Module Settings' with a collapse icon. Below it is a help section: 'Help : In this section, you can set up settings that are specific for this module.' The main settings area includes 'Replace Tokens' with a checked checkbox (circled in red), and 'Workflow' with a dropdown menu set to 'Content Staging'. Below the dropdown, there is a workflow diagram: '>> Draft >> Published' with the text 'Allows an author to manage content in a staging area before publishing it to the site'. At the bottom of the settings area, there are three buttons: 'Update' (with a blue diamond icon), 'Delete' (with a red X icon), and 'Cancel' (with a yellow arrow icon). At the very bottom, there is a timestamp: 'Created By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM' and 'Last Updated By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM'.

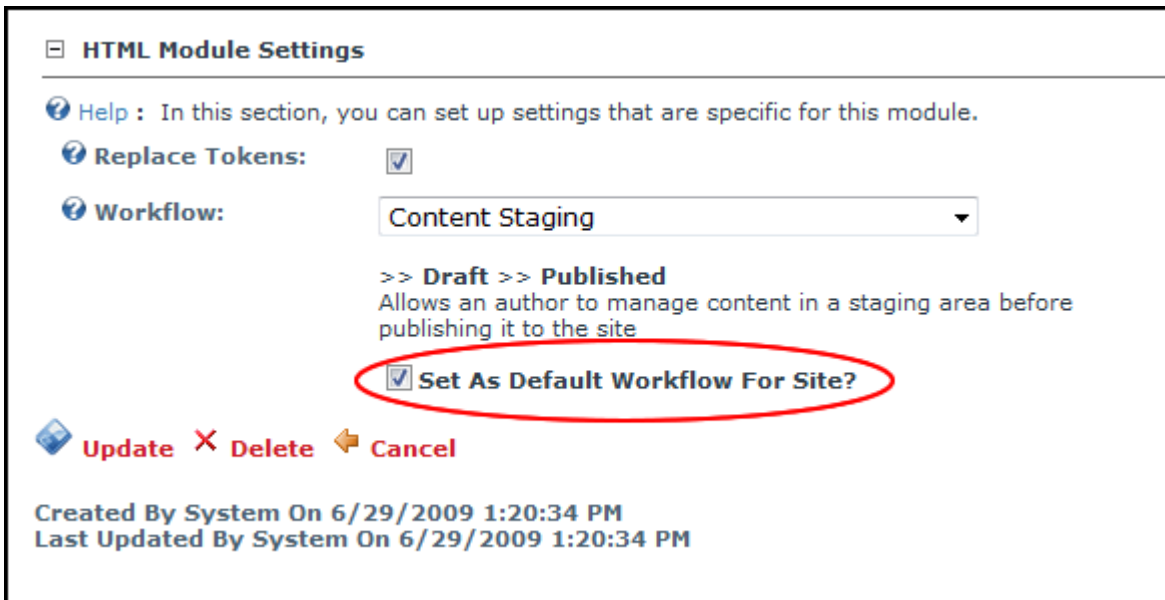
Enabling token replacement

Setting a Workflow as Default for Site

How to set a workflow as the default for the site using the HTML module. This option is only available to Administrators.

Tip: To set a new workflow whether it is for an individual module or you wish to set the default for the site an HTML module must first be added to some page on your site.

1. Go to any HTML module.
2. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
3. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.
4. At **Workflow**, select the workflow you wish to use. "Setting a Workflow"
5. At **Set As Default Workflow For Site?**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set this as the default for the whole site.
 - Uncheck the check box to set this workflow for this module only.
6. Click the Update link.






The screenshot shows the 'HTML Module Settings' form. It includes a 'Help' section, a 'Replace Tokens' checkbox (checked), and a 'Workflow' dropdown menu set to 'Content Staging'. Below the dropdown, there is a description: '>> Draft >> Published' and 'Allows an author to manage content in a staging area before publishing it to the site'. A red oval highlights the 'Set As Default Workflow For Site?' checkbox, which is checked. At the bottom, there are 'Update', 'Delete', and 'Cancel' buttons. The form also displays creation and update timestamps: 'Created By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM' and 'Last Updated By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM'.

Setting a workflow as the default for a site

Setting a Workflow

How to set the workflow on an HTML module. Note: Administrators can also set a workflow as the site default. "Setting a Workflow as Default for Site"

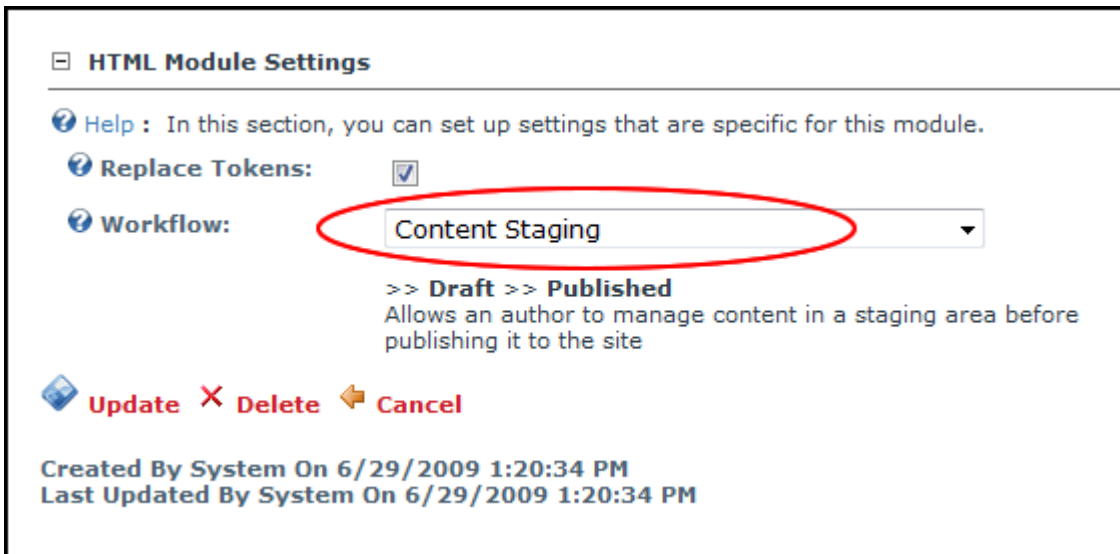
Tip: Whether it is for an individual module or you wish to set the default for the site an HTML module must first be added to some page on your site.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **HTML Module Settings** section.

3. At **Workflow**, select the workflow you wish to use from these options:

- **Direct Publish:** With the direct publish workflow any content that is saved on the "Edit Content" page or through the inline editor will be immediately visible to all users with permissions to view the module. Editing users will be able to see the content for both view and edit mode.
- **Content Staging:** Content staging allows content to be saved as a draft before it is published. Draft content will only be visible when edit mode is selected by users who can edit the module/page. In view mode the most recent published version of content will be displayed instead of the draft. This is the same for users with view permissions only. "Publishing a Draft"
- **Content Approval:** Content Approval is similar to Content Staging but it adds an extra "Ready for Approval" state between the draft and published states. This allows reviewers to monitor and either approve or reject any content added before it is actually published to the site. *Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition*

4. Click the Update link.



The screenshot shows the "HTML Module Settings" interface. At the top, there is a "Help" section with a blue icon and text: "In this section, you can set up settings that are specific for this module." Below this, there are two settings: "Replace Tokens:" with a checked checkbox, and "Workflow:" with a dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is highlighted with a red oval and shows "Content Staging" as the selected option. Below the dropdown, there is a status indicator ">> Draft >> Published" and a description: "Allows an author to manage content in a staging area before publishing it to the site". At the bottom of the settings area, there are three buttons: "Update" (with a blue icon), "Delete" (with a red 'X' icon), and "Cancel" (with a yellow arrow icon). Below the buttons, there is a timestamp: "Created By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM" and "Last Updated By System On 6/29/2009 1:20:34 PM".

Setting a workflow for this module

RadEditor

About the RadEditor

The RadEditor is the default Rich Text Editor (RTE) used in DNN 5.4+. RTE's are used on the edit page of numerous modules such as the HTML, FAQ's, Announcements and Events modules.

The RadEditor provides an extensive number text editing tools as well as managing image, link and object insertion. Tools include: Paste as plain Text, Paste from Word, Find and Replace, Insert Flash, Insert Page Break, Maximize Editor size to full screen, and customizing editor options.

Amongst other features, the RadEditor offers superior resource (image, Flash, etc) management, table management and table design, as well as content templating than the FCK Editor.

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

The screenshot displays the RadEditor interface. At the top, there's a '▼ Edit Content' header. Below it, the 'Editor' section has two radio buttons: 'Basic Text Box' and 'Rich Text Editor', with 'Rich Text Editor' selected. The main editor area features a comprehensive toolbar with icons for undo, redo, bold, italic, underline, text color, background color, bulleted list, numbered list, link, unlink, and other editing functions. The font settings are set to 'Normal', 'Verdana', and '12px'. The content area contains two sections: 'COMPANY INFORMATION' with a paragraph about EcoZany, and 'FAIR TRADE' with a paragraph about pricing. At the bottom, there are 'Design' and 'HTML' tabs, and a status bar showing 'Words: 51 Characters: 323' circled in red. Below the editor are 'Save', 'Cancel', and 'Preview' buttons.



Design <> HTML **Words: 51 Characters: 323**



Save Cancel Preview

The RadEditor

Check Spelling

How to check spelling using the RADEditor.

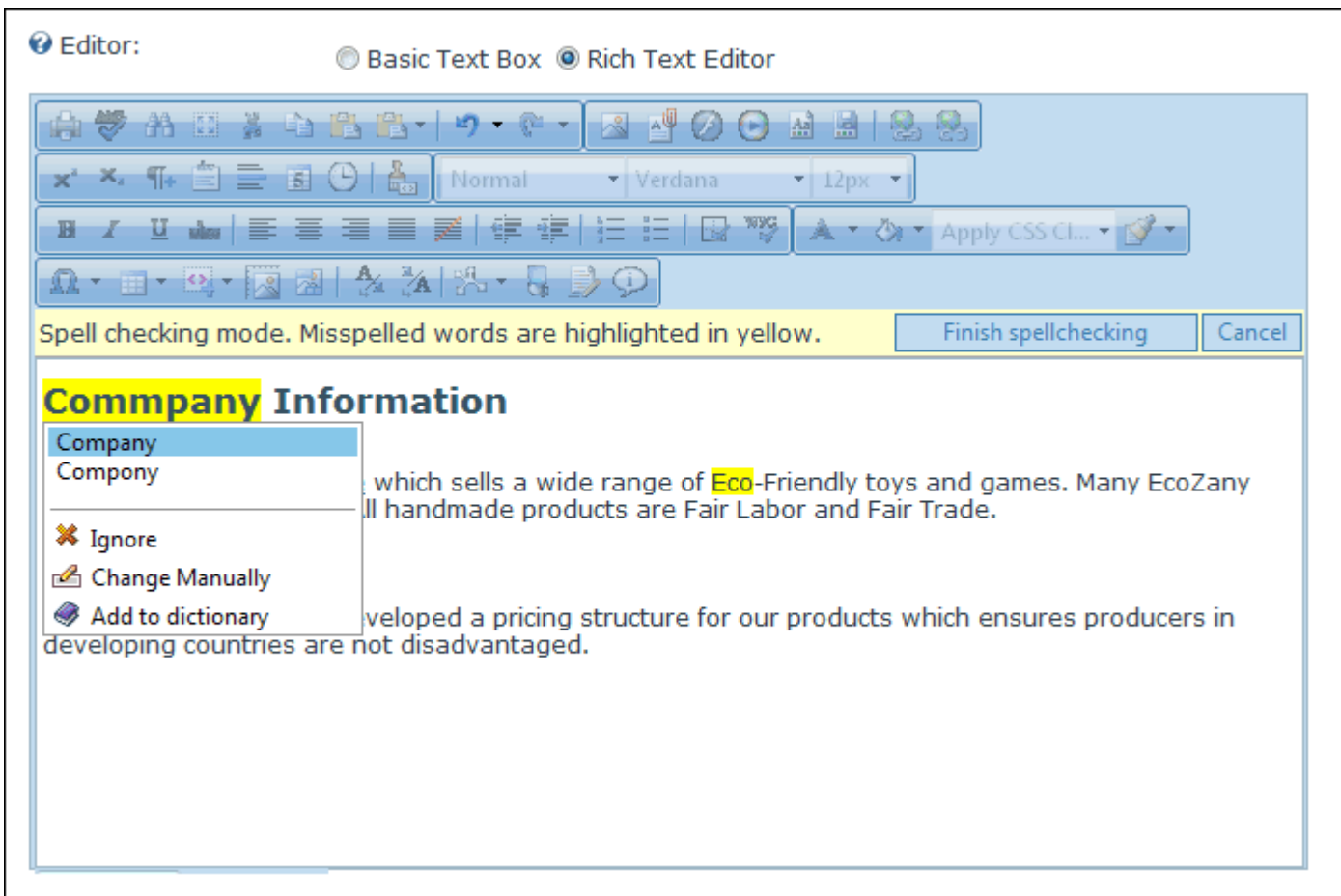
1. Place your cursor inside the Editor.
2. Click the AJAX Spellchecker  icon. This starts spell checking. Misspelled words are highlighted in yellow. The first misspelt word is ready to perform one of the following actions against:
 - **Choose Suggested:** Select the correct word from the list of suggested words.
 -  **Ignore/Ignore All:** Select to ignore this word and continue with spell checking.

-  **Change Manually:** Select and enter word into the provided text box then click the **Change Manually** icon.
-  **Add to Dictionary:** Select to add the word to your dictionary.

3. Repeat for each misspelt word.

4. Click the **Finish Spellchecking** button when you are finished - OR - **Cancel** to exit Spell checking mode.


Tip: Edit any misspelt word by clicking on it.



Spell Checking using the RadEditor

Formatting Code Block

How to insert a code block in the RADeditor Rich Text Editor

1. Place your cursor where you want to place the code block.
2. Click the **Format Code Block**  button. This opens the Format Code Block window.
3. In the **Paste Source Code Below** text box, paste the source code.

4. In the Options section:
5. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Max Snippet Width** text box, set the maximum width of the code block in either pixels or as a percentage. Do this by either typing a value into the text box or by using the **Increase** and **Decrease** buttons. The value will automatically be saved as pixels unless you enter the percentage symbol (%) into the text box. E.g. Enter 100px or 100 to set the width as 100 pixels, or enter 100% to set the width as 100%. Leave blank for no specified width.
6. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Max Snippet Height** text box, set the maximum height of the code block in either pixels or as a percentage. Leave blank for no specified width.
7. At **Select Language**, select the language of the code block from these options: Markup - (x)HTML, XML, ASPX, ..."; Javascript, CSS, C#, CPP, VB, Php, SQL, Delphi, or Python.
8. At **Display Line Numbers**, check the check box to display line numbers for each line of code - OR - uncheck the check box to disable numbering.

9. **OPTIONAL.** Click the Preview button to preview the code in the Preview window below.

Format Code Block

Paste source code below

```
<table style="width: 500px;">
  <thead>
</thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>How to handcode a table in HTML.</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>
```

Options

Max Snippet Width px / % Select Language Markup - (x)HTML, XML, ASP ▾

Max Snippet Height px / % Display Line Numbers

Preview

```
<table style="width: 500px;">
  <thead>
</thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>How to handcode a table in HTML.</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>
```

OK Cancel

10. Click the **OK** button to insert the code block.

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

```
<table style="width: 500px;">
  <thead>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
    <tr>
      <td>How to handcode a table in HTML.</td>
    </tr>
  </tbody>
</table>
```

Design HTML Words: 17 Characters: 164

Publish?

Modifying Editor Size

How to increase or decrease the size of the RADEditor.

1. Position your mouse over the bottom right corner of the Editor until it becomes a two directional arrow.
2. Click and drag the Editor larger or smaller as desired. Release when the desired size is displayed.

▼ Edit Content

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

COMPANY INFORMATION

EcoZany is an online shop that sells a wide range of Eco-Friendly toys and games. Many EcoZany products are handmade. All handmade products are Fair Labor and Fair Trade.

FAIR TRADE

EcoZany has developed a pricing structure for our products which ensures producers in developing countries are not disadvantaged.

Design <> HTML Words: 51 Characters: 323

Save Cancel Preview

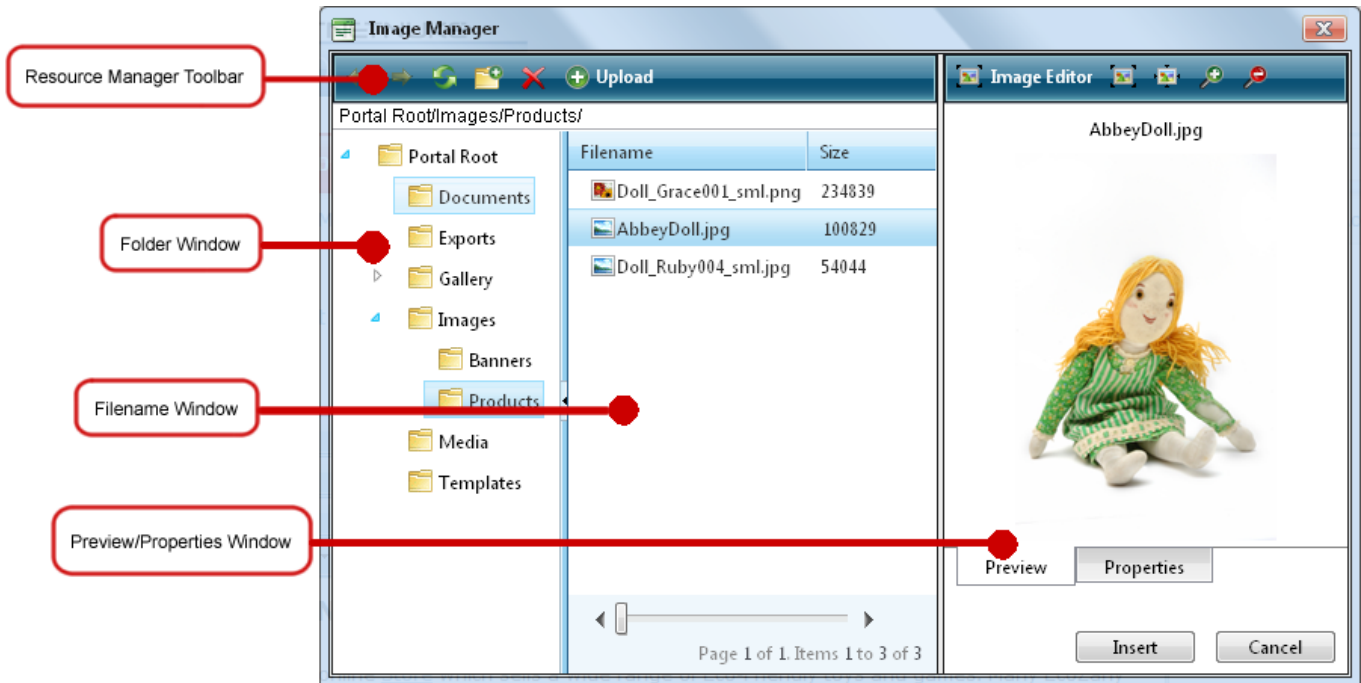
Modifying Editor Size

Using the Resource Manager

How to navigate to, select or manage folders and files using the Resource Manager of the RADEditor. The Resource Manager is commonly used for the Image Manager, Document Manager, Flash Manager, Media Manager and Template Manager tools of the RADEditor.

Note: Access to some tools is restricted by role.

The Resource Manager consists of the following toolbar and windows: Resource Manager Toolbar, Folder Window, Filename Window, Preview/Properties Window.



Resource Manager Toolbar

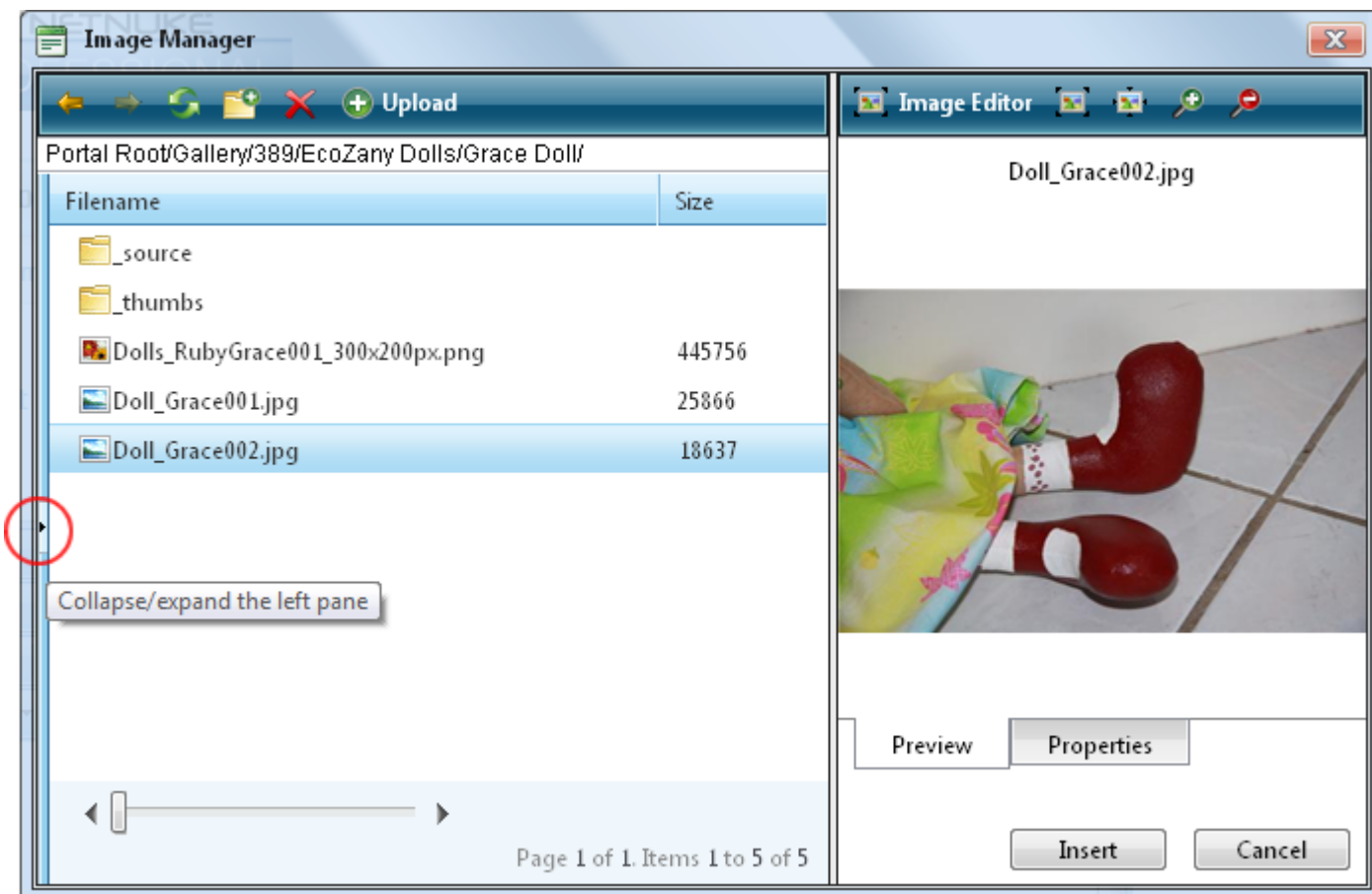


Tool	Icon	Description
Back		Go back by one folder in the Folders window.
Forward		Move forward by one folder in the Folders window.
Refresh		Refresh to retrieve newly updated files.
New Folder		In the Folders window, select the parent folder and then click the New Folder button.
Delete		Select the image or folder to be deleted and then click the Delete button. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are you sure you want to delete the selected file? The selected file may be in use. If deleted, some pages will not be displayed properly. Press "OK" to confirm deletion." Click OK to confirm.
Upload		In the Folders window, select the folder where the file will be uploaded to and then click the Upload button.

Folder Window: This window displays the folders of the File Manager using a hierarchical tree structure. Select a folder to view its sub-folders and/or files in the Filename Window. Folders can be moved by dragging into a different folder. Right click a folder to perform Delete, Rename, New Folder or Upload.

Filename Window: Displays a list of the folders and/or files within the selected folder. Select a file to view a preview and/or properties information in the Preview/Properties Window. Files can be moved by dragging into a different folder. Right click an image or folder to perform Delete, Rename, New Folder or Upload.

*Tip: Click the **Collapse/Expand the left pane** button to hide/show the Folder Window. This is useful once you have navigated to the required folder as it provides additional space to view files details.*



Preview/Properties Window: Displays a preview and/or properties of the selected file. Properties can be modified as required.

Viewing Word and Character Count

The number of words and characters inside the RADEditor is displayed in the bottom right corner. These are updated each time you click inside the editor after a modification.

▼ Edit Content

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

COMPANY INFORMATION

EcoZany is an online shop that sells a wide range of Eco-Friendly toys and games. Many EcoZany products are handmade. All handmade products are Fair Labor and Fair Trade.

FAIR TRADE

EcoZany has developed a pricing structure for our products which ensures producers in developing countries are not disadvantaged.

Design <> HTML **Words: 51 Characters: 323**


Save **Cancel** **Preview**










Toolbars

Actions Toolbar

The actions toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:

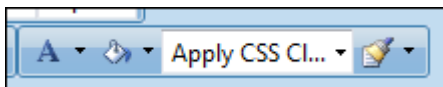




Tool	Icon	Description
Print (CTRL + P)		Print all Editor content. Depending on your computer set-up you may be able to print to a printer and/or create an XPS document.
		Print Options:

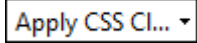

Tool	Icon	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Print All Linked Documents: Creates separate printouts for each link. E.g. Page links display the page. Document content is not printed in full. Print Table of Links: A reference table of any links is appended to the printout.
AJAX Spellchecker		Click to enable Spell checking mode. Misspelled words are highlighted in yellow. See "Check Spelling"
Find & Replace (CTRL + F)		Find, Find And Replace, or Find And Replace All. Options include Match Case, Match Whole Words, and search up or down from current cursor position.
Select All (CTRL + A)		Select all content within the Editor.
Cut (CTRL + X)		Cut selected content.
Copy (CTRL + V)		Copy selected content.
Paste (CTRL + P)		Paste cut or copied content.
Paste Options		Provides these paste options: Paste: Paste From Word; Paste from Word, Strip Font; Paste Plain Text; and Paste As Html.
Undo (CTRL + Z)		OPTION ONE: Click the Undo icon to undo the last action. OPTION TWO: Click the Arrow icon to view a list of previous actions and undo multiple actions at one time.
Redo (CTRL + Y)		OPTION ONE: Click Redo icon to redo the last action. OPTION TWO: Click the Arrow icon to view a list of previous actions and redo multiple actions at one time.

Color and CSS Toolbar

The Color and CSS toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:

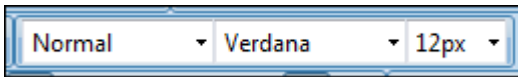


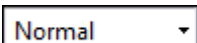
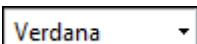

Tool	Icon	Description
Foreground Color		OPTION ONE: Click the Arrow icon to open the color picker and then select the required foreground color for the selected content. OPTION TWO: Click the Foreground Color icon to apply the used last color to the content.
Background Color		OPTION ONE: Click the Arrow icon to open the color picker and then select the required background color for the selected content. OPTION TWO: Click the Background Color icon to apply the used last color to the selected content.

Tool	Icon	Description
Apply CSS Class		Select the CSS Class to be applied to the selected content.
Format Stripper		Click the Arrow icon to select the type of formatting to be stripped from the selected content.

Fonts and Font Size Toolbar

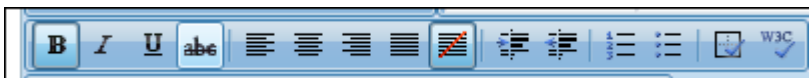
The Fonts and Font Size toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:


















Tool	Icon	Description
Paragraph Style		Set the paragraph style for the selected text.
Font Name (CTRL + SHIFT + F)		Set the font for the selected text.
Real Font Size (CTRL + SHIFT + P)		Set the font size in pixels for the selected text.

Formatting Toolbar

The Formatting toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:











Tool	Icon	Description
Text Formatting		
Bold (CTRL + B)		Add/remove bolding to selected content.
Italicize (CTRL + I)		Add/remove italics to selected content.
Underline (CTRL + U)		Add/remove underline to selected content.
Strikethrough		Add/remove strikethrough to selected content.
Alignment		
Align Left		Left align the selected content.
Align Center		Center align the selected content.
Align Right		Right align the selected content.
Justify		Justify align the selected content.
Remove Alignment		Remove alignment formatting from selected content.
Indent and Lists		
Indent		Indent selected content.
Outdent		Outdent selected content.
Numbered List		Create a numbered list.

Tool	Icon	Description
Bullet List		Create a bullet list.
Other		
Show/Hide Borders		Click to show or hide all table borders. This is useful where table borders are not displayed.
XHTML Validator		Click to open the XHTML Validator window. At the very top of the window, select the radio button to set the type of XHTML validation you wish to perform. This displays the validation results and details.

Paragraph Toolbar

The Paragraph toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:











Tool	Icon	Description
SuperScript		Transforms selected content to superscript.
Subscript		Transforms selected content to subscript.
New Paragraph		Inserts a new paragraph.
Insert Groupbox		Inserts a group box. Use to layout forms and to label sections of your content.
Horizontal Rule		Inserts a horizontal line.
Insert Date		Inserts the current date according to your computer.
Insert Time		Inserts the current time according to your computer.
Format Code Block		Enables you to insert and format a block of code and have it render as text. See "Formatting Code Block"

Resources Toolbar

The Resources toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:



Tool	Icon	Description
Image Manager (CTRL + G) *		Opens the Image Manager which enables you to insert images into the Editor. The properties tab enables you to set properties of the image to be inserted.
Document Manager *		Opens the Document Manager which enables you to insert a document link into the Editor. Additional link settings are available.
Flash Manager *		Opens the Flash Manager which enables you to insert Flash (*.swf) into the Editor. The properties tab enables you to set properties of the flash to be inserted.
Media Manager *		Opens the Media Manager which enables you to insert media into the Editor. The properties tab enables you to set properties of the media to be inserted.

Tool	Icon	Description
Template Manager *		Opens the Template Manager which enables you to insert a template (*.htmtemplate) into the Editor.
Save Template		Save the content in the Editor as a new template.
Hyperlink Manager (CTRL + K) *		Insert a link, anchor or email link. Additional settings are available.
Remove Link (CTRL +SHIFT + K)		Removes a link from selected content.

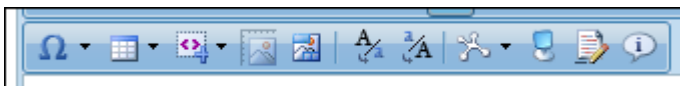
* These tools provide access your portal's File Manager where, depending on your authorization level, you can also create folders, as well as upload and manage files.












Related Topics:

- See "Managing Allowable File Extensions"

Tables and Tools Toolbar

The Tables and Tools toolbar of the RADEditor has the following tools:




Tool	Icon	Description
Insert Symbol		OPTION ONE: Click the Arrow icon to open the symbol gallery and then select the required symbol to be inserted. OPTION TWO: Click the Insert Symbol icon to insert the symbol that was inserted previously.
Insert Table		Click on the number of rows/columns to insert a basic table - OR - Select Table Wizard to design a more complex table.
Insert Code Snippet		Inserts a predefined code snippet.
Set Absolute Position		Select the image and then click the icon. Drag the image to the required absolute position.
Image Map Editor		Opens the Image Map Editor where you can configure a image map for this image.
Convert to Lower Case		Transforms selected text to lower case.
Convert to Upper Case		Transforms selected text to upper case.
Module Manager		
Toggle Full Screen Mode (F11)		Select to toggle Editor to/from full screen mode.
Track Changes		Click to view the changes between your initial content and current content. Content changes are marked up with green background for new content and red strikethrough for deleted content.
About RadEditor		Opens the About RadEditor window which has a link more information on the RadEditor.

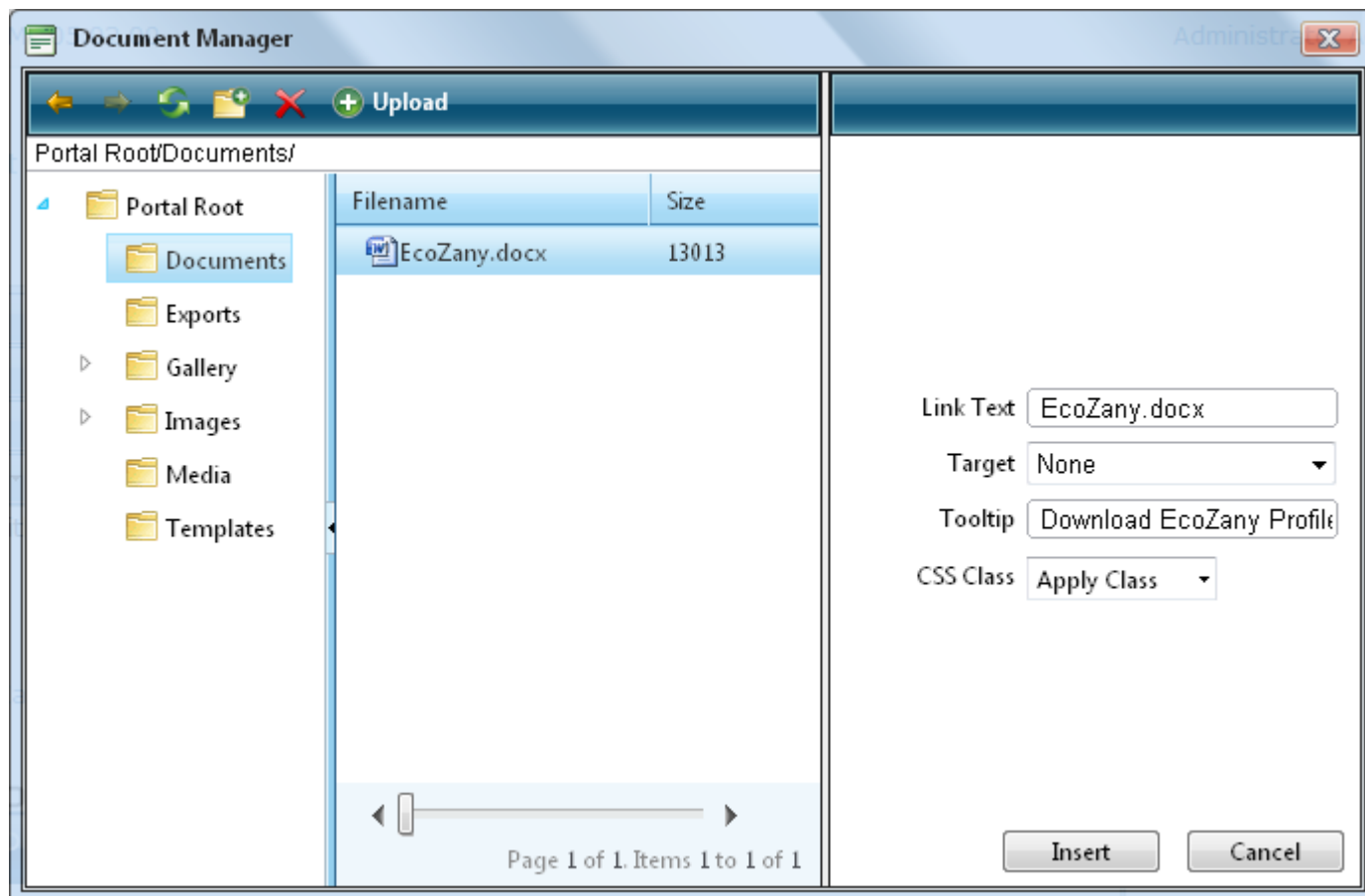
Managing Images and Media

Inserting a Document

How to insert a document using the RADEditor.

1. Click the **Document Manager**  button. This opens the Document Manager.
2. Navigate to and select the required document. See "Using the Resource Manager"
3. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Link Text** text box, modify the text associated with this document. The filename is used by default.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Target** select the target window for this link.
5. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Tooltip** text box, enter a tool tip to be displayed when a user mouses over this link.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **CSS Class**, select a class for the document link.
7. Click the **Insert** button.


Tip: Additional document properties are available. See "Setting Document Properties"



Inserting a Document


Setting Document Properties

How to set/edit the optional properties of documents inserted using the RADEditor.

1. Insert the document.
2. Right-click on the document and click the **Properties...**  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. Edit the link as required.
4. Click the **OK** button.

Inserting Flash

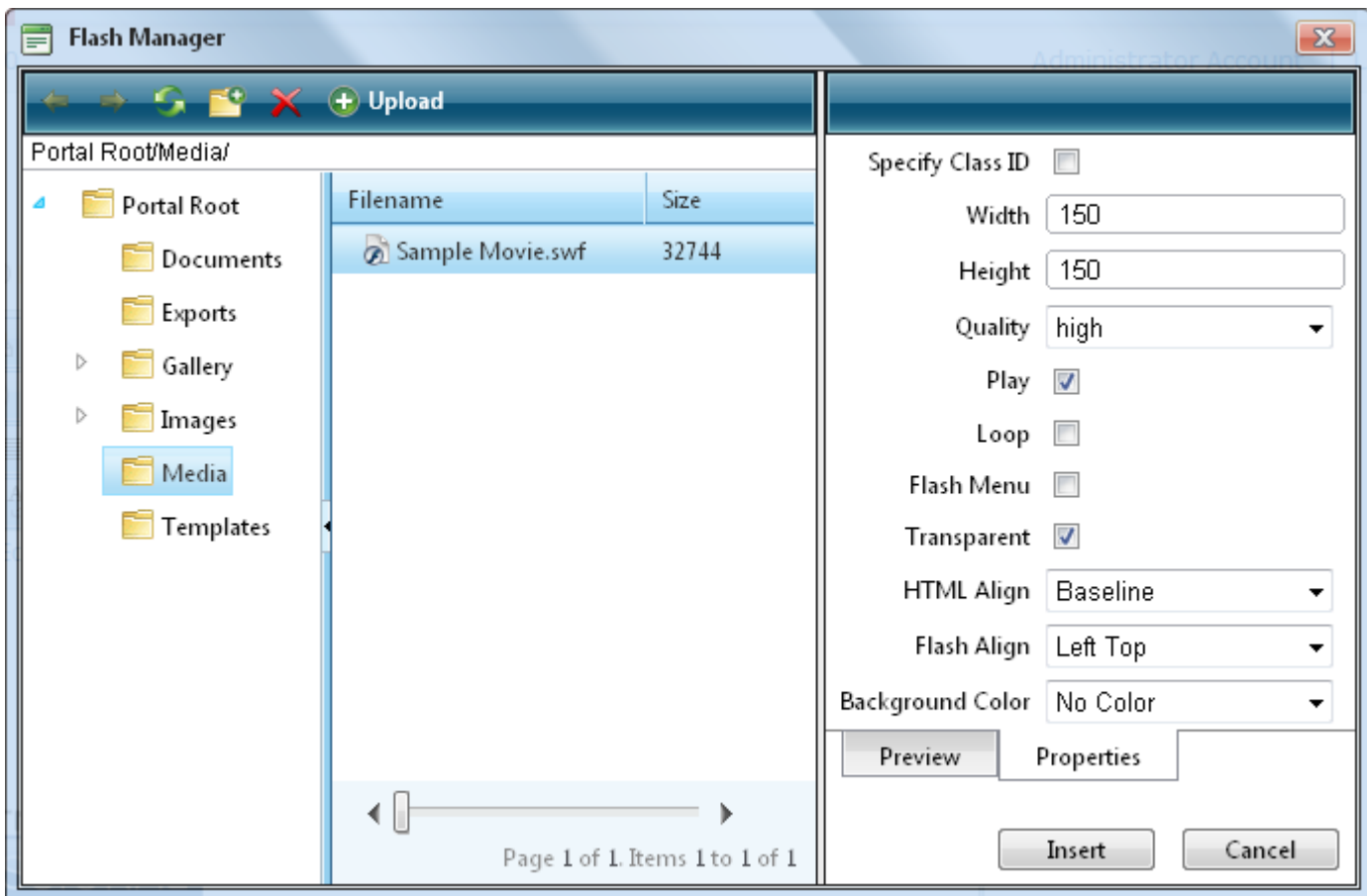
How to insert Flash media using the RADEditor.

1. Click the **Flash Manager**  button. This opens the Flash Manager.
2. Navigate to and select the required Flash. See "Using the Resource Manager"
3. **OPTIONAL.** Click the **Properties** tab and set the properties.
 - a. At **Specify Class ID**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set a class for this media. This reveals the Class ID text box.
 - i. In the **Class ID** text box, enter the name of the CSS class to be applied to this Flash.
 - ii. Uncheck the **Specify Class ID** check box to hide the Class ID field and ensure all other fields can be set.
 - Uncheck the check box to use the default class.
 - b. In the **Width** text box, enter a pixel value to set the Flash width. Leave this field blank to use the width defined by the Flash.
 - c. In the **Height** text box, enter a pixel value to set the Flash height. Leave this field blank to use the height defined by the Flash.
 - d. At **Quality**, select High, Medium or Low as the quality of the Flash.
 - e. At **Play**, check the check box to auto play the Flash - OR - Uncheck the check box if the user must select to play the Flash.
 - f. At **Loop**, check the check box to automatically loop the Flash movie repeated - OR - Uncheck the check box if the user must select to replay the Flash.
 - g. At **Flash Menu**, check the check box to display the Flash menu - OR - Uncheck the check box to hide it.

- h. At **Transparent**, check the check box for a transparent background - OR - Uncheck the check box to disable.
- i. At **HTML Align**, select the HTML alignment.
- j. At **Flash Align**, select the Flash alignment.
- k. At **Background Color**, select **No Color** for no background color or select a color from the drop-down box.

4. Click the **Insert** button.


Tip: You cannot edit the properties of Flash once it has been inserted. To modify Flash, simply delete it and reinsert it with the required properties.



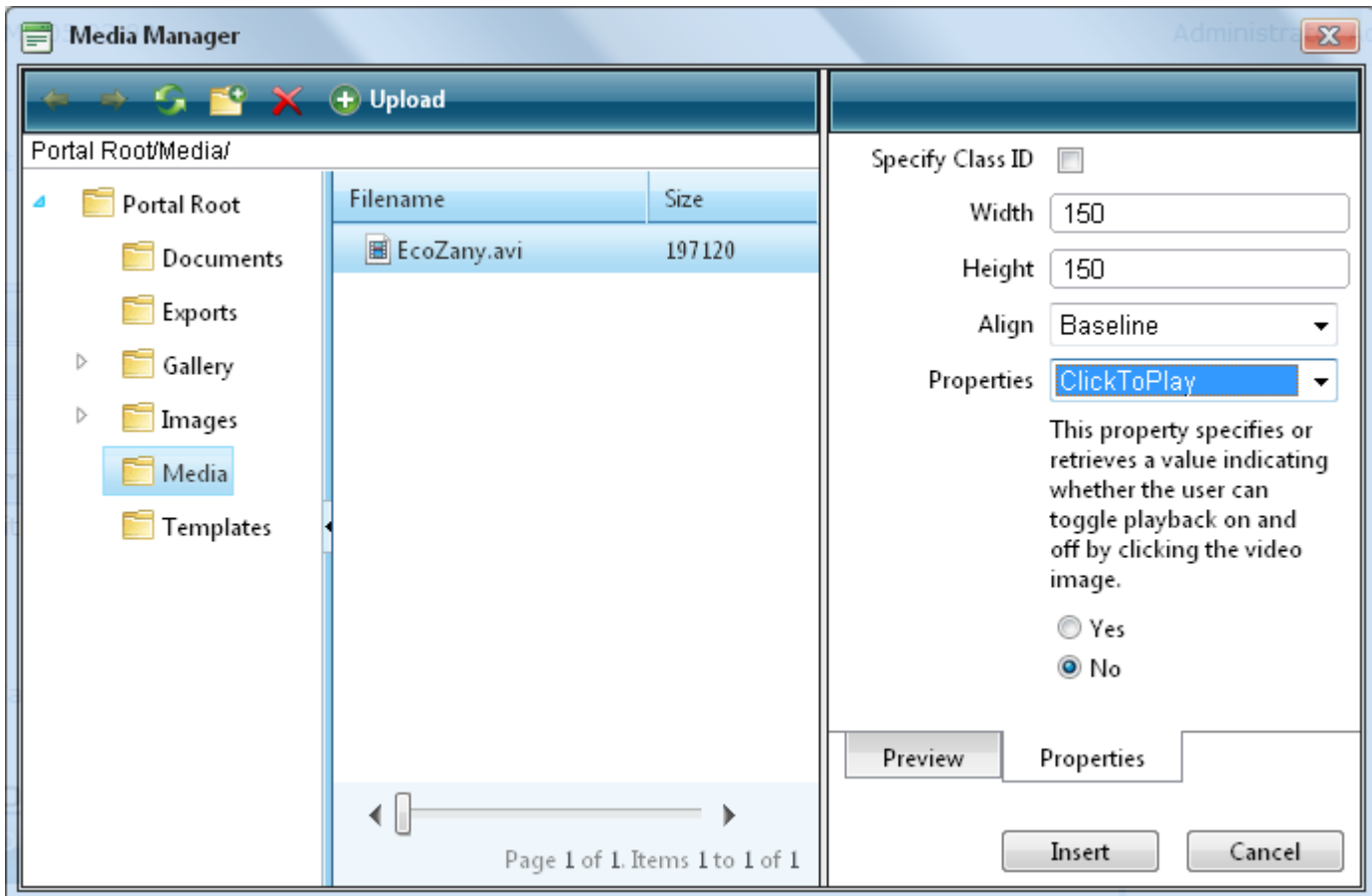
Inserting Flash

Inserting Media

How to insert media (such as sound and movie files) using the RADEditor.

1. Click the **Media Manager**  button. This opens the Media Manager.
2. Navigate to and select the required media. See "Using the Resource Manager"
3. **OPTIONAL.** Click the **Properties** tab and set the properties.
 - a. At **Specify Class ID**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set a class for this media. This reveals the Class ID text box.
 - i. In the **Class ID** text box, enter the name of the CSS class to be applied to this Flash.
 - ii. Uncheck the **Specify Class ID** check box to hide the Class ID field and ensure all other fields can be set.
 - Uncheck the check box to use the default class.
 - b. In the **Width** text box, enter the pixel value to set the media width. Leave blank to use the actual media size.
 - c. In the **Height** text box, enter the pixel value to set the media height. Leave blank to use the actual media size.
 - d. At **Align**, select the alignment.
 - e. At **Properties** select a property to view more information on that property and select **Yes** or **No** as required. Repeat for each property as required.
4. Click the **Insert** button.


Tip: You cannot edit the properties of media once it has been inserted. To modify media, simply delete it and reinsert it with the required properties.

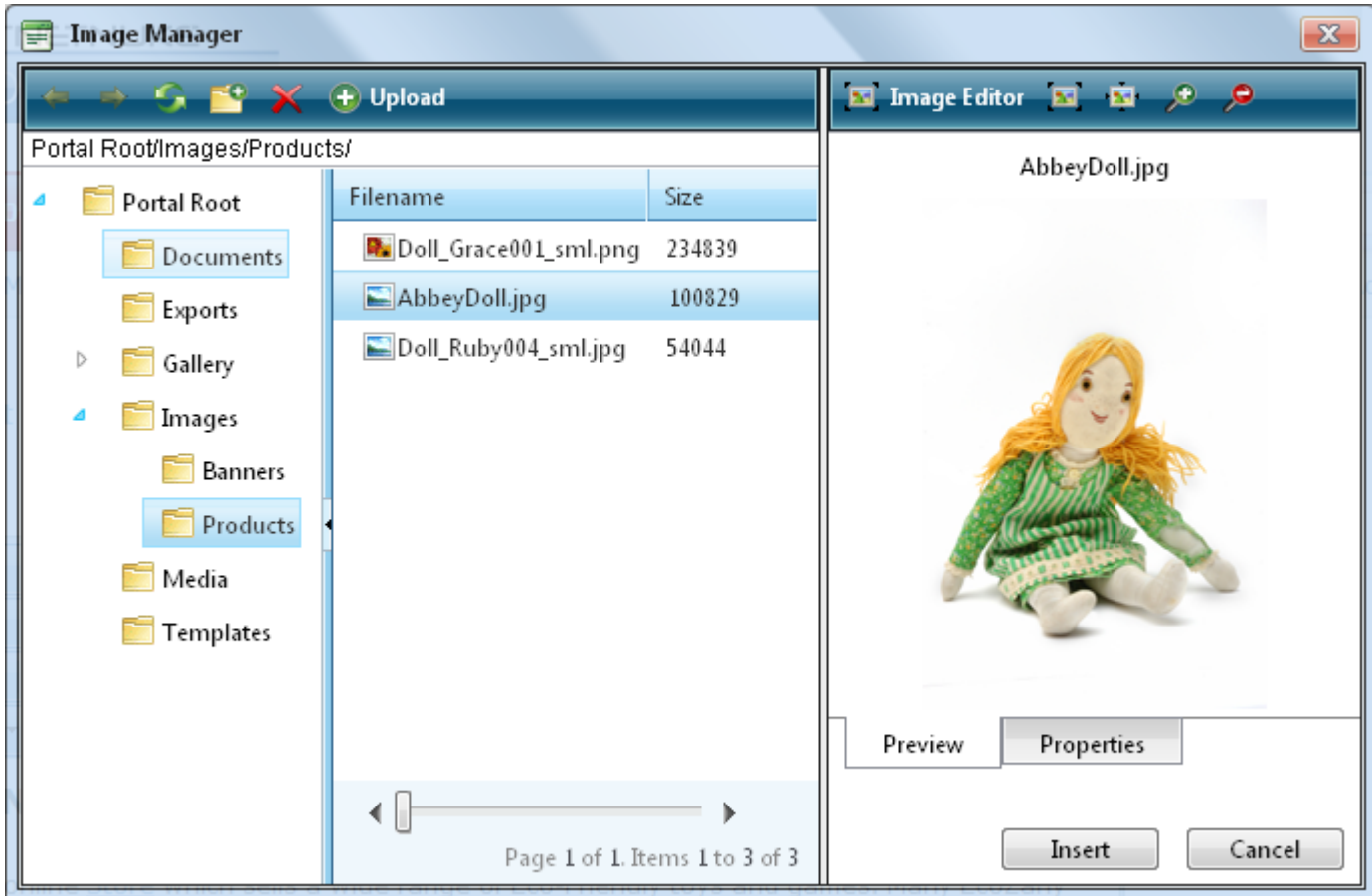


Inserting Media

Inserting Images


How to insert an image using the RAD editor.

1. Click the **Image Manager** (CTRL + G)  button. This opens the Image Manager.
2. Navigate to and select the required image. See "Using the Resource Manager"
3. **OPTIONAL.** Use the **Best Fit**, **Actual Size**, **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** buttons to modify the previewed image - these changes cannot be saved.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Click the **Image Editor** button to edit the image. See "Working with the Image Editor"
5. **OPTIONAL.** Click the **Properties** tab and set image properties. See "Setting Image Properties"
6. Click the **Insert** button.



Editing an Image


How to edit an image inserted in the RAdeditor Rich Text Editor.

1. Select the image to be edited.
2. Right-click on the image and select **Properties....**
 - To change images: At **Image Src**, click the **Image Src**  button and then locate and select the new image.
 - Modify any other properties as required. See "Setting Image Properties"
3. Click the **OK** button.

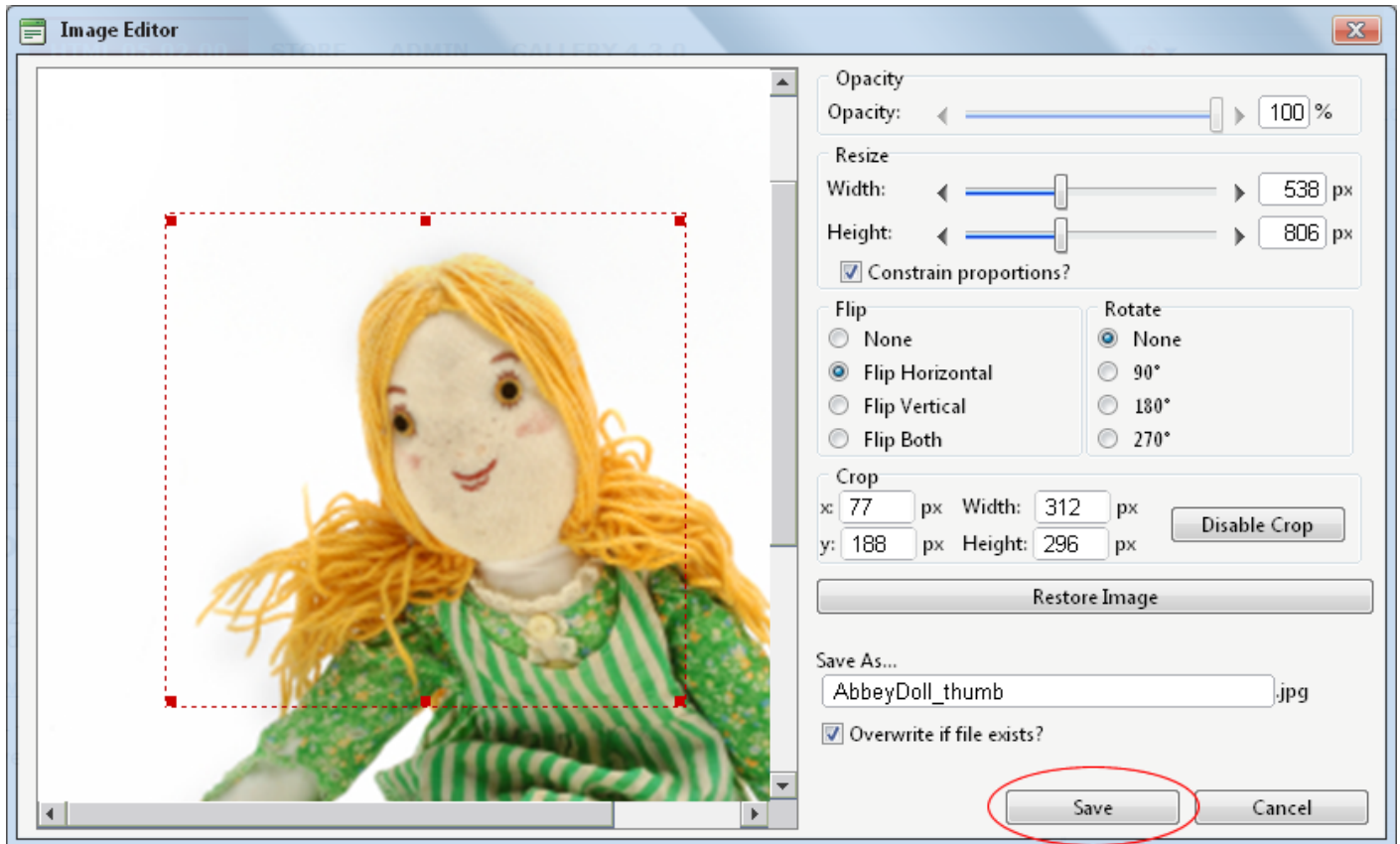
Tip: The new image will inherit the properties of the previous image.

Working with the Image Editor

How to use the Image Editor tool in the Image Manager of the RAdeditor.

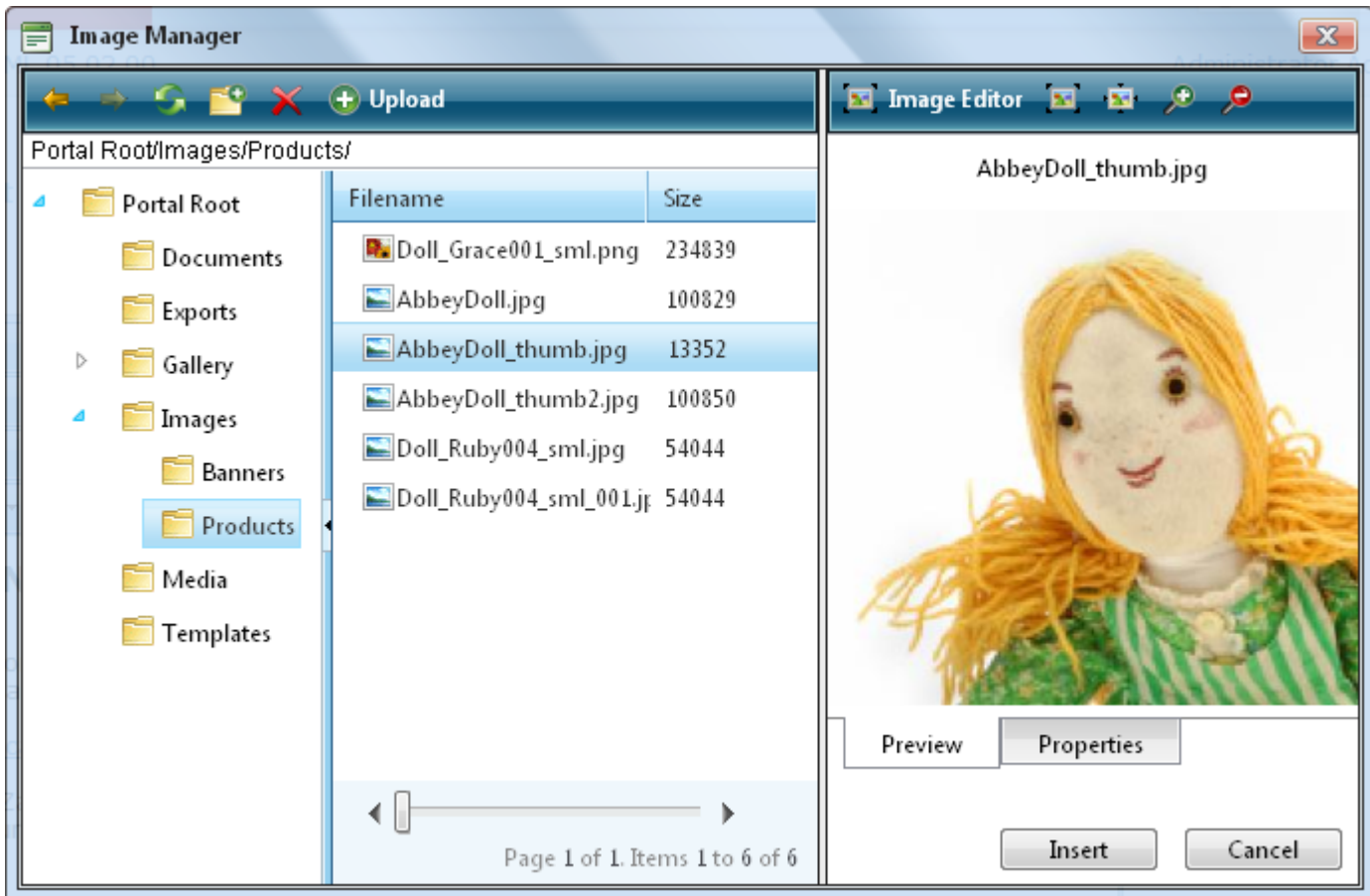
1. Navigate to the required image and click on the filename in the Filename window.
2. Click the **Image Editor**  button. This opens the Image Editor.
3. Select from these editing options:
 - a. At **Opacity**, drag the slider to the preferred percentage (%) - OR - Enter the opacity percentage into the % text box.
 - b. In the **Resize** section:
 - i. At **Constrain proportions?** check the check box to lock the width/height ratio - OR - Uncheck the check box to allow the width and height to be modified independently.
 - ii. At **Width** and/or **Height**, drag the slider to the preferred image size - OR - Click the Decrease and Increase buttons. The pixel size is displayed in the respective **Px** text boxes to the right.
 - c. At **Flip**, select a direction to flip the image from these options: **None, Flip Horizontal, Flip Vertical**, or **Flip Both**.
 - d. At **Rotate**, select from **None, 90°, 180°, or 270°**.
 - e. At **Crop**, click the **Enable Crop** button. This displays a red box which defines the area to be cropped. You can now define the area to be cropped:
 - i. In the **X** and **Y** text boxes, enter the X (vertical) and Y (horizontal) coordinates for the crop area.
 - ii. In the **Width** and **Height** text boxes, enter the width and height in pixels for the crop area.
4. In the **Save As...** text box, a new name for this edited image is displayed. It is in the format of `file-name_thumb`. Modify this name as desired. Tip: Remove the `_thumb` from the file name to override the original file. The image will be saved as a .jpg extension file.
5. At **Overwrite If File Exists?**, check the check box to overwrite a file that exists with the name entered in the **Save As...** text box - OR - Uncheck the check box if you don't want to override an existing file. This enables warning message if the filename already exists.

6. Click the **Save** button.




7. **Problem Solving.** If a message box reading "A file with a name same as the target already exists!" is displayed, this is preventing you from overwriting an existing image. Repeat Steps 4 and 6.

Tip: When Cropping an image drag and resize the crop area on the preview image.



Creating an Image Map

How to create an image map using the RADEditor.

1. Insert an image.
2. Right click on the image and click the **Image Map Editor**  button. This opens the Image Map Editor window.
3. To create an area:
 - a. At **Select Area Shape**, select either **Rectangle** or **Circle**.
 - b. Click the **New Area** button. This displays a gray box defining the area.
 - c. Move and resize the area as required. This updates the Define Area Properties fields for Left, Width, Top and Height.

d. **OPTIONAL.** In the **URL** text box, enter the Url to open when a user clicks on this Area.

i. At **Target**, select the target for the Url.

- **Target:** No target is set and the link will open in the same window.
- **New Window:** Will open a new window.
- **Parent Window:** If web page consists of frames, the link will open in the parent frame.
- **Same Window:** The link will open in the same window.
- **Browser Window:** The link will open in the same window.
- **Search Pane:**
- **Media Pane:**

e. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Alt Text** text box, enter the text to be displayed for this area.

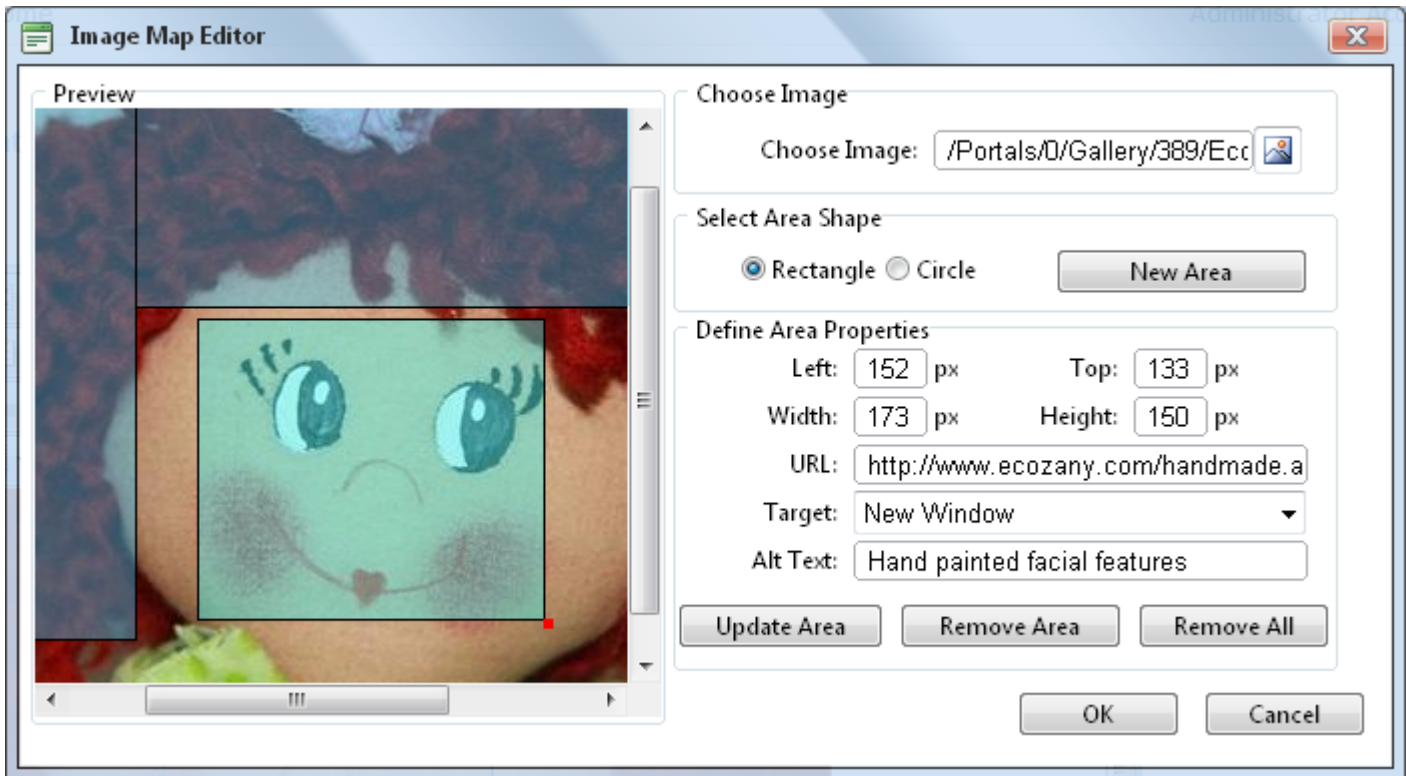
f. Click the **Update Area** button.

4. Repeat Step 3 to add additional area.

5. These additional editing options are available:

- To edit an existing area, click on it in the preview window, edit the properties as required and then click the **Update Area** button.
- To remove an area, click the **Remove Area** button.
- To remove all areas, click the **Remove All** button.




6. Click **OK** to save.



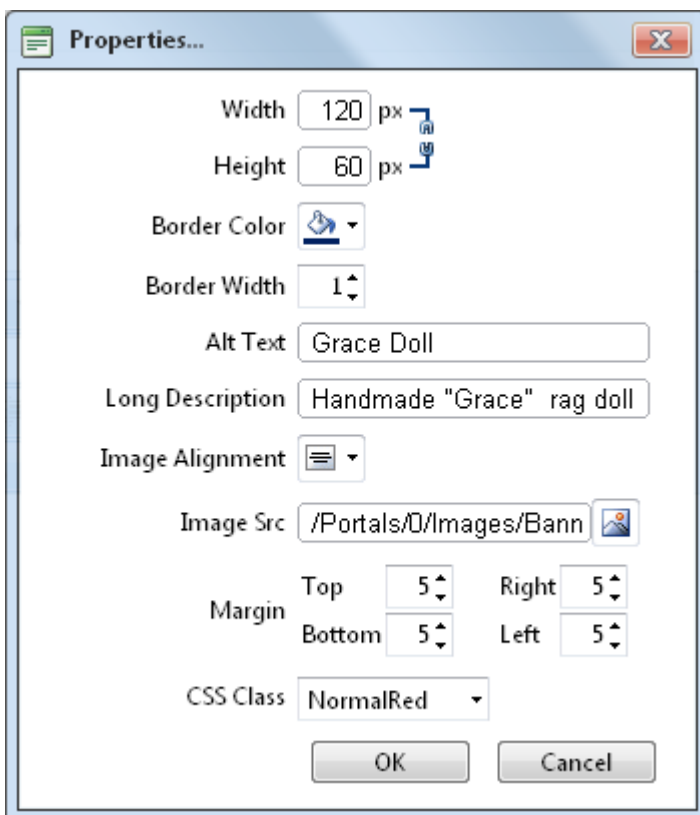
Creating an Image Map

Setting Image Properties

How to set the optional properties of an image using the Image Manager of the RADEditor.

1. If the image has already been inserted, right-click on the image and select the **Properties...**  button.
2. Click the **Lock Ratio**  / **Unlock Ratio**  button to unlock or lock the width/height ratio at any time. Unlocking the ratio enables the width and/or height to be modified independently.
3. In the **Width** text box, enter the width in pixels which the image will be displayed as.
4. In the **Height** text box, enter the height in pixels which the image will be displayed as.
5. At **Border Color**, click the **Color Picker** button and select the border color. Note: A Border Width must be entered to display the border.
6. In the **Border Width**, text box, enter the pixel width for the border - OR - use the **Increase** and **Decrease** arrows.
7. In the **Alt Text** text box, enter the alternative text for this image.
8. In the **Long Description** text box, enter the long description for this image.
9. At **Image Alignment**, click the **Alignment Selector** button and select the alignment for this image.



10. At **Margin**, set any of these fields:
 1. In the **Top** text box, enter a pixel value or use the **Increase** and **Decrease** arrows to set the top margin.
 2. In the **Bottom** text box, enter a pixel value or use the **Increase** and **Decrease** arrows to set the bottom margin.
 3. In the **Right** text box, enter a pixel value or use the **Increase** and **Decrease** arrows to set the right margin.
 4. In the **Left** text box, enter a pixel value or use the **Increase** and **Decrease** arrows to set the left margin.
11. At **CSS Class**, select a class for this image.
12. Click the **OK** button.

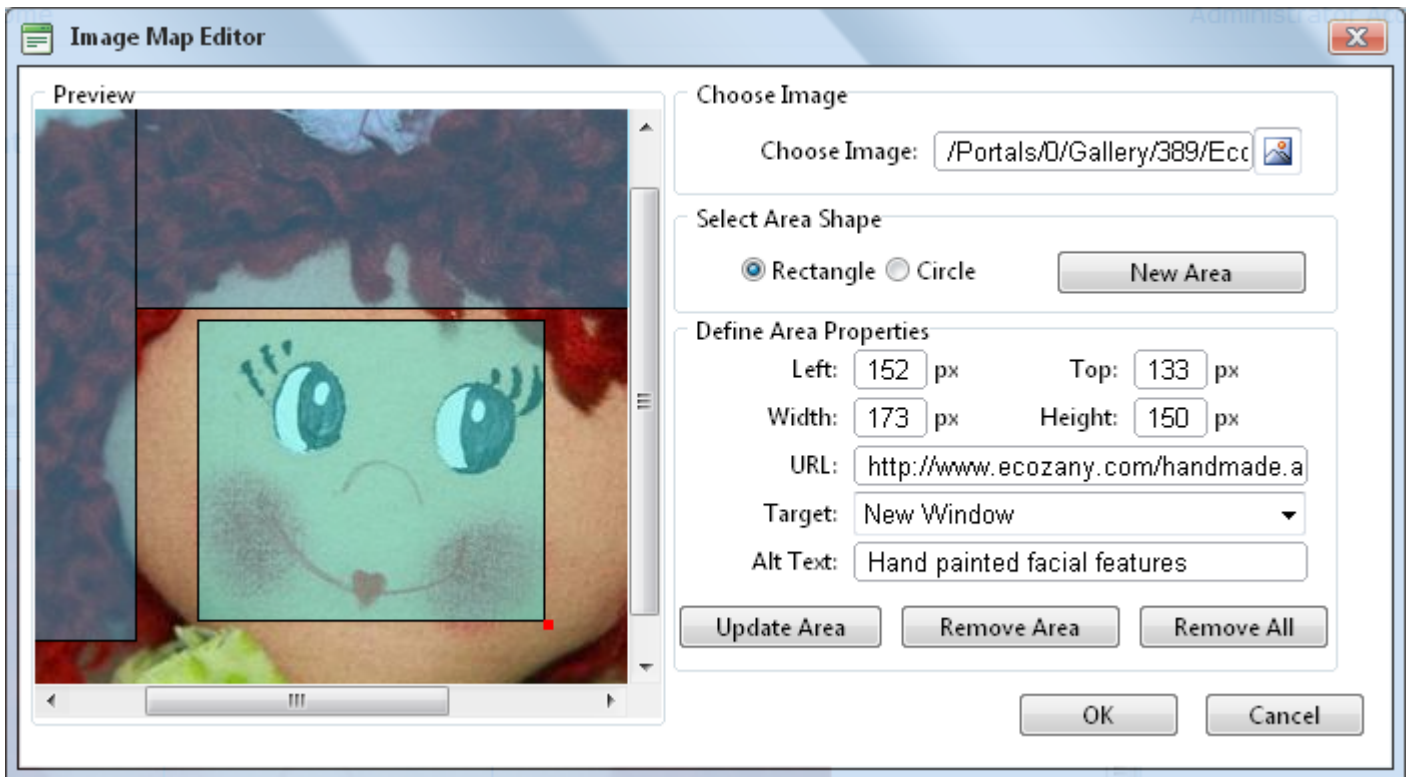


Setting Image Properties

Editing an Image Map

How to edit an image map using the RADEditor.

1. Select the mapped image.
2. Click the **Image Map Editor**  button - OR - Right click on the image and click the **Image Map Editor**  button. This opens the Image Map Editor window.
3. Add, edit/update and delete mapped areas as required. See "Creating an Image Map"
4. Click **OK** to save.




Creating an Image Map

Managing Links and Anchors

Adding an Email Link


How to add an email link to text or an image using the RADEditor. Clicking the link opens the user's email program with the selected email address in the Send To field.

1. Highlight the text/object for the link - OR - Place your cursor where you want to insert the link.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. Go to the **E-mail** tab.
4. In the **Address** text box, enter the email address.
5. In the **Link Text** text box, enter the email address.

6. In the **Subject** text box, enter a subject which will populate the subject field of the email message.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **CSS Class**, select a class for the link - OR - Select **Clear Class** to use the default class.
8. Click the **OK** button.


Adding a Page Link

How to insert a link to a site page using the RADEditor.

1. Highlight the text/object for the link - OR - Place you cursor where you want to insert the link.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. At **Page**, select the site page to link to. This displays the page URL in the URL field.
4. In the **Link Text** text box, enter/edit the text for this link. Note: This option isn't available for images and media.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Target**, select the target window for this link.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Existing Anchor**, select an existing anchor.
7. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Tooltip** text box, enter a tool tip to be displayed when a user mouses over this link.
8. **OPTIONAL.** At **CSS Class**, select a class for the link- OR - Select **Clear Class** to use the default class.
9. Click the **OK** button.


Adding a URL Link

How to insert a link to a URL located on another web site using the RADEditor.

1. Highlight the text/object for the link - OR - Place you cursor where you want to insert the link.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. In the **URL** text box, enter the URL address for this link.
4. In the **Link Text** text box, enter/edit the text for this link. Note: This option isn't available for images and media.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Target**, select the target window for this link.
6. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Tooltip** text box, enter a tool tip to be displayed when a user mouses over this link.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **CSS Class**, select a class for the link - OR - Select **Clear Class** to use the default class.
8. Click the **OK** button.


Editing a Link

How to edit a link in the RADeditor.

1. Select the linked text or object.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. Edit the link as required.
4. Click the **OK** button.


Deleting a Link

How to delete a link from the RADEditor.

1. Select the linked text or object.
2. Click the **Remove Link** (CTRL + SHIFT + K)  button.

Creating an Anchor


How to create an anchor using the RADEditor.

1. Highlight the text/object for the anchor - Place your cursor where you want to insert the anchor.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. Go to the **Anchor** tab.
4. In the **Name** text box, enter an anchor name.
5. Click the **OK** button.

Editing an Anchor

How to edit an anchor in the RADEditor.

OPTION ONE: Use this option when the anchor has been created by first selecting text or an object.


1. Select the anchored text or object.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. Edit the anchor as required.
4. Click the **OK** button.

OPTION TWO: Use this option when the anchor has been added to the editor by placing the cursor in a location.

1. Select the **HTML** tab.
2. Locate the anchor HTML which will look something like ``
3. Edit the anchor name as required.

Linking to an Anchor


How to create a link within the current copy by using an anchor using the RADEditor. This tutorial used an existing anchor. See "Creating an Anchor"

1. Highlight the text/object to be linked to the anchor.
2. Click the **Hyperlink Manager** (CTRL + K)  button. This opens the Hyperlink Manager.
3. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Link Text** text box, enter/edit the link text as required.
4. At **Existing Anchor**, select the anchor name.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Target**, select the target for this link - OR - Select **None** to use the existing window.
6. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Tooltip** text box, enter the text to be displayed when a user mouses over the link.
7. **OPTIONAL.** At **CSS Class** select the CSS class to use.
8. Click the **OK** button.

Deleting an Anchor

How to delete an anchor (bookmark) from the RADEditor.

OPTION ONE: Use this option when the anchor has been created by first selecting text or an object.

1. Select the linked text or object.
2. Click the **Remove Link** (CTRL + SHIFT + K)  button.


OPTION TWO: Use this option when the anchor has been added to the editor by placing the cursor in a location.

1. Select the **HTML** tab.
2. Locate and delete the anchor HTML which will look something like ``

Managing Tables

Inserting a Table

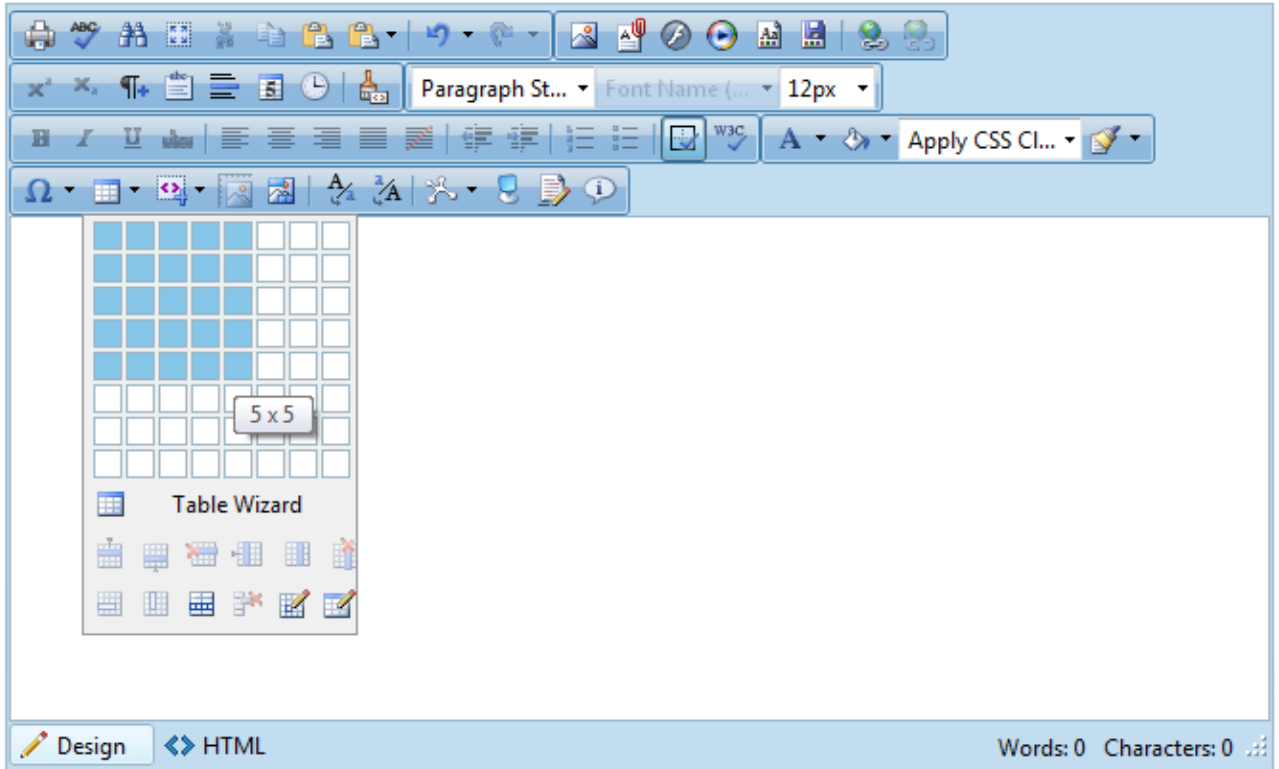
How to insert a table using the RADEditor.

1. Place you cursor where you want to insert the table.
2. Click the **Insert Table**  button.
3. Select for these options:
 - **To insert a basic table**, move your cursor to highlight the number of rows or columns for the table and then click to select it. This displays the basic table in the Editor.

▼ Edit Content

Editor:

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor



The image shows a rich text editor interface. At the top, there is a toolbar with various icons for editing text and content. Below the toolbar, there is a text area containing a table. The table is 5 rows by 5 columns, and a tooltip indicates its size as "5 x 5". Below the table, there is a "Table Wizard" section with several icons for table manipulation. At the bottom of the editor, there are two tabs: "Design" (selected) and "HTML". To the right of the tabs, it shows "Words: 0" and "Characters: 0".

Paragraph St... Font Name (...) 12px

Apply CSS Cl...

5 x 5

Table Wizard

Design HTML


Words: 0 Characters: 0

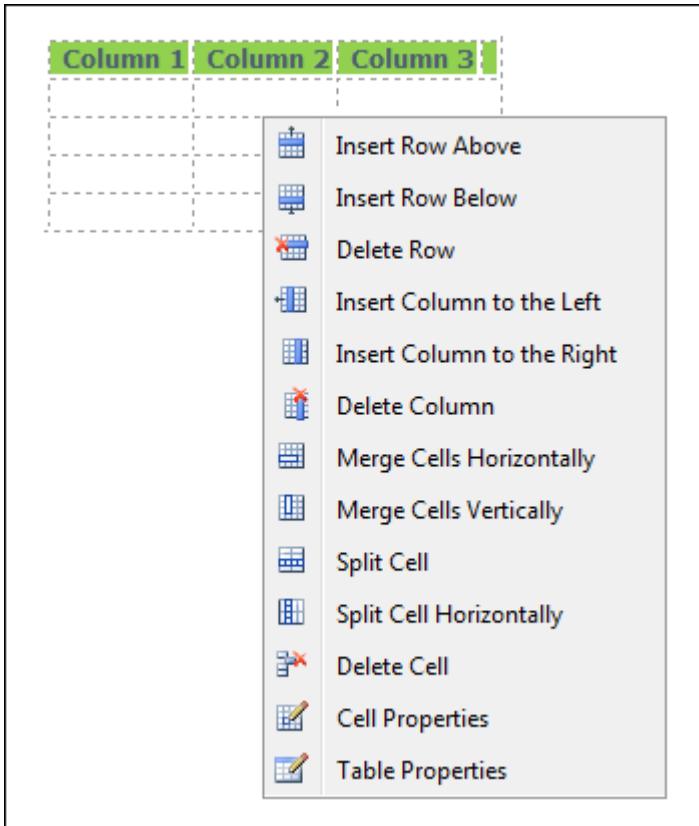
- **To design a more complex table**, click the **Table Wizard** button. See "Setting the Table Design"



Editing a Table

How to edit a table using the right click menu or the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.




1. Place your cursor inside the table. Note: If you want to use the drop-down menu to modify the table design (rather than the Table Wizard) then place your cursor in the cell where you want to perform the modification.
2. Right click. This displays the drop-down menu.
3. Select an option to modify the rows, columns or cells of the table - OR - Select  **Table Properties** or **Cell Properties** to use the Table Wizard to modify the table.
4. Click the **OK** button.










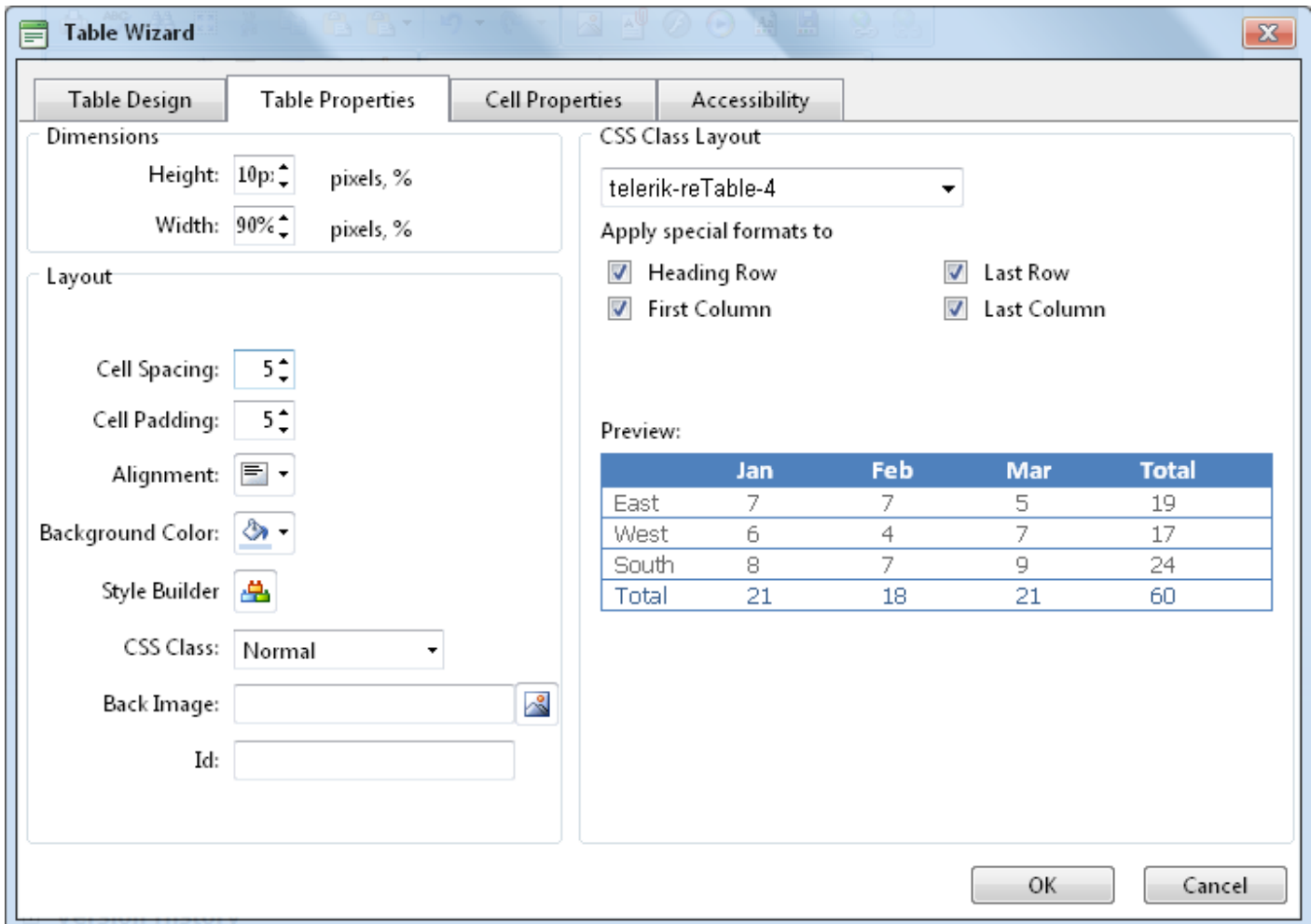
Editing a table

Setting Table Properties

How to set the optional properties of a new or existing table using the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.

1. Open the Table Wizard. See "Inserting a Table" - OR - Right click on an existing table and select  **Table Properties**.
2. Go to the **Table Properties** tab and set any of these optional settings:
3. In the Dimensions section:
 - a. In the **Height** text box, set the table height in either pixels or as a percentage by either typing a value into the text box or by using the **Increase**  and **Decrease**  buttons. The value will automatically be saved in pixels unless you enter the percentage symbol (%) into the text box. E.g. Enter 100px or 100 to set the height as 100 pixels, or enter 100% to set the height as 100%. Leave blank for no specified height.
 - b. In the **Width** text box, set the table width in either pixels or as a percentage as for height. Leave blank for no specified width.


4. In the Layout section:
 - a. In the **Cell Spacing** text box, enter a number to set the pixel spacing between cells - OR - Use the **Increase**  and **Decrease**  buttons.
 - b. In the **Cell Padding** text box, enter a number to set the pixel padding between cells - OR - Use the **Increase**  and **Decrease**  buttons.
 - c. At **Alignment**, click the arrow of the **Alignment Selector** button and select the table alignment.
 - d. At **Background Color**, click the **Color Picker**  button and select the background color.
 - e. At **Style Builder**, click the **Style Builder**  button and build one or more styles. See "Using the Style Builder"
 - f. At **CSS Class**, select a class for the content of this table.
 - g. At **Back Image**, click the **Image SRC**  button and select a background image for the table.
 - h. In the **Id** text box, enter an Id reference for this table.
5. In the CSS Class Layout section:
 - a. Select a CSS layout design from the drop-down box. The design is displayed in the Preview window below.
 - b. At **Apply Special Formats To**, check/uncheck one or more check box to apply/remove one or more styles as desired. The changes can be viewed in the Preview window below.
6. **OPTIONAL**. Select a new tab to set additional properties.
7. Click the **OK** button.








Setting Table Properties

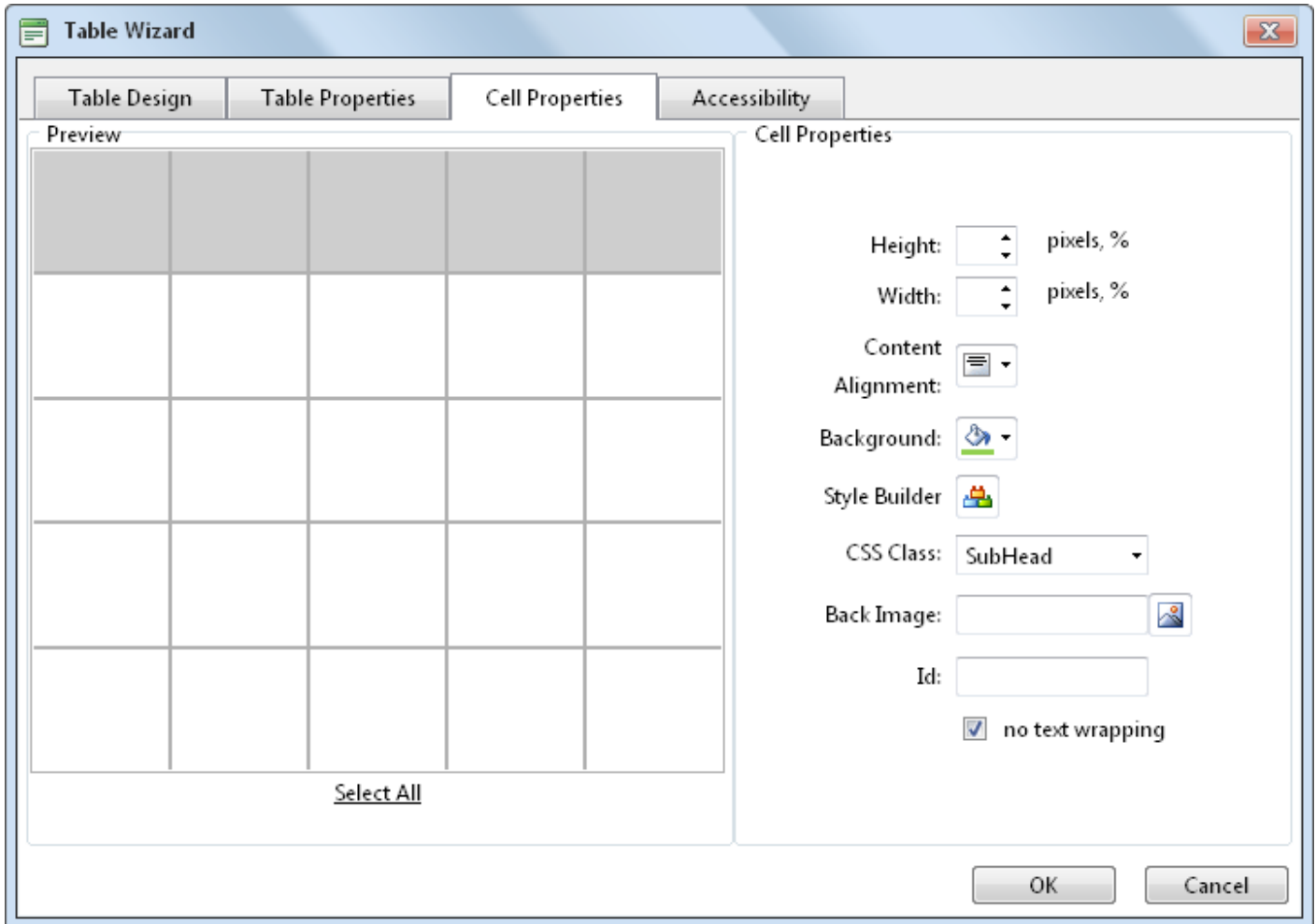
Setting Cell Properties

How to set the optional cell properties of a new or existing table using the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.

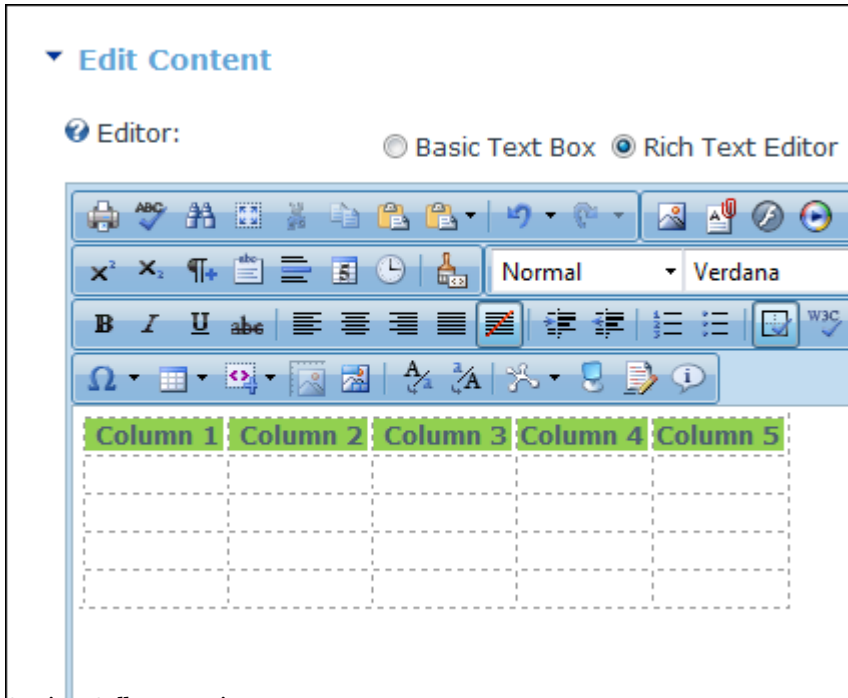
1. Open the Table Wizard. See "Inserting a Table" - OR - Right click on an existing table and select  **Table Properties**.
2. Go to the **Cell Properties** tab.
3. At **Preview**, select which cells you want to set the properties of:
 - To select a single cell, click on that cell. The selected cell is highlighted.
 - To select multiple cells, hold down the Ctrl key and click on each required cell - OR - click the Select All link and then hold down the Ctrl key and click on one or more cells to deselect them. The selected cells are highlighted.

4. At **Cell Properties**, set any of the following:

- a. In the **Height** text box, set the cell height in either pixels or as a percentage by either typing a value into the text box or by using the **Increase**  and **Decrease**  buttons. The value will automatically be saved in pixels unless you enter the percentage symbol (%) into the text box. E.g. Enter 100px or 100 to set the height as 100 pixels, or enter 100% to set the height as 100%. Leave blank for no specified height.
- b. In the **Width** text box, set the cell width in either pixels or as a percentage as for height. Leave blank for no specified width.
- c. At **Content Alignment**, click the arrow of the **Alignment Selector** button and select the alignment of content.
- d. At **Background**, click the **Color Picker**  button and select the background color.
- e. At **Style Builder**, click the **Style Builder**  button and build one or more styles. See "Using the Style Builder"
- f. At **CSS Class**, select a class for this/these cells.
- g. At **Back Image**, click the **Image SRC**  button and select a background image for the table.
- h. In the **Id** text box, enter an Id reference for this/these cells.
- i. At **No Text Wrapping**, check the check box to disallow text within this/these cells from wrapping to another line - OR - uncheck the check box to allow text to wrap.




5. Click the **OK** button to save or go to another tab of the Table Wizard to set more properties.



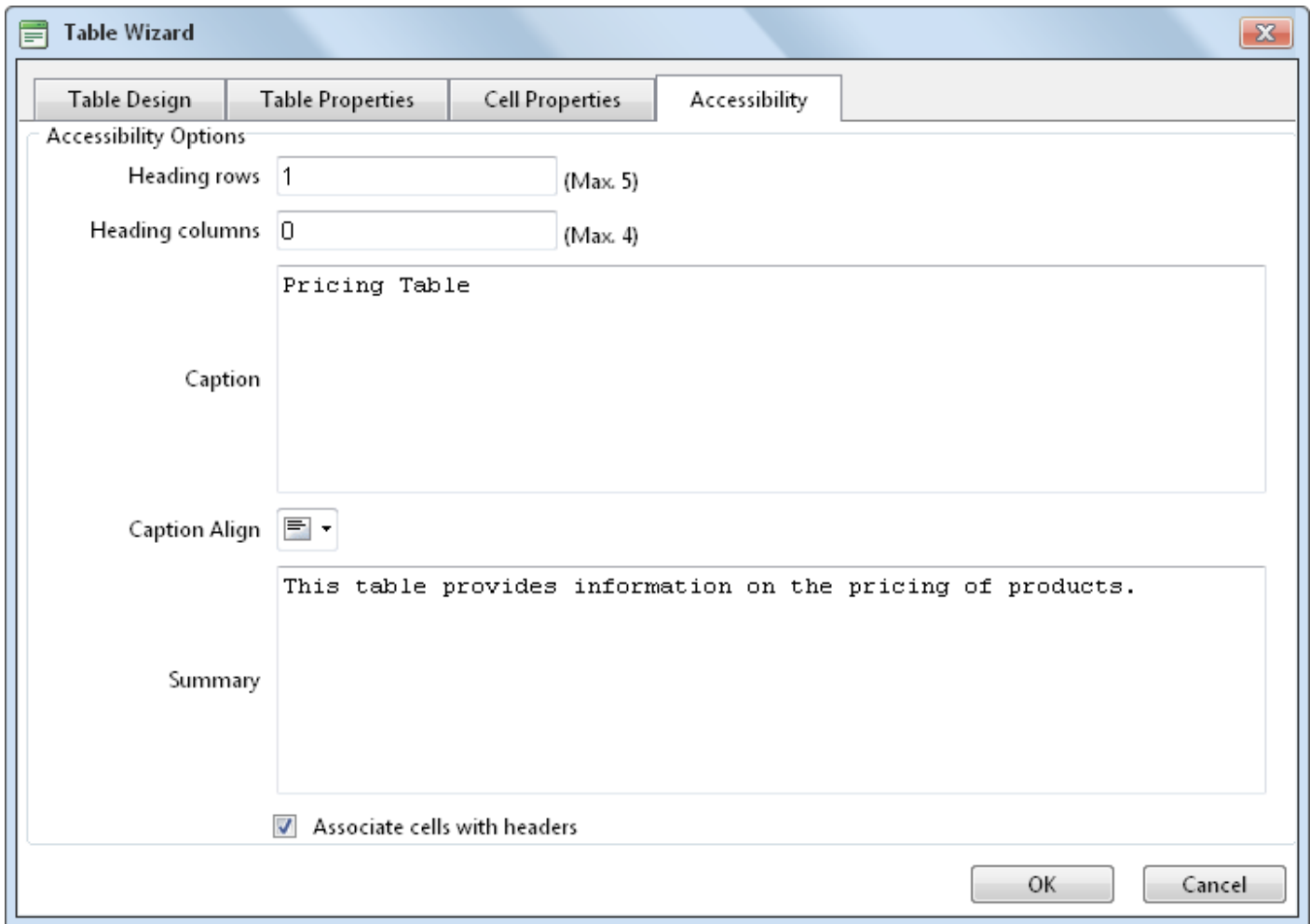
Setting Cell Properties

Setting Table Accessibility

How to set the accessibility of a new or existing table using the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.

1. Open the Table Wizard. See "Inserting a Table" - OR - Right click on an existing table and select  **Table Properties**.
2. Go to the **Accessibility** tab and set any of these Accessibility Options:
 - a. In the **Heading Rows** text box, enter the number of rows which are headings. A maximum of five (5) is allowed.
 - b. In the **Heading Columns** text box, enter the number of columns which are headings. A maximum of five (4) is allowed.
 - c. In the **Caption** text box, enter a caption for the table. The caption displays above the table.
 - d. At **Caption Alignment**, click the arrow of the **Alignment Selector** button and select the alignment of the caption.
 - e. In the **Summary** text box, enter a summary of the table contents. The table summary isn't displayed on the page, but can be read using accessibility tools such as text readers.
 - f. At **Associate Cells With Headers**, check the check box to associate cells with headers - OR - uncheck the check box to disable.
 - g. **OPTIONAL**. Select a new tab to set additional properties.


3. Click the **OK** button.



Setting Table Accessibility

Using the Table Wizard










How to design a table using the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.

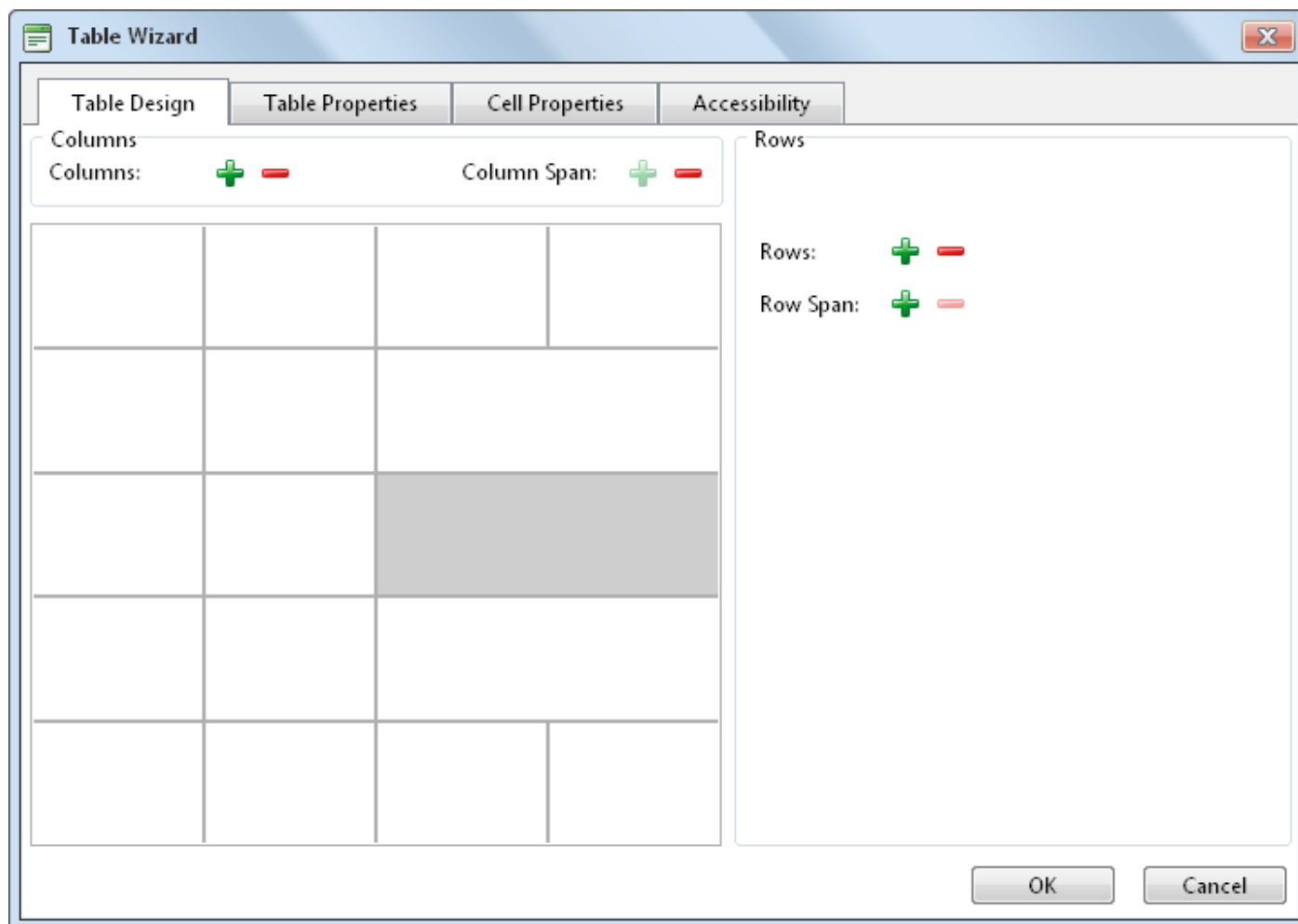
1. Click the **Insert Table**  button.
2. Select **Table Wizard**. This opens the Table Wizard on the Table Design tab. A table of two columns by two rows is displayed as the basis for your design.
3. **OPTIONAL**. Select a cell. This enables the **Increase** and **Decrease** buttons which are available to change the design.
4. Select an **Increase** or **Decrease** button to modify the table design. You can choose to add columns and rows, as well as span columns and rows.

5. **OPTIONAL.** Change tabs to set other properties.
6. Click the **OK** button.

Setting the Table Design

How to set the design a table using the Table Wizard of the RADEditor.

1. Open the Table Wizard. See "Inserting a Table" - OR - Right click on an existing table and select  **Table Properties**.
2. Go to the **Table Design** tab. If you are adding a new table, a table of two columns by two rows is displayed as the basis for your design. If you are editing an existing table, your current design is displayed.
3. To modify the table, perform any of these actions:
 - To add a column: At **Columns**, click the **Increase**  button.
 - To remove a column: At **Columns**, click the **Decrease**  button.
 - To insert a column span: select a cell and then at **Column Span**, click the **Increase**  button.
 - To remove a column span: select a cell and then at **Column Span**, click the **Decrease**  button.
 - To add a row: At **Rows**, click the **Increase**  button.
 - To remove a row: At **Row**, click the **Decrease**  button.
 - To insert a row span: select a cell and then at **Row Span**, click the **Increase**  button.
 - To remove a row span: select a cell and then at **Row Span**, click the **Decrease**  button.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Select a new tab to set additional properties.
5. Click the **OK** button.



Designing a Table

Using the Style Builder

How to create CSS styles for tables using the Style Builder of the RADEditor. The Style Builder can be accessed from the Table Properties tab of the Table Wizard when adding or editing a table. See "Setting Table Properties"

1. At **Style Builder**, click the **Style Builder** button. This opens the Style Builder window. The Font tab will be displayed.
2. Set the following Font properties:
 - a. Go to the Font Name section.
 - i. At **Family**, select the required font type.

- b. Go to the Font Attributes section.
 - i. At **Color**, click the **Color Picker** button and select the font color.
 - ii. At **Italics**, select from these options:
 - **Normal**: No italics
 - **Italics**: Italics (text leans forward)
 - **Oblique**: Oblique italics (text leans backwards)
 - iii. At **Small Caps**, select from these options:
 - Normal: No capitalization
 - Small Caps: Small capitalization.


Deleting a Table

How to delete a table from the RADEditor.

OPTION ONE:

1. Click on the corner of the table to select it.
2. Strike the **Delete** button on your keyboard.

OPTION TWO:

1. Click on the corner of the table to select it.
2. Right click to view the drop-down menu.
3. Click the **Delete Table**  button.

OPTION THREE:

1. Place your cursor before or after the table.
2. Strike either the **Backspace** or **Delete** button on your keyboard respectively.

▼ **Edit Content**

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

The screenshot shows the RADEditor interface. At the top, there's a toolbar with various icons for editing. Below the toolbar, there's a text area with the heading "Introduction" and a placeholder "[Insert your introductory summary here...]". In the center, there's a table with 5 columns and 2 rows. The columns are labeled "Column 1" through "Column 5", and the rows contain "Sample data". Below the table, there's another text area with the heading "Conclusion" and a placeholder "[insert your conclusion here...]". At the bottom, there's a status bar with "Design" and "HTML" tabs, and a word/character count: "Words: 39 Characters: 248". A context menu is open over the table, with three options: "Show/Hide Border", "Table Properties", and "Delete Table". The "Delete Table" option is highlighted with a red oval.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4	Column 5
Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data
Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data

Conclusion

[insert your conclusion here...]


Design HTML Words: 39 Characters: 248

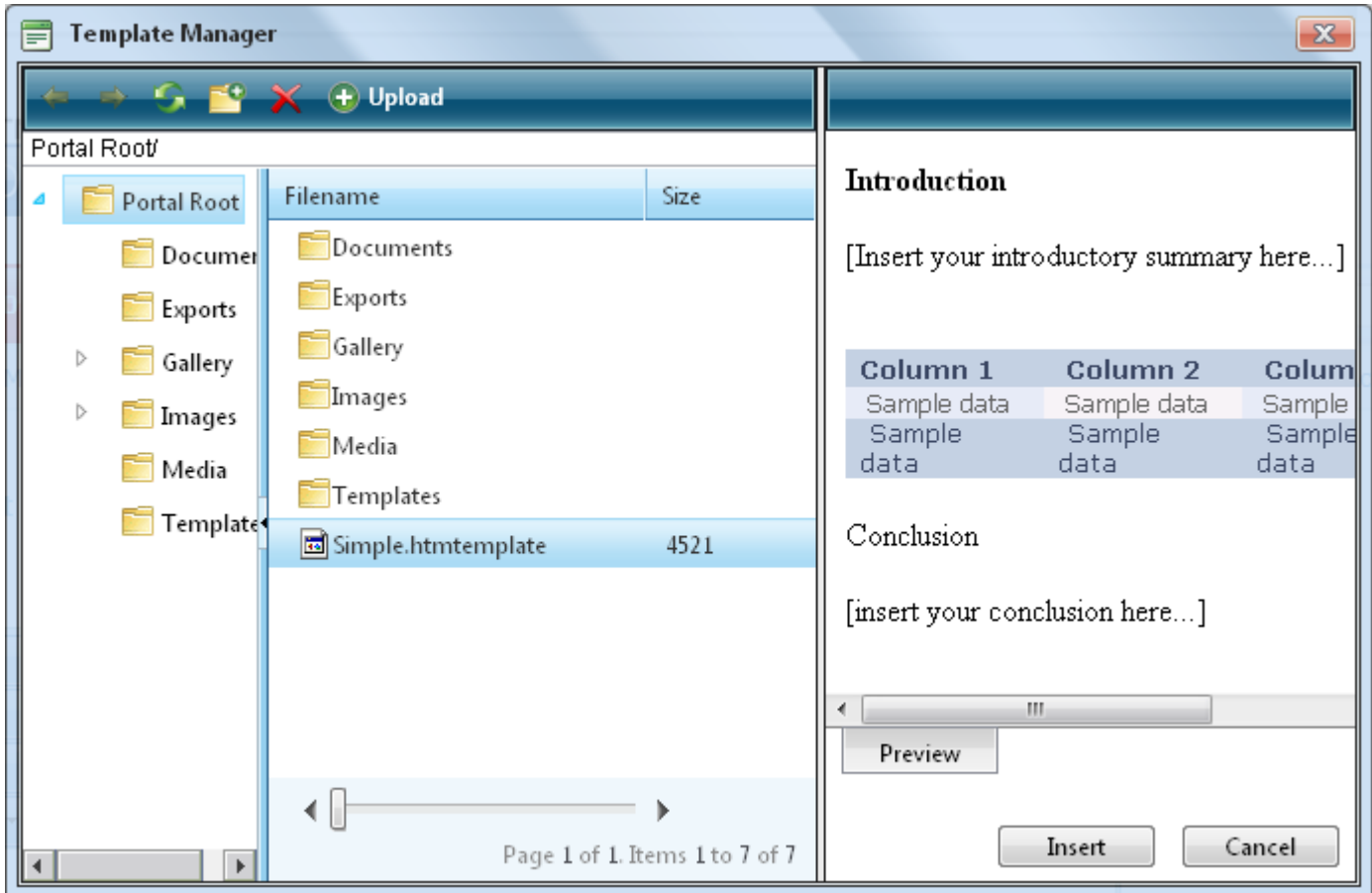
Deleting a Table

Managing Templates

Inserting a Template

How to insert a template using the RADEditor.

1. Place your cursor where you want to insert the template.
2. Click the **Template Manager**  button. This opens the Template Manager.
3. Navigate to and select the required template. See "Using the Resource Manager"
4. Click the **Insert** button.



Inserting a Template

Saving a Template

How to create and save a template using the RADEditor.

1. Create your template by adding text, images, tables, etc as desired.

Edit Content

Editor: Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Introduction


[Insert your introductory summary here...]

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4	Column 5
Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data
Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data	Sample data

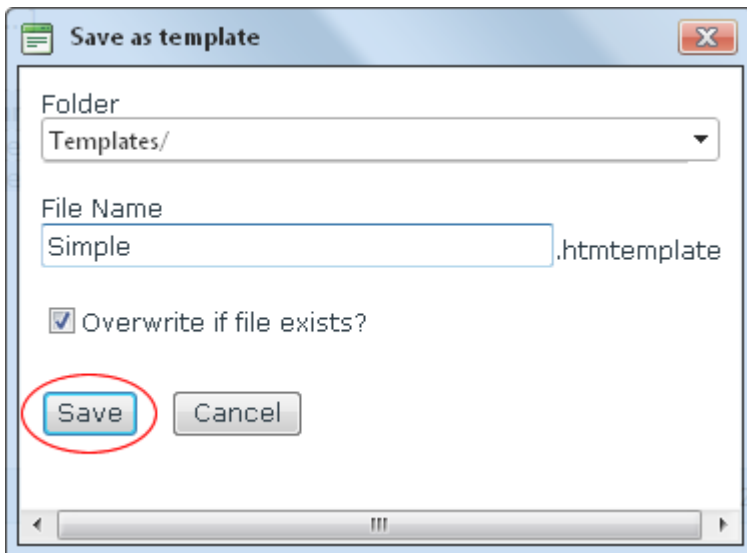
Conclusion

[insert your conclusion here...]

Design HTML Words: 39 Characters: 248

2. Click the **Save Template**  button. This opens the Save As Template window.
3. At **Folder**, select the File Manager folder where you want to save this template.
4. In the **File Name** text box, enter a name for this template.
5. At **Overwrite If File Exists?**, check the check box to overwrite any template that exists with this template - OR - Uncheck the check box if you don't want to override an existing file. This enables warning message if a template with this name already exists.
6. Click the **Save** button.
 - If there is no conflict with overwriting, the message "The template was saved successfully" is displayed. Click **OK** to close the window.

- If there is a conflict, the message "The following error was reported: The file already exists." is displayed. In this situation, repeat Steps 1-6 using a new File Name.



Saving a Template

Banners

About the Banners Module

The Banners module displays vendor banner advertising. Banners can be either a static or an animated image, HTML or plain text, as well as script such as JavaScript. You can set the number of banners displayed in the module as well as set a number of layout options. Where more banners are available than the module is set to display at one time, then different banners are displayed each time the page is visited.

Module Version: 01.00.00

Minimum DNN Version: 01.00.00



Related Topics:

- See "About the Vendors Module"
- See "Enabling/Disabling Banner Advertising"

About Banner Types

An overview of the different types of banners that can be associated with a vendor account and displayed using the banners module. Five sizes of image banners are provided: Banner, MicroButton, Button, Block and Sky-scraper. The Banner Type 'Banner' can be displayed either using a Banners module, or by adding the [BANNER] skin object to the skin applied to the portal or to a page of the portal. The [BANNER] skin object can be enabled or disabled on the Admin > Site Settings page and is a portal wide setting. This can be set to either Site or Host.

Below are examples of the industry standard sizes for banner images. These sizes are recommendations only.

Banner

468 x 60 pixel

This type of banner can be displayed either using a Banners module, or it can display where ever the [BANNER] skin object is included in the skin applied to a page. See "Enabling/Disabling Banner Advertising"



Micro Button

120 x 60 pixels



Button

120 x 90 pixels

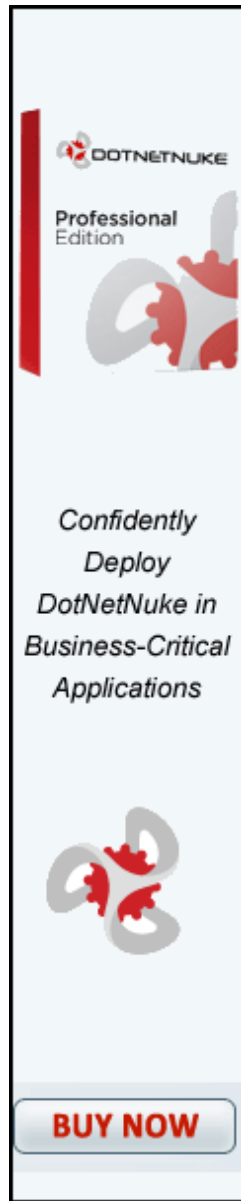


Block

125 x 125 pixels



Skyscraper
120 x 600 pixels

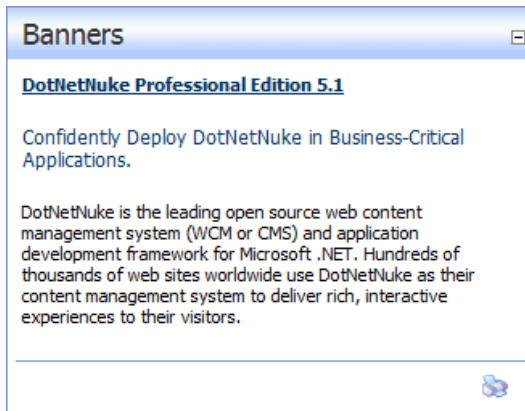


Script Banner

Script type banners can contain javascript which is executed when the banner is shown on the portal.

Text Banner

Text banners can be either plain text or HTML. Stylesheet styles are applied.

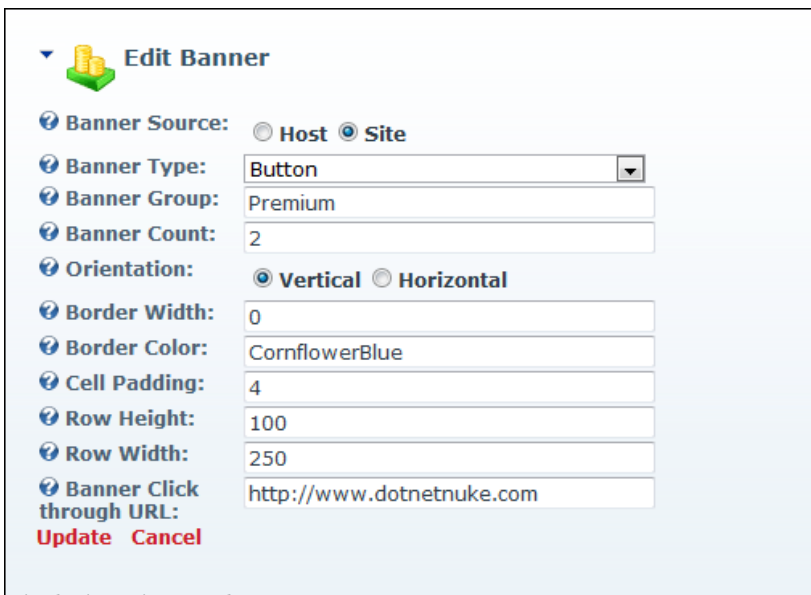


Displaying a Banner

How to display banners of a using the Banners module. Banners must be added to a vendor account before they can be displayed in the module. See the Vendors module for more details.

1. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
2. At **Banner Source**, select from these options:
 - **Site**: Displays banners managed on this site. These banners are exclusive to this site.
 - **Host**: Displays banners managed on the Host site (by your Host). These banners are available to all sites within this DNN installation.
3. At **Banner Type**, select one of the available the banner types (**Banner**, **MicroButton**, **Button**, **Block**, **Skyscraper**, **Text**, or **Script**) from the drop-down box. See "About Banner Types"
4. The following optional settings lets you control which banners display:
 - a. In the **Banner Group** text box, enter the banner group name. This sets this module to only display banners belonging to this group (A group name can be enter when added banners) - OR - Leave this field blank to display all banners regardless of group name.
 - b. In the **Banner Count** text box, enter the maximum number of banners to be displayed at one time.
5. The following optional settings control how the banners displays in the module:
 - a. At **Orientation**, select **Vertical** or **Horizontal** to set how the banners are displayed in the module. Vertical is the default setting.
 - b. In the **Border Width** text box, enter a number to set the border width (pixels)- OR - Enter 0 (zero) for no border. No border is the default setting.
 - c. In the **Border Color** text box, enter a color for the border. E.g. DarkOrange. Border Width must be set to enable this setting. See Reference > Color Codes and Names for more details. Note: A Border Width must be set for this field to work.

- d. In the **Cell Padding** text box, enter a number to set the space between banners and the border. Border Width must be set to enable this setting.
 - e. In the **Row Height** text box, enter a number to set the height for each banner cell (pixels).
 - f. In the **Row Width** text box, enter a number to set the pixel width for each banner cell.
6. In the **Banner Click Through URL** text box, enter an redirect page which applies to all banners in this module.
 7. Click the [Update](#) link.



The screenshot shows a web interface for editing banner settings. At the top left, there is a dropdown arrow and a stack of gold coins icon, followed by the text 'Edit Banner'. Below this, there are several configuration options, each with a blue circular icon containing a white checkmark:

- Banner Source:** Radio buttons for 'Host' and 'Site' (selected).
- Banner Type:** A dropdown menu showing 'Button'.
- Banner Group:** A text box containing 'Premium'.
- Banner Count:** A text box containing '2'.
- Orientation:** Radio buttons for 'Vertical' (selected) and 'Horizontal'.
- Border Width:** A text box containing '0'.
- Border Color:** A text box containing 'CornflowerBlue'.
- Cell Padding:** A text box containing '4'.
- Row Height:** A text box containing '100'.
- Row Width:** A text box containing '250'.
- Banner Click through URL:** A text box containing 'http://www.dotnetnuke.com'.


At the bottom left of the form, there are two buttons: 'Update' and 'Cancel'.

Displaying Site Vendor Banners

Editing Banner Options

How to edit the settings applied to the Banners module.

1. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
2. Edit the options as required.
3. Click the [Update](#) link.

▼  **Edit Banner**

Banner Source: Host Site

Banner Type:

Banner Group:

Banner Count:

Orientation: Vertical Horizontal

Border Width:

Border Color:

Cell Padding:

Row Height:

Row Width:

Banner Click through URL:

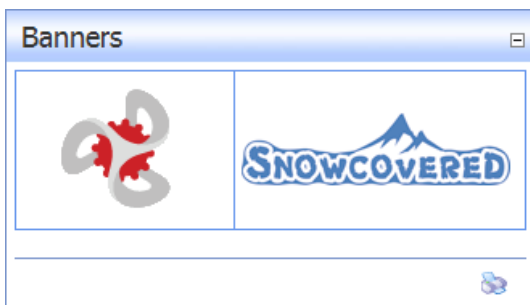
Update **Cancel**

Editing Banner Options

Displaying Banners Horizontally

How to set the Banners module to display banners horizontally across the page.

1. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
2. At **Orientation**, select **Horizontal**.
3. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Column Width** text box, enter a number to set the width of each column cell. If this setting is left empty the banners may not align evenly across the module.
4. Click the Update link.



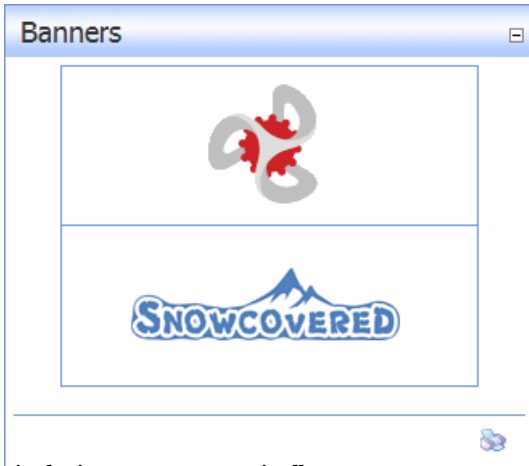
Displaying Banners Horizontally

Displaying Banners Vertically

How to set the banners module to display banners vertically down the page.

1. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
2. At **Orientation**, select **Vertical**.

3. Click the Update link.



Displaying Banners Vertically

Setting Banner Spacing

1. How to set the width and height of the (invisible) table cells which each banner is displayed within.
2. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
3. In the **Cell Padding** text box, enter the pixel height of the row. The default value is 4
4. In the **Row Height** text box, enter the height for each banner cell. E.g. 100
5. In the **Row Width** text box, enter the width for each banner cell in pixels. E.g. 100
6. Click the Update link.

Edit Banner

Banner Source: Host Site

Banner Type: Button

Banner Group: Premium

Banner Count: 2

Orientation: Vertical Horizontal

Border Width: 0

Border Color: CornflowerBlue

Cell Padding: 4

Row Height: 100

Row Width: 250

Banner Click through URL: http://www.dotnetnuke.com

Update Cancel

Banner Module Settings - Row Height



Image shows default spacing setting



Banners set with Cell Padding 4, Row Height 100

Setting the Banner Border

How to set the width and color of the border around each banner that is displayed in a banners module.

1. Select **Banner Options** from the module menu.
2. At **Border Width**, enter the pixel width of the border. E.g. 3
3. At **Border Color**, enter a hex number (#6495ED) or color code (CornflowerBlue) to set the color of the border.
4. Click the Update link.

*Tip: You may like to uncheck the **Display Container?** option on the Settings page of this module to hide the module container.*

Banner Source:	<input type="radio"/> Host <input checked="" type="radio"/> Site
Banner Type:	<All Types>
Banner Group:	
Banner Count:	3
Orientation:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Vertical <input type="radio"/> Horizontal
Border Width:	3
Border Color:	SeaGreen
Cell Padding:	4
Row Height:	
Column Width:	

Setting banner borders



Banners with borders displayed

Feed Explorer

About the Feed Explorer Module

The Feed Explorer module allows users to browse RSS feeds using a tabbed user interface. There is a standard format for the content of the module that creates the Tabs (across the top of the module), Sections (below tabs), Items (down the left hand side) and then displays the related content to the right of the items. This module displays DNN information by default but can also be configured to aggregate multiple RSS feeds from different sources into one easy to use module.

Module Version: 01.00.00



The Feed Explorer module displaying Yahoo! news

Manage Settings




Displaying DNN Solutions in the Feed Explorer

How to display DNN Solutions using the Feed Explorer module. This enables users to obtain DNN modules, skins, user manuals, video training and other DNN solutions - many of which have been verified as fully compatible with DNN. Information is grouped using the following tabs:

- **Marketplace:** This tab provides access to the DNN Marketplace (Snowcovered.com) which sells extensions for DNN. Many of these extensions have all been reviewed by DNN Corporation so you can be confident that they will not break or cause errors on your site. This tab is divided into three sections:
 - **Modules:** DNN modules for sale.
 - **Skins:** Skins and containers sale.

- **Other:** Other DNN products for sale including components, eBooks, providers (including authentication systems and language packages) and DNN services (including DNN Sponsorship).
- **DNN:** This tab displays a list of the current DNN core projects. Projects include Modules, Providers, Utility, Core and Components which are developed and maintained by the core team and are available for free. At the time of writing only the Modules section was completed. You can visit the project page of a module by clicking on module name on the Modules tab.
- **About:** Provides information about the Solutions Explorer and Snowcovered.com.

How to display DNN Solutions using the Feed Explore module:

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Feed Explorer Settings** section.
3. At **Content Source**, select **DotNetNuke Solutions Explorer**.
4. Click the Update link.

Feed Explorer

Products DotNetNuke.com

Professional Edition Community Edition

About
Buy
Online Demo


DOTNETNUKE™

DOWNLOAD FORUM

PRODUCTS DEVELOPMENT COMMUNITY SUPPORT PARTNERS NEWS ABOUT

You are here > Products > Professional Edition

Professional Edition Datasheet



Attend a Webinar




Try an Online Demo

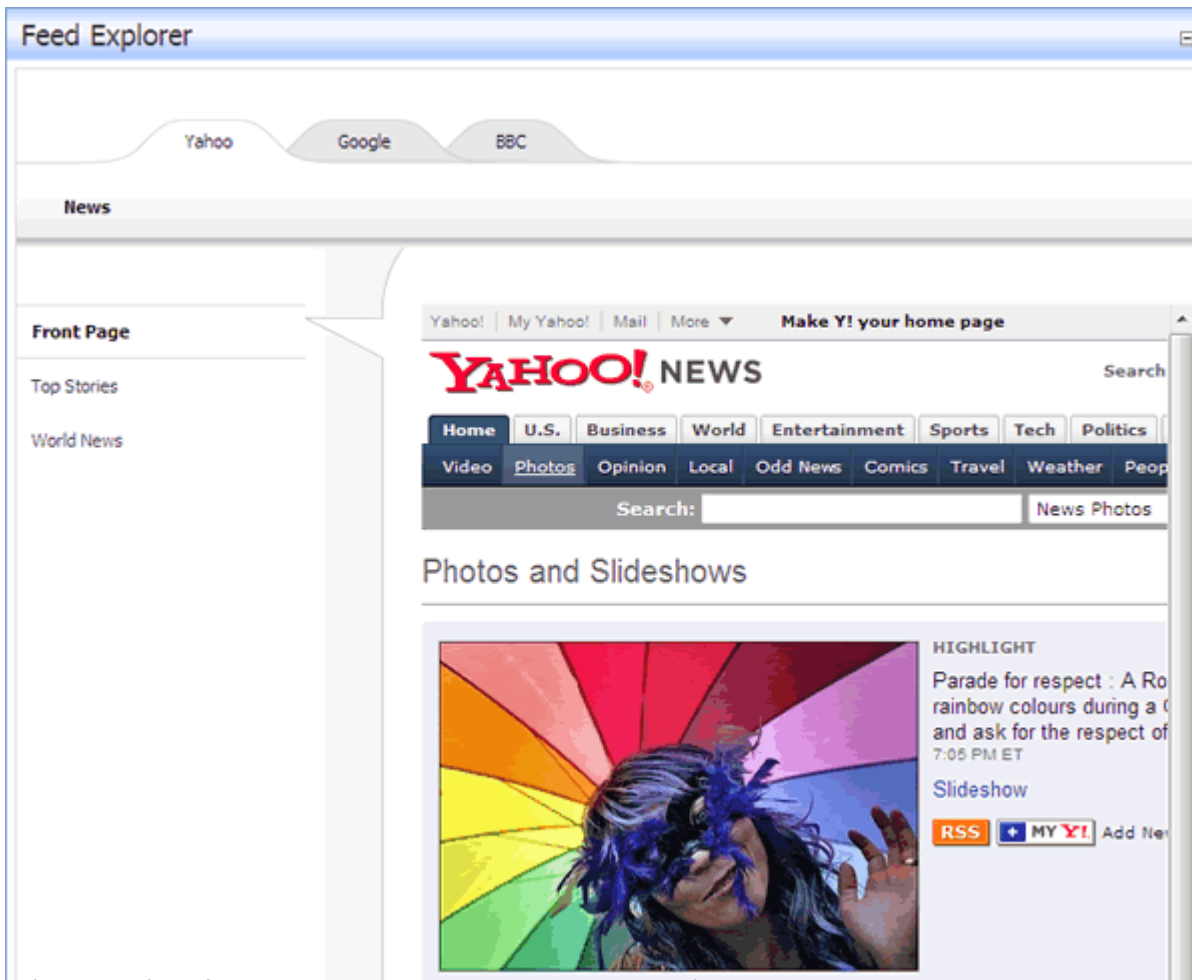
View Case Studies

Yahoo, Google and BBC News are a preset Content Source option

Displaying News in the Feed Explorer

How to display news using the Feed Explorer module. This displays news from Yahoo!, Google and BBC news, images, video, maps and more.




1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Feed Explorer Settings** section.
3. At **Content Source**, select **DotNetNuke Solutions Explorer**.
4. Click the Update link.



Yahoo, Google and BBC News are a preset Content Source option

Displaying Custom OPML using a Custom URL or File




How to set the Feed Explorer to display any custom data by entering a URL to an OPML (Outline Processor Markup Language) file or by uploading an OPML File. An OPML file is an XML file which contains markup describing multiple RSS feeds.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Feed Explorer Settings** section.
3. At **Content Source**, select **Custom OPML URL/File**.

4. In the **Custom OPML URL/File** text box, enter an absolute URL or file path. E.g. `http://www.domain.com/portals/o/myopmlfile.xml`
5. Click the Update link.

Displaying Custom OPML using Custom Text

How to display any custom RSS feed data by entering OPML (Outline Processor Markup Language) that is customized for the Feed Explorer module.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Feed Explorer Settings** section.
3. At **Content Source**, select the **Custom OPML Text** radio button.
4. Edit the existing text in the **Custom OPML Text** text box - OR - Delete the existing text and paste in your own text.
5. Click the Update link.

The sample below shows how to create the Tabs, Sections and items in the Feed Explorer. You can add as many Tabs, Sections and Items as you like.

```
http://news.google.com/?output=rss" />  
http://news.google.com/?output=rss" />  
  
http://news.google.com/?output=rss" />  
  
http://news.google.com/?output=rss" />
```

Feed Explorer


Tab One Tab Two Products DotNetNuke.com

Section 1 Section 2

Category 1


Category 2

Martin Bell: Lobbying claims 'shocking' - BBC News



Martin Bell: Lobbying claims 'shocking'
BBC News
 Three former cabinet ministers are to be suspended from the parliamentary Labour party after being recorded for a documentary on political lobbying. Stephen Byers, Patricia Hewitt and Geoff Hoon will be suspended following reports in the Sunday Times ...
[Labour suspends ministers over lobbying claims Reuters UK](#)
[3 former UK ministers suspended amid new scandal The Associated Press](#)
[Stephen Byers and other ex-ministers suspended from Labour party over lobbying ... The Guardian](#)
[Times Online](#) - [Wall Street Journal](#) - [Telegraph.co.uk](#)
[all 742 news articles »](#)

In Afghanistan, Karzai holds talks with key insurgent groups - Washington Post






In Afghanistan, Karzai holds talks with key insurgent groups
Washington Post
 KABUL -- President Hamid Karzai held talks here Monday with representatives of one of the key insurgent groups battling his government, as the president continues his high-stakes push for an eventual reconciliation among all of ...
[Al-Qaeda-linked group Hezb-e-Islami sets peace terms for Karzai Times Online](#)
[Karzai holds peace talks with insurgents ABC Online](#)
[Afghan President Meets With Insurgents New York Times](#)
[Christian Science Monitor](#) - [TIME](#) - [ABC News](#)
[all 805 news articles »](#)

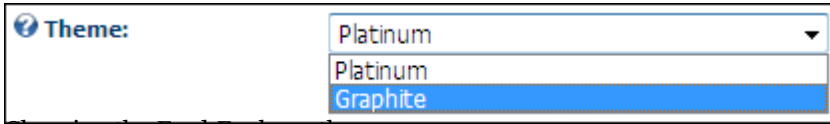
This OPML produces the below output in the Feed Explorer

Setting the Feed Explorer Theme

You can change the skin design applied to the Feed Explorer module. Two skins or themes are supplied by default.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Feed Explorer Settings** section.

3. At **Theme**, select a theme from the drop-down box.
4. Click the Update link.



Changing the Feed Explorer theme

Restoring Deleted Content

Module Editors

About the Recycle Bin Module

The Recycle Bin module stores all pages and modules that have been deleted from a site. These pages and modules can be restored to the portal or permanently removed.

The Pages Window

- Pages are listed in the Recycle Bin by page name
- Pages are listed in the order that they were deleted from most recently deleted to first deleted

The Modules Window

- Modules are listed in the Recycle Bin by page name - module title. E.g. Home - Announcements
- Modules are listed in the order that they were deleted from most recently deleted to first deleted

Restoring Modules and Pages

- Restoring a page will restore it to its previous location on the site menu. All modules (including content) will also be restored.
- A module (including content) is restored to a selected page

Deleting Modules and Pages

- Deletion is permanent
- Page deletion includes modules and content
- Module deletion includes content


Tip: It is recommended that unwanted pages and module are regularly deleted from the recycle bin. This will ensure that the Recycle Bin doesn't become so large that Site Administrators must search through a large number of modules and pages to find the required item.

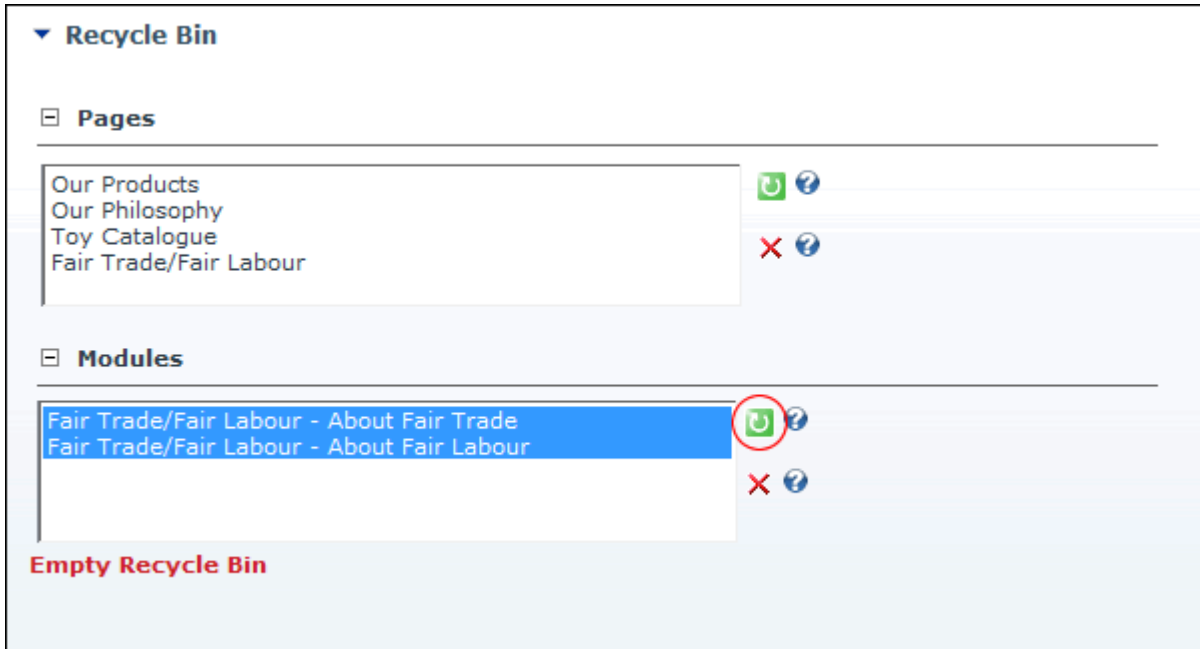


The Recycle Bin

Restoring Deleted Modules

How to restore one or more deleted modules (including module content) to their original page using the Recycle Bin module.

1. In the **Modules** window, click on the name of each module to be restored.
2. Click the **Restore**  button.




Restoring deleted modules to a page

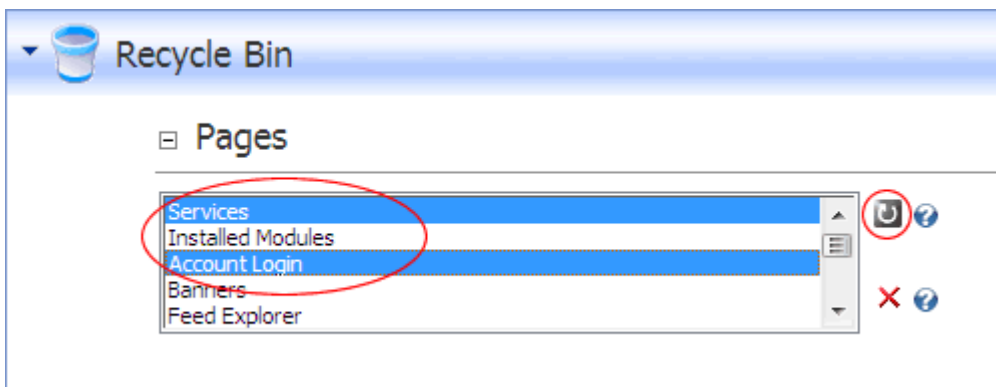
Restoring Deleted Pages

How to restore one or more deleted pages to the site using the Recycle Bin module.

This restores the selected pages including any modules and module content on those pages prior to deletion. The pages are restored to their previous location in the pages list and site menu.

Tip: You cannot restore a page whose parent page has also been deleted unless you restore the parent page first.

1. In the **Pages** window, click on the name of each page to be restored.
2. Click the **Restore**  button.




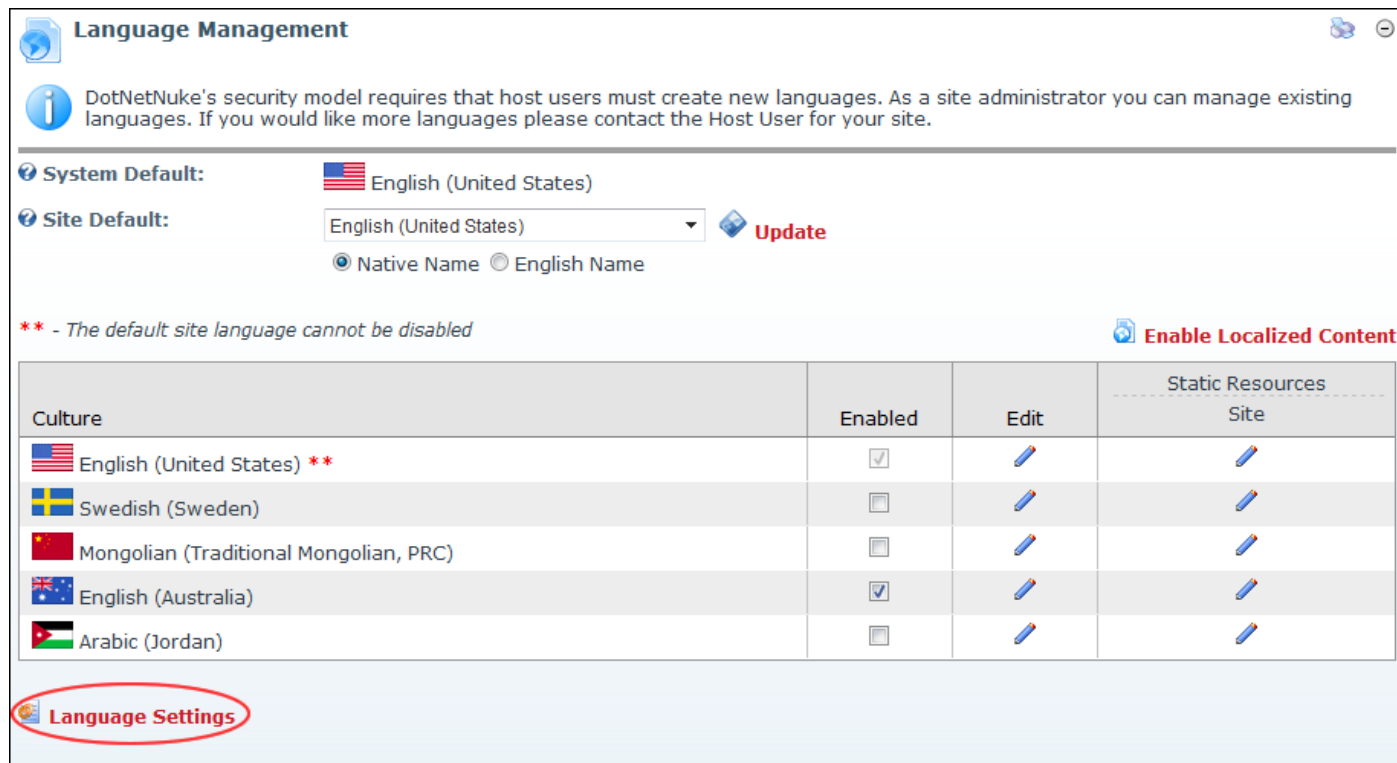
Restoring deleted pages to the site

Adding Privacy and Terms of Use Statements

Configuring the Portal Language Settings


How to configure language settings for a single portal.


1. Go to a Languages module - OR - Navigate to Admin > Languages. This displays the list of available languages.
2. Click the  [Language Settings](#) link.




Language Management
















DotNetNuke's security model requires that host users must create new languages. As a site administrator you can manage existing languages. If you would like more languages please contact the Host User for your site.


System Default:  English (United States)


Site Default: English (United States)  **Update**

Native Name English Name

**** - The default site language cannot be disabled**  **Enable Localized Content**

Culture	Enabled	Edit	Static Resources
			Site
 English (United States) **	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
 Swedish (Sweden)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
 Mongolian (Traditional Mongolian, PRC)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
 English (Australia)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
 Arabic (Jordan)	<input type="checkbox"/>		

 **Language Settings**

3. At **Enable Browser Language Detection?**, check the check box to enable - OR - Uncheck the check box to disable.
4. At **Use Paging in Editor?**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to enable paging which is disabled by default. Use paging to reduce the size of the page.
 - a. At **Editor Page Size** enter the number of items to be displayed on each page of the editor. The default setting is 10.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable paging.
5. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Related Topics:



- See "About the Pager Control"

▼ Portal Language Settings

Enable Browser Language Detection?

Use Paging in Editor?


Editor Page Size:



 **Update**  **Cancel**


Configuring the Portal Language Settings


Example: Editing Privacy and Terms of Use Statements


How to edit the Privacy statement and/or the Terms of Use Statements using the Languages module. No message is displayed by default. See "Portal Privacy Text"

1. Go to a **Languages** module - OR - Navigate to Admin > **Languages**. This displays the Culture grid which lists the available languages.
2. In the **Static Resources - Portal** column, click the **Edit**  button beside the language file to be edited. This displays GlobalResources.Portal-O.resx at Selected Resource File as the files ready for editing. Note: This is where you will find the files most commonly desired for editing such as portal and email messages.


Language Management  
















 DotNetNuke's security model requires that host users must create new languages. As a site administrator you can manage existing languages. If you would like more languages please contact the Host User for your site.


System Default:  English (United States)


Site Default:  **Update**

Native Name English Name

*** - The default site language cannot be disabled*  **Enable Localized Content**

Culture	Enabled	Edit	Static Resources Site
 English (United States) **	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
 Swedish (Sweden)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
 Mongolian (Traditional Mongolian, PRC)	<input type="checkbox"/>		
 English (Australia)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
 Arabic (Jordan)	<input type="checkbox"/>		

 **Language Settings**

3. Find **Resource Name: MESSAGE_PORTAL_PRIVACY.Text** or **MESSAGE_PORTAL_TERMS.Text** as desired. Note: If Paging is enabled then it may be located on a subsequent page. See "Configuring the Portal Language Settings"
4. To edit the message, perform one of the following options:
 - Edit the message body using HTML tags in the Localized Value text box below
- OR -
 - Click the **Edit**  button. This displays dialog box which reads "All unsaved changes will be lost if you continue. Are you sure you want to continue?"
 - i. Click the **OK** button.
 - ii. Enter your new message into the RTE ensuring you include the replacement tokens displayed at Default Value.
 - iii. Click the Update link to return to the Language Editor.
5. **OPTIONAL.** To edit the subject associated with email message language files, edit the associated Subject resource file which will be listed above the Body resource file.
6. Click the Update link.
7. **OPTIONAL.** Repeat all of the above steps to update this message for another language.

Working With Files And Images

About the File Manager Module

The File Manager Module enables the management of files on this site. This module allows authorized users to upload new files, download files, delete files, and synchronize the file upload directory. It also provides information on the amount of disk space used and available.

This administration module can be added to any site page, and is also displayed on the Admin and Host menus.

Host Tip: The File Manager module located on the Host page provides the host with access to all files across all portals within this DNN application.

File Manager

Folders: Standard - File System Recursive

Files:

Folders	File Name	Date	Size
Portal Root	aspnet.gif	8/20/2007 1:34:07 PM	A 2,965
	background.gif	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 2,965
	benefactor.gif	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 3,101
	book_dummies1.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 2,942
	book_packt1.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 2,247
	book_wrox1.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 2,830
	book_wrox2.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 2,362
	crystaltech.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 6,520
	cutesoft.jpg	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 6,450
	easycgi.gif	8/20/2007 4:44:26 PM	A 5,665

Page 1 of 3

Portal Root\ Used: 9.93MB of [unlimited] Items Per Page: 10

Folder Security Settings

Permissions:

Filter By Group: < Global Roles >

View Folder Write to Folder

Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Monthly Online Magazine	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username:





The File Manager module

Working with Folders


Navigating to and Selecting Folders

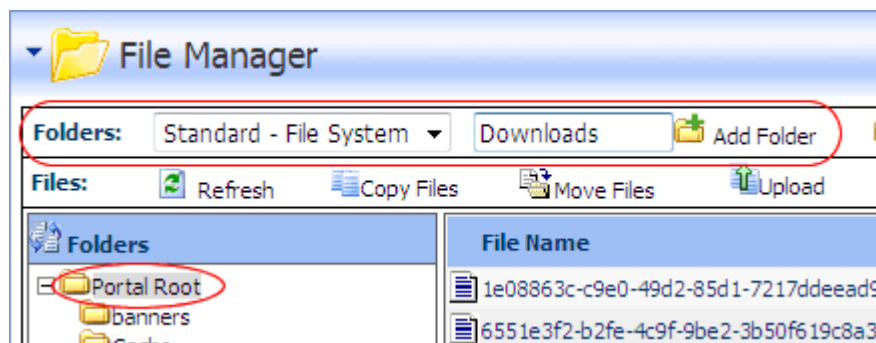
Navigating to a folder within the File Manager:

- To view a folder: Click the **Maximize**  button beside a folder to view its child folders.
- To hide a folder: Click the **Minimize**  button beside a folder to close it and hide its child folders.
- To select a folder: Click on a folder name to select it. The selected folder name is highlight with a gray background color. The related files are then displayed in the Files List to the right.

Adding a New Folder

How to add folders to the File Manager module. The default security settings for new folders authorizes all users to view the files within the folder. This is required to enable unauthenticated users to view files on the site such as images displayed in modules or files added for download. Only Administrators are authorized to write (upload) files to the folder. "Assigning Folder Permission to a User" and "Assigning Folder Permissions by Role" for more details.

1. Navigate to and select the parent folder for the new folder. E.g. PortalRoot
2. On the **Folders Toolbar**, perform the following:
 - a. At **Folders**, select one of the following options from the drop-down box:
 - **Standard - File System**
 - **Secure - File System**
 - **Secure - Database**: Stores file content as a byte array in the database.
 - b. Enter a name for the new folder into the text box located on the Folders Toolbar. E.g. Documents
 - c. Click the  **Add Folder** button. The new folder is displayed in the Folders list.



Adding a new folder to the File Manager

Assigning Folder Permissions by Role

How to assign access to view folders and upload to folders of the File Manager. Administrators can assign folder permissions to one or more security roles.

Here's a description of the two types of permissions available:

- **View Folder:** This enables users within the permitted roles to view the files within this folder. If View Folder permissions are not provided users cannot view these files. E.g. If an image is displayed in the Media module only users who belong to role permitted to View Folder will be able to see the image.
- **Write to Folder:** This enables users within the permitted roles to upload and delete files using the Link Control on modules such as the Links module.

How to assign permissions:

1. Navigate to and select the folder to have permissions assigned. The name of the selected folder is displayed in the Folders Information Bar.
2. Go to the **Folder Security Settings** section. The current permission settings are displayed.
3. **OPTIONAL.** At **Permissions**, select **< All Roles >** from the Filter By Group drop-down box (if displayed) to view all available roles.
4. In the **View Folder** column, check the check box beside each role to be granted permission to view files.
5. In the **Write to Folder** column, check the check box beside each role to be granted permission to manage files.
6. Click the Update link.

Folder Security Settings

Permissions: Filter By Group: **< All Roles >**

	View Folder	Write to Folder
Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Monthly Online Magazine	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: [Add](#)

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Assigning folder permissions to one or more roles

Assigning Folder Permission to a User

How to assign access to view folders and upload to folders of the File Manager module. Administrators can assign folder permissions to one or more users.

Here's a description of the two types of permissions available:

- **View Folder:** This enables users within the permitted roles to view the files within this folder. If View Folder permissions are not provided users cannot view these files. E.g. If an image is displayed in the Media module only users who belong to role permitted to View Folder will be able to see the image.
- **Write to Folder:** This enables users within the permitted roles to upload and delete files using the Link Control on modules such as the Links module.

How to assign permissions:

1. Navigate to and select the folder to have permissions assigned. The name of the selected folder is displayed in the Folders Information Bar.
2. Go to the **Folder Security Settings** section. The current permission settings are displayed.
3. At **Permissions**, enter the username of the user into the Username text box.
4. Click the Add link. This adds the user's name to the Permission role list.
5. In the **View Folder** column, check the check box beside the user to grant them permission to view files.
6. In the **Write to Folder** column, check the check box beside the user to grant them permission to write to the folder.
7. Repeat Step 4-6 for to assign folder permission to additional users.
8. Click the Update link.

Folder Security Settings

Permissions: Filter By Group: < All Roles >

	View Folder	Write to Folder
Accounts	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Administrators	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
All Users	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Marketing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Monthly Online Magazine	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Daisy Duckworth	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

View Folder Write to Folder

Username: [Add](#)

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

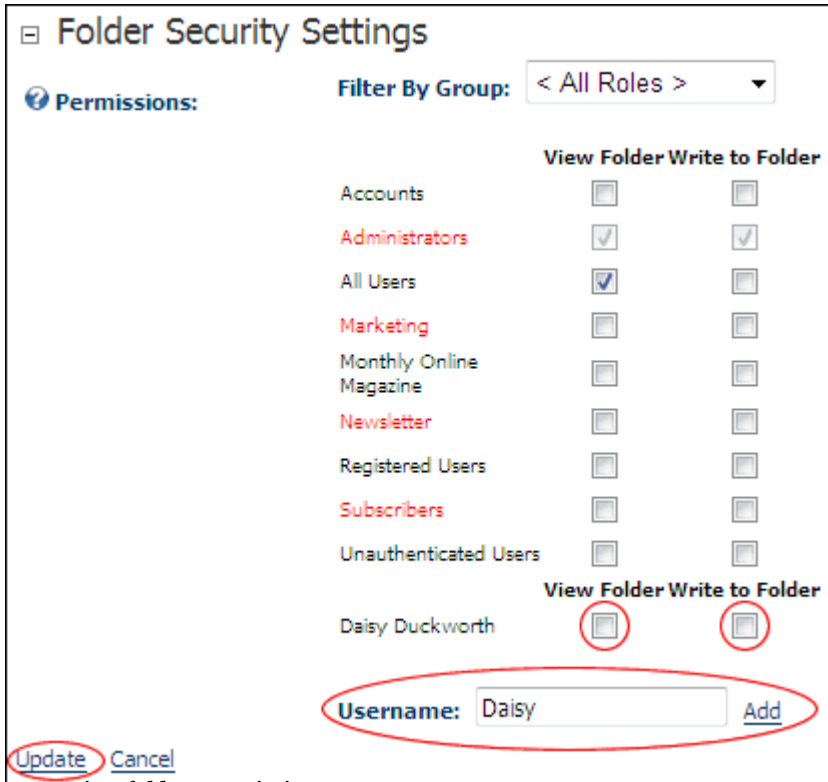
Assigning folder permissions to a user

Removing Folder Permissions

How to remove permission to view files within a folder and/or to write to a folder of the File Manager module.

1. Navigate to and select the folder to have permissions assigned. The name of the selected folder is displayed in the Folders Information Bar.
2. Go to the **Folder Security Settings** section. The current permission settings are displayed.
3. **OPTIONAL.** At **Permissions**, select **< All Roles >** at the **Filter By Group** drop-down box (if displayed) to display all of the roles.
4. To remove folder permission perform the following:
 - a. In the **View Folder** column, uncheck the check box beside any role or user to remove their permissions.
 - b. In the **Write to Folder** column, uncheck the check box beside any role or user to remove their permissions.
6. Click the Update link.

*Tip: If **View Folder** permissions are removed those users cannot view these files. E.g. If an image is displayed in the Media module only users who belong to role permitted to View Folder will be able to see the image.*




Removing folder permissions

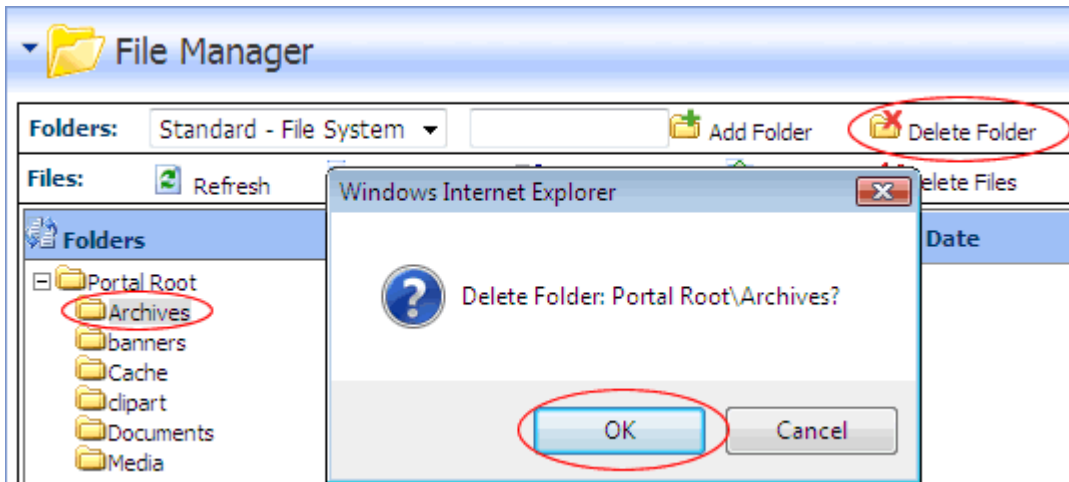
Deleting a Folder

How to permanently delete empty folders from the File Manager.

Tip: A folder cannot be deleted if it has any child folders, or if it contains any files.

Tip: To keep files within the folder to be deleted you can move them to another folder, however you cannot assign a different parent to a folder.

1. Navigate to and select the folder to be deleted.
2. Click on the Folder Name to select it for deletion. E.g. Subfolder
3. Click the  **Delete Folder** button. A dialog box asking "Delete Folder: [Folder Location:Folder Name]?" is displayed.
4. Click the **OK** button to confirm deletion.



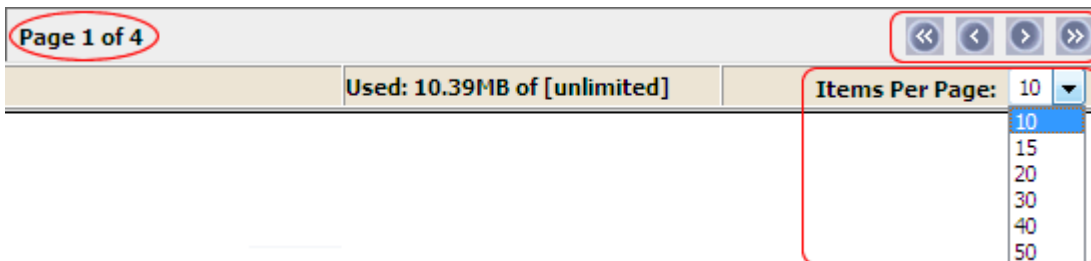
Deleting a folder from the File Manager

Working with Files

Navigating Files in the File Manager

By default the File Manager displays the first ten (10) files within the selected folder inside the Files Window. When there is more than ten (10) files, the following options are displayed enabling you to navigate to the additional files as well as change the default number of files displayed.

- **Page 1 or 4:** If there is more than one page of files associated with the selected folder, the number of pages and the page number of the current page will be displayed along with the Items Per Page tool.
- **Items Per Page:** Select a number to change the number of files displayed in the Files Window. This setting will default to ten (10) whenever the File Manager is refreshed.
- **Page Navigation:** The following navigation buttons are displayed.
 - **Move First** << button: Displays the first page of files.
 - **Move Previous** < button: Displays the previous page of files.
 - **Move Next** > button: Displays the next page of files.
 - **Move Last** >> button: Displays the last page of files.

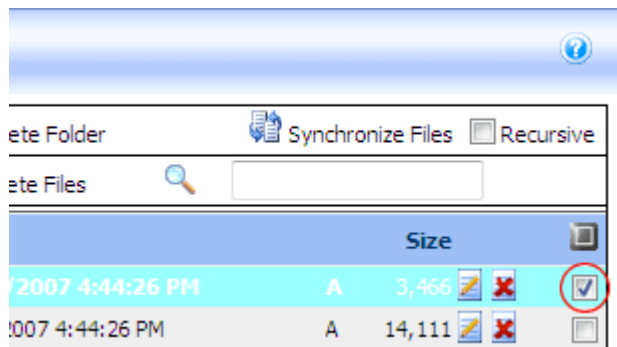


File Manager navigation

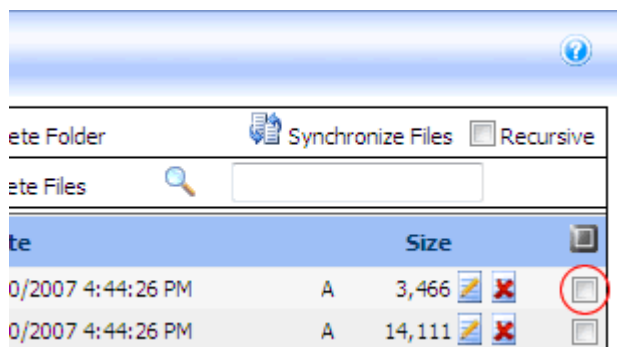
Selecting Files

How to select one or more files in the File Manager module. Selecting files enables you to perform file management tasks such as copying and moving files. Here are the options for selecting files:

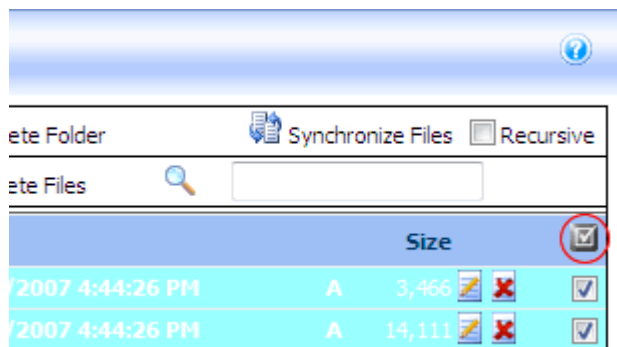
Select a File: Check the check box to the right of the file to select it.



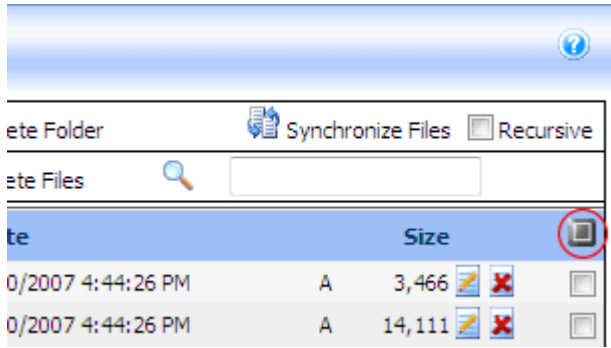
Deselect a File: Uncheck the check box to the right of the file to deselect it.



Select All Files: Check the check box in the title bar of the Files List Window to select all of the displayed files. Use the Items Per Page tool if you want to select more files at one time. This enables you to select up to 50 files at one time.





Deselect All Files: Uncheck the check box in the title bar of the Files List Window to deselect all of the displayed files.

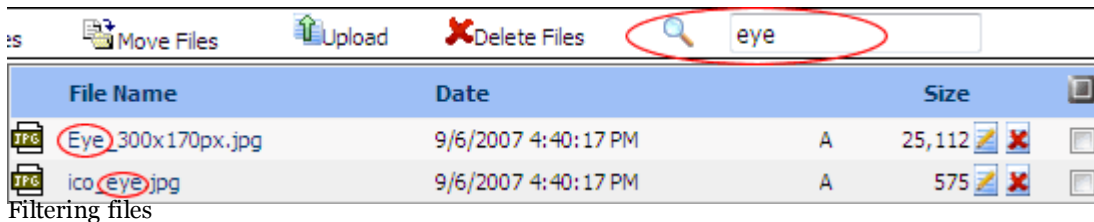


Filtering Files

How to filter the files using the File Manager module. This will display only files which match the entered criteria and which are in the selected folder. The filter is applied to both the file name and the file extension.

*Tip: You must remove the filter to view all files again. Do this by deleting the filter criteria from the text box and clicking the **Filter**  button.*

1. Navigate to and select the required folder.
2. On the **Files Toolbar**, enter the filter criteria into the text box.
3. Click the **Filter**  button. All files containing the filter criteria are displayed in the Files Window.
4. **OPTIONAL.** Navigate to and select other folders to see the filter applied to those folders.



Reordering Files

How to reorder all files within a folder of the File Manager module.

Files can be reordered by file name, date or size.

1. In the Title Bar of the File List Window, click on title you want to reorder files by. I.e. File Name, Date or Size.

File Name	Date	Size	
BeachJog_100x56px.gif	9/6/2007 4:40:17 PM	A 3,466	
BeachJog_300x170px.gif	9/6/2007 4:40:17 PM	A 14,111	
Boxer_300x170px.jpg	9/6/2007 4:40:17 PM	A 12,039	
clipart.zip	9/6/2007 4:40:17 PM	A 18,885	
Consultation_100x56px.gif	9/6/2007 4:40:17 PM	A 4,898	

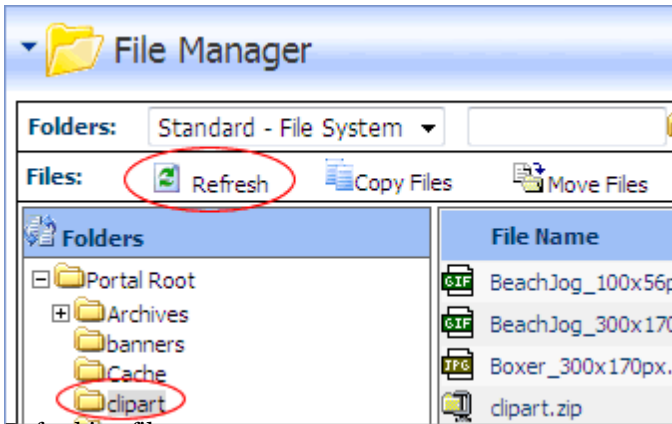
Reordering files

Refreshing Files

How to refresh the files within a selected folder on the File Manager module.

This refreshes the file information in the database.

1. Navigate to and select the required folder.
2. Click the **Refresh** button to refresh files.



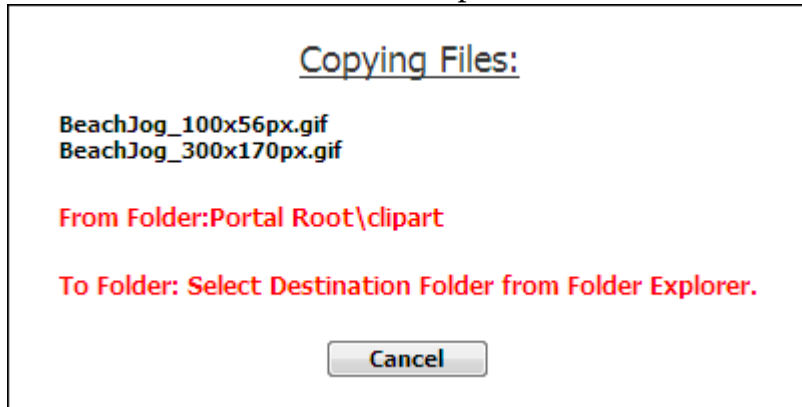
Refreshing files

Copying Files

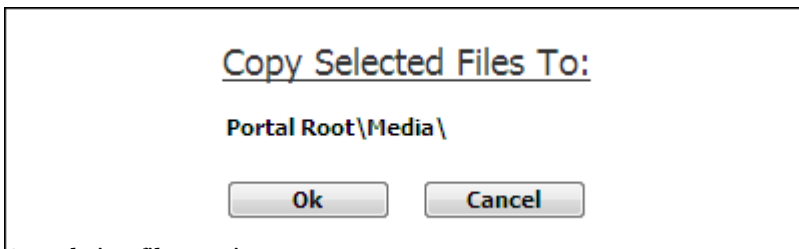
How to copy one or more files to another folder of the File Manager module.

1. Navigate to and select the folder where the files to be copied are located.
2. Check the check box beside each of the files to be copied or click the **Select All** button to select all of the files displayed in the Files Window.
3. Click the **Copy Files** button. A dialog box asking "Copy Checked Files?" is displayed.

4. Click the **Ok** button to confirm. A list of the copied files is displayed and you will be asked to Select Destination Folder from the Folder Explorer.



5. Navigate to and select the folder you want to copy the files to. The name of the selected folder is displayed. You are able to reselect a different folder at this step if required.
6. Click the **Ok** button.




Completing file copying

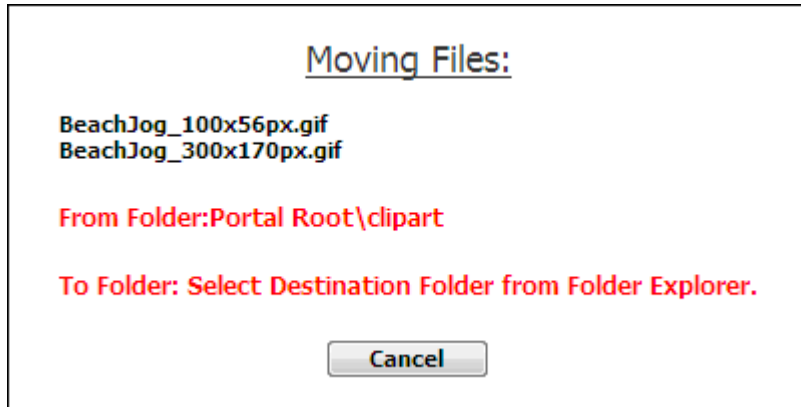
Moving Files

How to move selected files from one folder to another in the File Manager module.

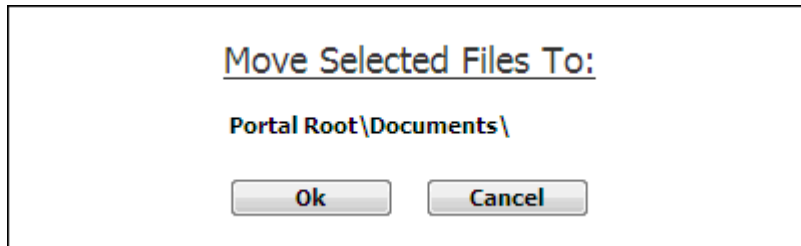
Tip: You must have permission to write to both folders to perform this task.

1. Navigate to and select the folder where the files are located.
2. Check the check box beside each of the files to be moved.
3. Click the  **Move Files** button. A dialog box asking "Move Checked Files?" is displayed.

4. Click the **OK** button. This displays a list of the selected files.



5. Navigate to and select the folder where the files will be moved to. The name of the selected folder is displayed. You are able to reselect a different folder at this step if required.





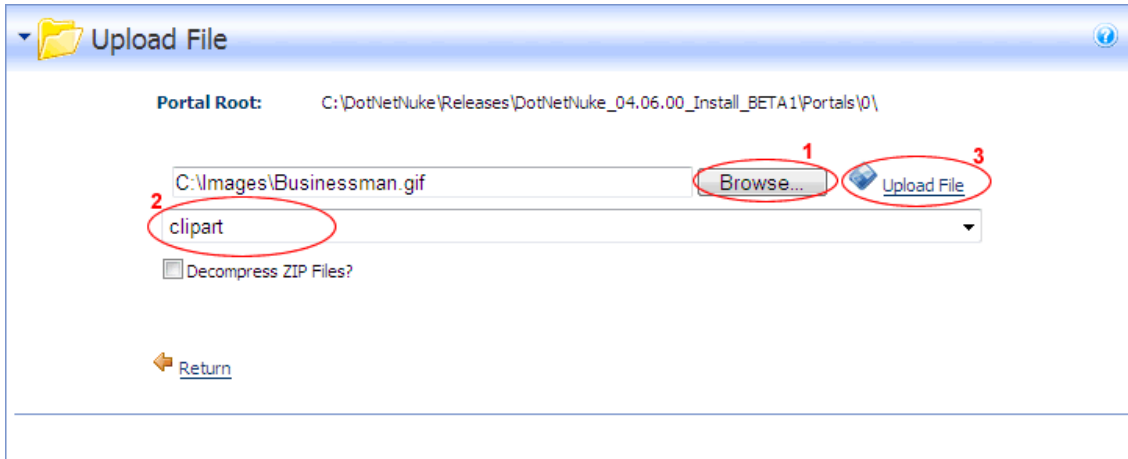
6. Click the **Ok** button.

Uploading a Single File

How to upload a single file to the File Manager module. These files can then be viewed on pages or linked to using various modules such as Links, Documents, HTML Pro and User Defined Table.

Tip: An Administrator must grant you access to upload images to one or more folders. "Assigning Folder Permissions by Role" or "Assigning Folder Permission to a User"

1. Click the  **Upload** button.
2. Click the **Browse...** button and select a file.
3. At the drop-down box, select the folder which the file will be uploaded to. The default folder is the folder that was selected when you clicked the upload button. If there aren't any folders listed in the drop-down box this means the Administrator has not given you access to upload files.
4. Click the  Upload File link.



Uploading a single file

Related Topics:



- See "Uploading Multiple Files"

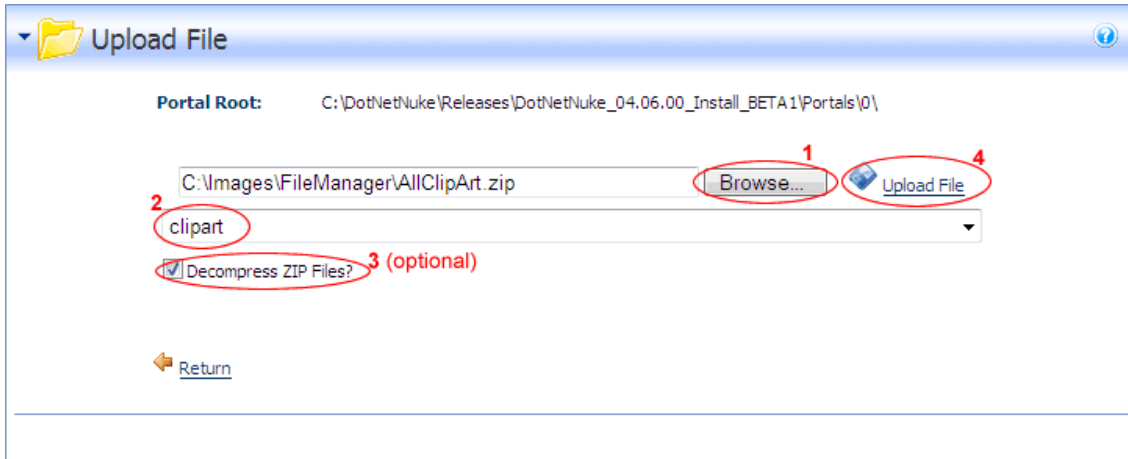
Uploading Multiple Files

How to upload multiple files to the site using the File Manager module.

Files must be zipped (compressed) on your computer before you begin this tutorial.

Tip: An Administrator must grant you access to upload images to one or more folders. "Assigning Folder Permissions by Role" or "Assigning Folder Permission to a User"


1. Click the  **Upload** button.
2. Click the **Browse...** button and select a file.
3. At the drop-down box, select the folder which the files will be uploaded to. The default folder is the folder that was selected when you clicked the upload button. If there aren't any folders listed in the drop-down box this means the Administrator has not given you access to upload files.
4. At **Decompress ZIP Files?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to decompress the files while uploading them. This adds both the ZIP file and all the individual files to the selected folder.
 - Uncheck the check box to upload the file as a zipped folder. You can unzip the files later if required.
6. Click the  Upload File link.





Uploading a zipped folder of files

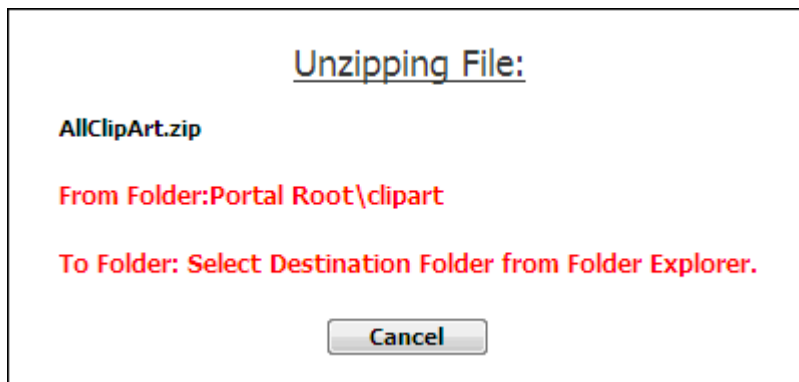
Unzipping Compressed Files

How to decompress a zipped folder of files in the File Manager module.

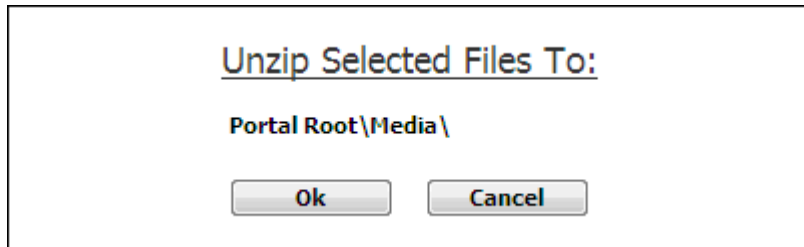
1. Navigate to and select the Folder containing the file to be unzipped.
2. Click the **Unzip File**  button beside the file to be decompressed. A dialog box asking "UnZip Files(s): [FileName]?" is displayed.

File Name	Date	Size	
 AllClipArt.zip	9/6/2007 7:05:42 PM	A 153,520	  

3. Click the **OK** button. A message asking you to select the destination folder from the Folder Explorer is displayed.




4. Navigate to and select the folder you want to unzip the files to. Note: To select the folder in which the zip file is located you will need to select the folder name twice.

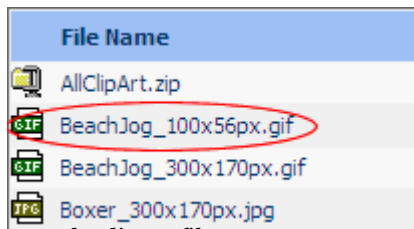


5. Click the **OK** button to confirm. The files are now unzipped in the selected folder. The original zip file is still located in the original folder.

Downloading a File

How to download a file from the File Manager.


1. Navigate to Admin > File Manager - OR - Click  Files in the Control Panel.
2. Navigate to and select the folder containing the file to be downloaded.
3. Click the linked file name.
4. Save the file to your computer.

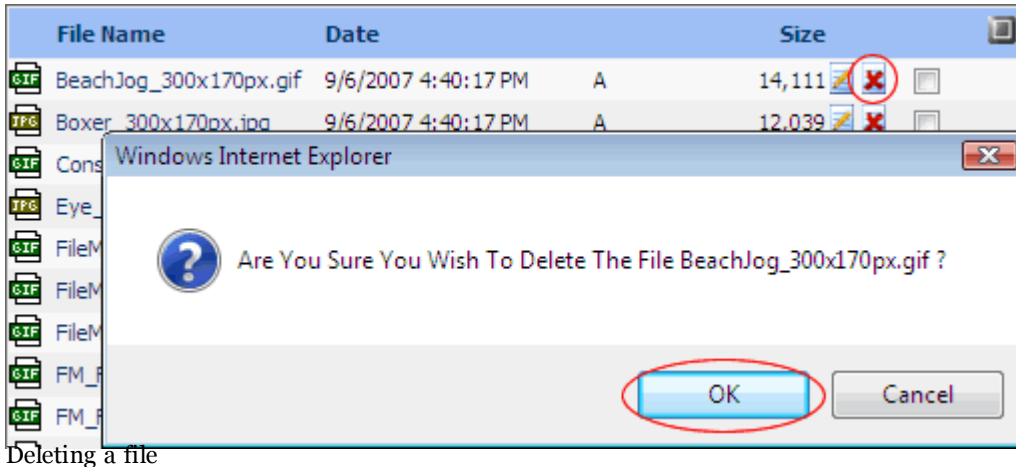


Downloading a file

Deleting a File

How to permanently delete one file from the File Manager module.

1. Navigate to and select the folder containing the file to be deleted.
2. Click the **Delete File**  button beside the file to be deleted. A dialog box asking "Are You Sure You Wish to Delete The File [FileName]?" is displayed.
3. Click **OK** to confirm deletion.

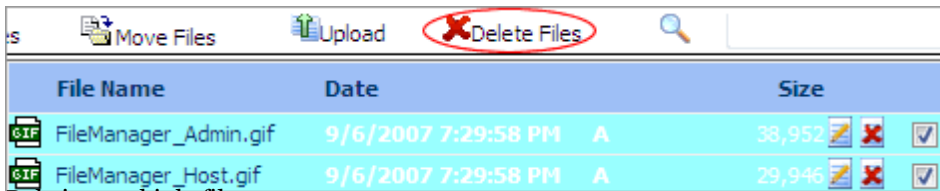


Deleting a file

Deleting Multiple Files

How to permanently delete multiple files from the File Manager module.

1. Navigate to and select the folder containing the files to be deleted.
2. Check the check box beside each of the files to be deleted - OR - Click the **Select All** button to select all of the files currently displayed in the File List Window. "Selecting Files " for more options.
3. Click the **Delete Files** button. This displays a list of the files selected for deletion.
4. Click the **Ok** button to confirm deletion.



Deleting multiple files

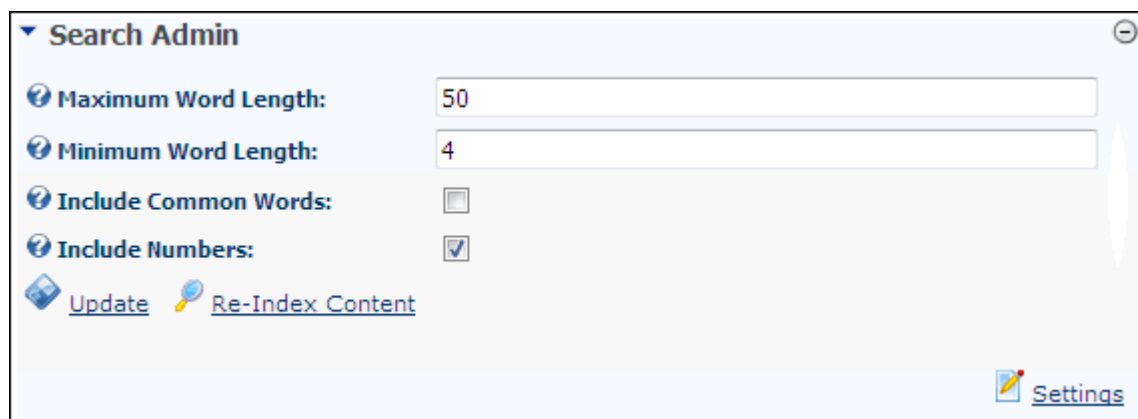
Adding Search Capabilities To Your Site

About the Search Admin Module

The Search Admin module enables authorized users to specify the settings associated with DNN's search capability which will be applied to this site.

Optional Settings:

- Maximum and minimum word length when searching
- Whether to include common words and numbers
- Ability to re-index the search catalog (the content which is searched) if there has been significant changes since the last indexing



The Search Admin module

Re-Indexing Searched Content

How to re-index the search content for maximum efficiency and to ensure all new content is included in searches made on this site using the Search Admin module.

1. Click the [Re-Index Content](#) link to re-index the search content for maximum efficiency.

Host Tip: The Host can use the Scheduler module (Host > Schedule) to configure the site to automatically re-index searchable content on a regular basis. The default configuration re-indexes content every 30 minutes.

Search Admin

Maximum Word Length: 20

Minimum Word Length: 3

Include Common Words:

Include Numbers:

[Update](#) [Re-Index Content](#)

Re-indexing searchable content

Including Common Words in Searches

How to set searches made on this site to include common words such as 'the' using the Search Admin module.

1. At **Include Common Words**, check the check box to search for common words.
2. Click the [Update](#) link.

Search Admin

Maximum Word Length: 20

Minimum Word Length: 3

Include Common Words:

Include Numbers:

[Update](#) [Re-Index Content](#)

Including common words in site searches

Including Numbers in Searches

How to set searches made on this site to include numbers using the Site Admin module.

1. At **Include Numbers**, check the check box to include numbers in searches.
2. Click the [Update](#) link.

Search Admin

Maximum Word Length: 20

Minimum Word Length: 3

Include Common Words:


Include Numbers:

[Update](#) [Re-Index Content](#)

Including numbers in searches

Setting the Maximum Word Length for Searches

How to set the default maximum word length for searches on this site using the Search Admin module.

1. In the **Maximum Word Length** text box, enter the maximum length word to search for as a numeric value. E.g. 20
2. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Search Admin

Maximum Word Length: 20

Minimum Word Length: 3

Include Common Words:


Include Numbers:

[Update](#) [Re-Index Content](#)

Setting the maximum word length for searches

Setting Minimum Word Length for Searches

How to set the default minimum word length for searches on this site using the Search Admin module.

1. In the **Minimum Word Length** text box, enter the minimum length word to search for as a numeric value. E.g. 3
2. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Search Admin

Maximum Word Length: 20

Minimum Word Length: 3

Include Common Words:

Include Numbers:

Re-Index Content

Setting the minimum word length for searches

Submitting Your Site To Search Engines

About the Sitemap Module

The Sitemap module enables authorized users (any user authorized to view the module), to configure a sitemap which can be submitted to one or more Search Engines for improved search optimization.

Sitemap provider for DotNetNuke allows any DotNetNuke module to participate into the Google/Yahoo!/Bing Sitemap generation for your site. Sitemap files generated by DotNetNuke Sitemap provider are fully compliant with protocol specification published at: <http://www.sitemaps.org/protocol.php>

Sitemap 🔍 ⌵

Sitemap URL: <http://ecozaany.com/SiteMap.aspx>

	Name	Description	Override Priority	Priority	Enabled
Edit	coreSitemapProvider		<input type="checkbox"/>	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Base Page Urls Settings

Modify the basic settings that apply to general DotNetNuke pages.

Use page level based priorities?

Minimum Priority for pages:

Include Hidden Pages?

Refresh Page Priorities

General Sitemap Settings

Configure the settings that apply to all URLs included in the Sitemap.

Exclude urls with a priority lower than:

Days to cache Sitemap for **Clear Cache**

Site Submission

In this section you can submit your site to different search engines.

Search Engine: **Submit**

Verification:

Create

Save Sitemap Configuration

The Sitemap Module

Configuring the Sitemap Settings

How to configure the search engine settings and priorities using the Sitemap module.

1. Navigate to Admin > Search Engine Sitemap - OR - Go to a Sitemap module.
2. At **Sitemap URL**, here you can view the URL of your Sitemap as well as the Sitemap providers which are enabled. E.g. <http://ecozaany.com/SiteMap.aspx>
3. **OPTIONAL.** Go to the Base Page URL's Settings section. Here you can modify the basic settings that apply to general DotNetNuke pages.

- a. At **Use page level based priorities?**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to set the priority for each page based on the hierarchical level of the page. Top level (parent) pages will have a value of 1, second level (first level child pages) 0.9, third level 0.8, (second level child pages), etc. This setting will not change the value stored in the actual page but it will use the computed value when required.
 - Uncheck the check box if you don't wish to use page level based priorities. Skip to step 3c.
- b. In the **Minimum Priority for pages** text box, if **Use page level based priorities?** is checked, this field allows you set the lowest priority that will be used on low level pages. You must provide a valid number between 0.0 and 1.0.
- c. At **Include Hidden Pages?** select from these options:
 - Check the check box to include hidden pages (those not visible in the menu) in the Sitemap.
 - Uncheck the check box to exclude hidden pages from the Sitemap. This is the default setting.
- d. Click the [Refresh Sitemap Priorities](#) link.

☐ **Base Page Urls Settings**

Modify the basic settings that apply to general DotNetNuke pages.

- ☑ Use page level based priorities?
- ☑ Minimum Priority for pages:
- ☑ Include Hidden Pages?
- 🔄 Refresh Page Priorities

4. **OPTIONAL.** Go to the **General Sitemap Settings** section. Here you can configure the settings that apply to all URL's included in the Sitemap.
 - a. In the **Exclude URL's with a priority lower than** text box, enter a number between 0.0 and 1.0 This option can be used to remove certain pages from the Sitemap. For example you can setup a priority of -1 for a page and enter -1 here to cause the page to be excluded from the generated Sitemap.
 - b. At **Days To Cache Sitemap For** select from these options:
 - To enable Sitemap caching: Select the number of days (from 1 Day to 7 Days) the Sitemap is cached for. This stops the Sitemap from being generated every time it is requested. This is especially necessary for big sites. If your site has more than 50.000 URL's the Sitemap will be cached with a default value of 1 day.
 - To disable Sitemap caching: Set this value to zero. I.e. 0
 - c. Click the [Save Sitemap Configuration](#) link.

General Sitemap Settings

Configure the settings that apply to all URLs included in the Sitemap.

Exclude urls with a priority lower than:

Days to cache Sitemap for **Clear Cache**

Site Submission

Save Sitemap Configuration



Configuring Sitemap Settings

Setting the Sitemap Providers

How to enable and configure one or more Sitemap providers to be used for your DNN site. DNN comes with a default provider named coreSitemapProvider. It also uses a provider model to allow third-party modules to participate in Sitemap generation.

Host Tip: Providers should be added at installation. See "Creating a Custom Installation Setup"

1. Navigate to Admin > Search Engine Sitemap - OR - Go to a Sitemap module.
2. Below the **Sitemap URL** field, you can view details Sitemap provider which is in use.
3. Click the Edit link beside the Sitemap Provider to be modified.
4. At **Enabled**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to enable this Sitemap provider. If only one provider is enabled, skip to Step 5.
 - i. **OPTIONAL.** At **Override Priority**, check the check box to override the priority given to pages crawled by a Sitemap provider - OR - Uncheck the check box to use the priority given to pages crawled by a Sitemap provider.
 - ii. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Priority** text box, enter a numerical value to set the priority for this provider.
 - Uncheck the check box to disable it.
5. Click the Update link.


Search Engine SiteMap


Sitemap URL: http://dotnetnukeprofessional050300.install/SiteMap.aspx

	Name	Description	Override Priority	Priority	Enabled
Edit	coreSitemapProvider		<input type="checkbox"/>	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Setting the Sitemap Providers

Submitting Site to Google

How to submit a site for indexing to the Google search engine using the Sitemap module. This tutorial assumes you have already configured the Sitemap settings. See "Configuring the Sitemap Settings"

1. Navigate to Admin > Search Engine Sitemap - OR - Go to a Sitemap module.
2. Go to the Site Submission section.
3. At **Search Engine**, select **Google**.
4. When signing up with Google Webmaster Tools you will need to Verify your site ownership. Choose the "Upload an HTML file" method from the Google Verification screen.
5. In the **Verification** text box, enter the filename displayed. I.e. google53c0cef435b2b81e.html
6. Click the Create link.
7. Return to Google and select the **Verify** button.
8. Return to the Sitemap module.
9. At **Search Engine**, click the Submit link.

Site Submission

In this section you can submit your site to different search engines.

Search Engine: Google ▼

Verification: google53c0cef435b2b81e.html

Submit

Create

Submitting Site to Google

Submitting Site to Yahoo! or Bing


How to submit a site for indexing to either the Yahoo! or Bing search engine using the Sitemap module.


1. Navigate to Admin > Search Engine Sitemap - OR - Go to a Sitemap module.
2. Go to the Site Submission section.
3. At **Search Engine**, select either **Bing** or **Yahoo!**.

4. Click the Submit link.
5. Repeat Steps 3-4 to submit the site to the other search engine if desired.

Site Submission

In this section you can submit your site to different search engines.

 **Search Engine:** **Submit**

 **Verification:** **Create**

Submitting Sitemap to Yahoo! or Bing

Managing Site Access Using Security Roles

About the Security Roles Module

The Security Roles module enables the creation and management of security roles and security role groups. It also permits authorized user to manage users within roles.

Name	Description	Fee Every Period	Trial Every Period	Public	Auto
Administrators	Portal Administration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Monthly Online Magazine	Join this free service to receive our online magazine each month including monthly prize draw, discount coupons and more	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	Subscribe to our monthly newsletter on what's new in wholistic medicine and our latest classes.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	A public role for portal subscriptions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The Security Roles Module

About Security Roles in DNN

Default Security Roles

The Security Roles module has three (3) default Security Roles: Administrators, Registered Users and Subscribers.

- **Administrators:** Members of this role have full access to manage this site. This includes access to add, delete and edit all pages and modules on the site. Members of this role also have access to the Admin pages, which enable users to access all of the Site Administration modules which other users can be authorized to access as well as the additional Pages, Solutions Explorer, What's New, Pages and Site Settings pages. This role cannot be deleted or modified.
- **Registered Users:** Everyone who is a registered user of this site is a member of this role. Members of this role can manage their User Profile and may be granted rights to view pages and modules which are only displayed to logged in users. Registered user accounts can be set as either Authorized or Unauthorized. If an account is Unauthorized, then the user cannot access pages/modules which are restricted to this role. This role cannot be deleted or modified.
- **Subscribers:** All Registered Users are automatically added to this role upon registration. (i.e. this role is set as Auto Assignment) Authenticated users can unsubscribe or re-subscribe to this role under

Membership Services on the My Profile module. The Administrator can choose to delete this role, or change its settings as required. This role cannot be deleted.

Security Role Groups

The following terms are used throughout the DNN application. They refer to groups of users as well as their status.

- **All Users:** All Users refers to all site visitors regardless of whether they are logged in or registered on the site. This term is used on page and module setting pages to enable them to be set as accessible to all users. This term is not used on the Security Roles module.
- **Authenticated Users:** An authenticated user is a registered user who is logged into the site.
- **Unauthenticated Users:** An unauthenticated user is a site visitor who isn't logged into the site. This term is used on page settings and module setting pages, but not on the Security Roles module. A typical application for this user group would be to set a page or module as viewable to Unauthenticated Users, but not to All Users. The when a users logs into the site the page or module would no longer be displayed. This could be used for information about joining the site which isn't relevant to users who are already registered.
- **Module Deployer:** A Module Deployer is any person or role who has been granted permission to add one or more types of modules to site pages. This term is used on the Extensions module.

About Security Role Settings

Security Roles can be configured in a number of ways to change the way users can access roles. The following options are available.

- **Public Role:** Roles set as public enable all registered users to be able to subscribe or unsubscribe to the role. Public Roles are managed by authenticated users under Membership Services on the My Profile module.
- **Private Role:** When a role is not set as public, it is a private role. Only Administrators have access to manage user access to these roles, unless the role includes an RSVP Code.
- **RSVP Code:** When a role includes an RSVP code, users can subscribe to the role by entering the code into a text box under Manage Services on their profile. This provides a quick way to subscribe and also enables subscriptions to be limited to those with the code if the role is set as Private.
- **RSVP Link:** The RSVP link setting automatically adds a user to that role when they go to the RSVP link. This provides a very easy way of subscribing to a role.
- **Auto Assignment:** All registered users are automatically added to these roles upon registration. If the role is also set as Public, users can unsubscribe and unsubscribe to it. If the role is set as Private, only Administrators can manage user access.

Adding a Security Role (Basic Settings)

How to add a basic security role to a site using the Security Roles module.

1. Select **+ Add New Role** from the module menu.
2. In the **Basic Settings** section complete the following fields:
 - a. In the **Role Name** text box, enter a name for the Security Role.
 - b. In the **Description** text box, enter a brief description of the Security Role.
 - c. **OPTIONAL.** At **Role Group**, select a group for this role if desired.
 - d. At **Public Role?**, select one of the following options:
 - Check the check box if all users are able to view details of this role and subscribe to this role. Users can subscribe to or unsubscribe from these roles when they manage their profile.
 - Uncheck the check box if the role is Private. Only Administrators can add a user to a private role unless it has an RSVP Code or RSVP Link (see below) which has been supplied to the user.
 - e. At **Auto Assignment?**, choose from the following options:
 - Check the check box if users are automatically assigned to this role.
 - Uncheck the check box if users must be manually added to the role.
4. Click the Update link.

Edit Security Roles

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this role.

Role Name: Marketing

Description: Members of staff within the Marketing department.

Role Group: Staff

Public Role?:

Auto Assignment?:

Advanced Settings

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)



Adding a security role - basic settings

Creating a Membership Service

How to create a Membership Service using the Security Roles module. A Membership Service is a security role which is set as Public. These roles are displayed to users when they manage their account under the Manage Services link on the Manage Profile page. For here users can view details of the available membership services and elect to subscribe to or unsubscribe to them. A trial period, trial fee, service period, and service fee can also be set for membership services. See "Adding a Security Role with a Fee"


1. Select **+ Add New Role** from the module menu.
2. In the **Basic Settings** section complete the following fields:
3. In the **Role Name** text box, enter a name for the role.
4. In the **Description** text box, enter a brief description of the role.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Role Group**, select a role group for this role if required.
6. At **Public Role?**, check the check box to set this role as a Membership Service.


7. **OPTIONAL.** At **Auto Assignment**, select from the following options:
- Check the check box to assign all users to this role. This includes both existing and new users.
 - Uncheck the check box if users must subscribe to the role.
8. Click the Update link. The new role is now displayed as a member's service on the My Profile module.


 **Edit Security Roles** 


Basic Settings


In this section, you can set up the basic settings for this role.

 **Role Name:**

 **Description:**

 **Role Group**

 **Public Role?**

 **Auto Assignment?**

Advanced Settings

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Create a member service by checking Public Role

Manage Profile

[Manage User Credentials](#)
[Manage Password](#)
[Manage Profile](#)
[Manage Services](#)

This section allows you to manage your subscriptions on the site. You can subscribe to some Services by entering an RSVP Code. If you have been given a special RSVP code you can subscribe to these Services by entering the code in the RSVP Code field and clicking the "Subscribe" button next to the field.

To manage the other subscription services provided by this site you can use the grid below. Some services may require payment. If this is the case you will be redirected to a payment site. When you return to this site, you can check back here to view your subscription.


[Subscribe](#)

	Name	Description	Service Fee	Trial Fee	Expiry Date
Unsubscribe	Subscribers	A public role for portal subscriptions	Free	Free	
Subscribe	Monthly Online Magazine	Join this free service to receive our online magazine each month including monthly prize draw, discount coupons and more	Free	Free	
Subscribe	Newsletter	Subscribe to our monthly newsletter on what's new in wholistic medicine and our latest classes.	Free	Free	

Member Services display on the Manage Profile page

Editing a Security Role

How to edit the settings and details of a security role using the Security Roles module.

1. If the required role is not displayed, at **Filter By Role Group** select the [Role Group Name] associated with the role, or select **< All Roles >**.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the role to be edited.
3. Edit the settings as required.
4. Click the Update link.

Security Roles

Filter By Role Group: < Global Roles >

Name	Description	Fee Every Period	Trial Every Period	Public	Auto
Administrators	Portal Administration			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Monthly Online Magazine	Join this free service to receive our online magazine each month including monthly prize draw, discount coupons and more			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	Subscribe to our monthly newsletter on what's new in wholistic medicine and our latest classes.			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	Registered Users			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	A public role for portal subscriptions			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

+ Add New Role Group + Add New Role User Settings

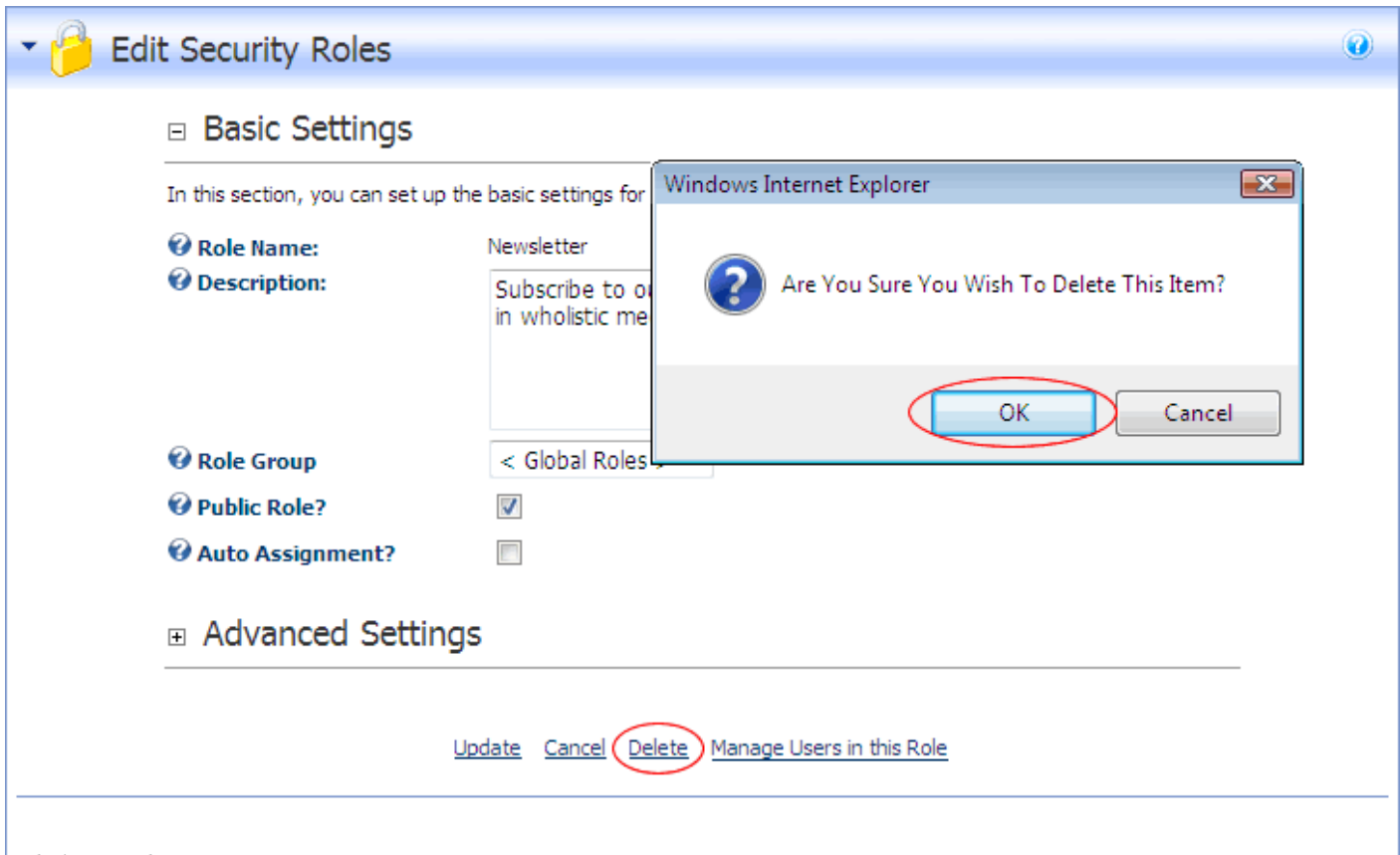
Editing a role

Deleting a Security Role

How to permanently delete a security role from the Security Roles module. This will also delete the information of which users were members of this role.

Tip: The Administrators and Registered Users roles cannot be deleted.

1. If the required role is not displayed, at **Filter By Role Group** select the [Role Group Name] associated with the role, or select < **All Roles** >.
2. Click the **Edit** button beside the role to be deleted.
3. Click the Delete link. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
4. Click the **OK** button.



Deleting a role

Adding a Role Group

How to add a role group to a Security Role using the Security Roles module. Role Groups enable you to group multiple roles together, making them easier to manage. E.g. The Role Group called Staff could have the following Security Roles associated with it: All Staff, Telemarketing, Marketing, Sales, Information Technology, etc. Roles can be filtered by Role Group, which is useful on sites with lots of roles. Once a role group has been added, one or more security roles can be added to the role group. "Adding a Security Role (Basic Settings)" and "Editing a Security Role".

1. Select **+ Add New Role Group** from the module menu.
2. In the **Group Name** text box, enter a name for the Security Role Group. E.g. Staff
3. In the **Description** text box, enter a brief description of the Security Role Group.
4. Click the Update link.

Edit Role Group

Group Name: Staff


Description: All staff members.

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)



Adding a Role Group

Editing a Role Group

How to edit a security role group using the Security Roles module.

1. At **Filter By Role Group**, select the role group from the drop-down box. This displays the Edit button.
2. Click the **Edit**  button. This opens the Edit Role Group page.
3. In the **Group Name** text box, edit the name of the role group.
4. In the **Description** text box, edit the role group description.
5. Click the [Update](#) link.

Security Roles

Filter By Role Group: Staff  


Name	Description	Fee	Every
+ Add New Role Group + Add New Role User Settings			

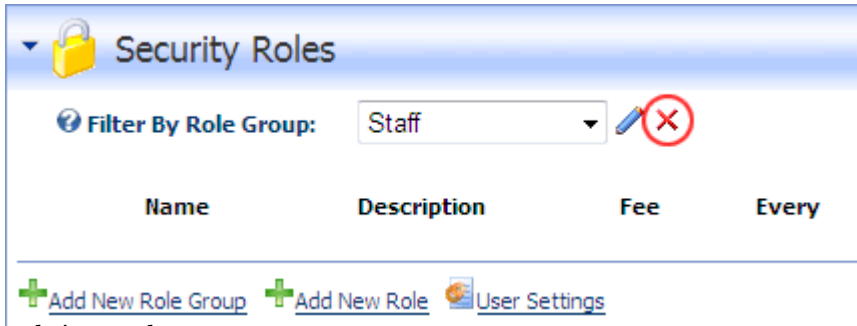
Editing a role group

Deleting a Role Group

How to delete a role group from the Security Roles module.

Tip: You must first remove all roles belonging to that role group. This can be achieved by editing each role associated with the Role Group and either changing the associated role group - OR - disassociating the role group from all roles. E.g. selecting < Global Roles >. If a role group has associated roles, the delete option will not be displayed.






1. At **Filter By Role Group**, select the role group from the drop-down box. This displays the Delete button.
2. Click the **Delete**  button. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
3. Click the **OK** button.



Deleting a role group

Editing a User's Security Role Access

How to modify the dates a user is able to access a security role using the Security Roles module.

1. Click the **Manage Users**  button beside the role.
2. At **User Name**, select the required user from the drop-down box - OR - Enter the user's User Name into the text box and click the Validate link. If the user name remains in the text box then it is 'valid'.
3. **OPTIONAL.** At **Effective Date**, click the  Calendar link and select the first date the user can access this role. Where no date is selected access will be immediately granted.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Expiry Date** click the  Calendar link and select the last date the user can access this role. Where no date is selected access will not expire.
5. At **Send Notification?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to send a notification email to the user informing them of their new role access. This is the default setting.
 - Uncheck the check box to add the user to the role without notifying them.
6. Click the  Update User Role link.
7. Click  Cancel to return.

Related Topics:








- See "Working with the Calendar"

Setting Module Permissions



How to set permissions to view and edit a module. Permission can be granted or denied for a role or for an individual user. Additional permission types are available on some modules such as the Events module.

Only available in DotNetNuke Professional Edition



Fine grain management of modules is available In Professional Edition by providing these additional settings: Delete, Import, Export, Manage Settings, and Full Control.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. Go to the **Module Settings - Basic Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Permissions** field and select from the following options.
4. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Username** text box, enter the username of a user to whom you wish to grant or deny module permissions, and then click the  **Add** link. Repeat for additional usernames.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Filter By Group**, select from the following options:
 - **< All Roles >**: Select to view all roles (both global and group roles) in one single list.
 - **< Global Roles >**: Select to view all roles which are not associated with a Role Group. This includes Administrators, All Users, Registered Users, and Unauthenticated Users.
 - **[Role Name]**: Select the name of a Role Group to view the roles within that group.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **Inherit View permissions from Page**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box if the users authorized to view this module are the same as the page it is located on. This displays the  Security Roles image in the View (or View Module) column indicating that the view security is 'locked'. Skip to step 7.
 - Uncheck the check box to set different permissions for viewing this module than set for the page it is located on. If you choose to uncheck this option, the check boxes at View Module will become available.
7. In the **View** (or **View Module**) column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot view the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions. Note: Users with Edit Module permissions in DNN Community Edition cannot view the module.
 -  **Permission Granted**: Users can view the module.
 -  **Permission Denied**: Users cannot view the module, unless Full Control is granted.
8. If you are using DotNetNuke Community Edition, Skip to Step 14.

9. In the **Edit Content** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot edit content unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can edit content.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot edit content, unless Full Control is granted.
10. In the **Delete** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot delete the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can delete the module.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot delete the module, unless Full Control is granted.
11. In the **Export** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot export the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted::** Users can export the module.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot export the module, unless Full Control is granted.
12. In the **Import** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot import the module unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.
 - **Permission Granted:** Users can import the module.
 - **Permission Denied:** Users cannot import the module, unless Full Control is granted.
13. In the **Manage Settings** column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:
 - **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users cannot manage module settings unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control permissions.

-  **Permission Granted:** Users can manage module settings.
-  **Permission Denied:** Users cannot manage module settings, unless Full Control is granted.

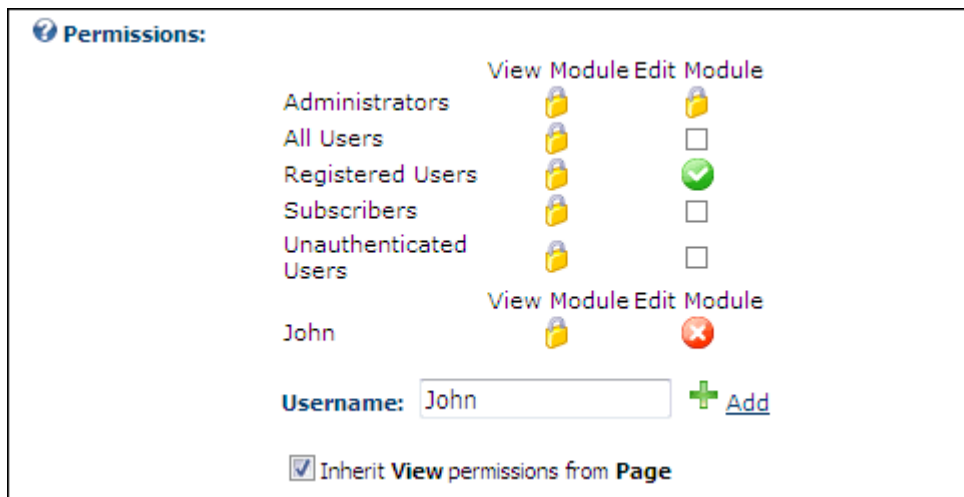
14. In the **Full Control** (or **Edit Module**) column, click on the check box beside a role/username repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed. The following options are available:

- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified.
-  **Permission Granted:** Users have full control to view the module, manage module content and manage module settings. Note: In DNN Community Edition, View Module permissions must also be granted.
-  **Permission Denied:** Users are denied full control.

15. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Tip: When setting Permissions, you can change the selection at Filter By Group and set permissions for any of the related roles before updating.

For Example: In the below screen capture, permission to view the module are inherited from the page and permission to edit the module has been granted to all Registered Users, apart from the user with the username John.










Setting module permissions

Setting Page Permissions



How to set page permissions by username and roles. This tutorial assumes you are on the Page Settings page of a page. Note: Access to view and set page permissions is only available to Administrators and users with Edit/Full Control permissions for the page. See "About Page Permissions"

IMPORTANT: In DNN Community edition, page management permissions consist of View and Edit permissions only. In DNN Professional, page management includes ten different permissions for page management which are the same for both users and roles. See "About Page Permissions"



1. Go to the Basic Settings - Page Details section.
2. Go to **Permissions**.
3. At **Username**, enter the username of a user that you want to grant or deny page viewing permissions to, and then click the  Add link.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Filter By Group**, select from the following options:
 - **< All Roles >**: Select to view all roles (both global role and roles groups) in one single list.
 - **< Global Roles >**: Select to view all roles which are not associated with a Role Group. E.g. Administrators, All Users, Registered Users, and Unauthenticated Users.
 - **[Role Group Name]**: Select the name of a Role Group to view the roles within that group.
5. In the **View** (or **View Page**) column, click on the check box beside a user/role repeatedly until the correct permission is displayed.
 -  **Permission Granted**:: Permission to view the page is granted.
 -  **Permission Denied**: Permission to view the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
 - **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users cannot view the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission, or are granted Full Control/Edit Page permissions.
6. If you are using DNN Community Edition, Skip to Step 15.
7. In the **Add** column, select from these options:
 -  **Permission Granted**: Users with Add permissions for a page can add child pages to that page. They cannot add any parent pages, and they cannot add child pages to any other pages.
 -  **Permission Denied**: Permission to add child pages is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
 - **Not Specified**: Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to add pages unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.
8. In the **Add Content** column, select from these options:
 -  **Permission Granted**: Users with Add Content permissions for a page can edit content on the page. These users can add, move and delete modules, as well as manage the content and settings for modules on the page.

-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to add and manage module content is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to view the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.



9. In the **Copy** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Copy permission can make a copy any page they can view. The new page can only be a child of the page they have copy permissions for.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to copy the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to copy the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.



10. In the **Delete** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Delete permissions can delete the page. If the page has child pages they are also deleted when the parent is deleted, however the user does not automatically have Delete permissions for these child pages.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to delete the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to delete the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.


11. In the **Export** column, select from these options:


-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Export permissions can export a page.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to export the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to export the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

12. In the **Import** column, select from these options:



-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Import permissions can import a page.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to import the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Users cannot import the page unless Full Control/Edit permission is granted.

13. In the **Manage Settings** column, select from these options:



-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Manage Settings permissions can change the page settings. Users can edit all of the settings on the Settings page, except for the permissions section which will not be visible.

-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to manage settings the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to manage settings for the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

14. In the **Navigate** column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Navigate permissions can view a page in the navigation menu. Users can have this permission without view permissions, in which case they will not be able to view any content on the page but the page will be visible in the menu.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to navigate to the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified. Users are unable to navigate to the page unless they belong to another role/username which has been granted permission.

15. In the **Full Control** (or **Edit Page**) column, select from these options:

-  **Permission Granted:** Users with Full Control permissions have full administrative rights for the page. This permission is the same as the Edit Page permission in the Community Edition. This role overrides other settings.
-  **Permission Denied:** Permission to delete the page is denied, unless Full Control is granted.
- **Not Specified:** Permissions are not specified.

16. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Permissions:

Filter By Group: < All Roles >

	View	Add	Add Content	Copy	Delete	Export	Import	Manage Settings	Navigate	Full Control
Administrators										
All Users		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Bloggers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Chat Members	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
EditUser	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Admin	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Forum Member	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Global Moderator	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Module Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>						<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Newsletter	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Page Editor	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Registered Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Subscribers	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unauthenticated Users	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Username: Add

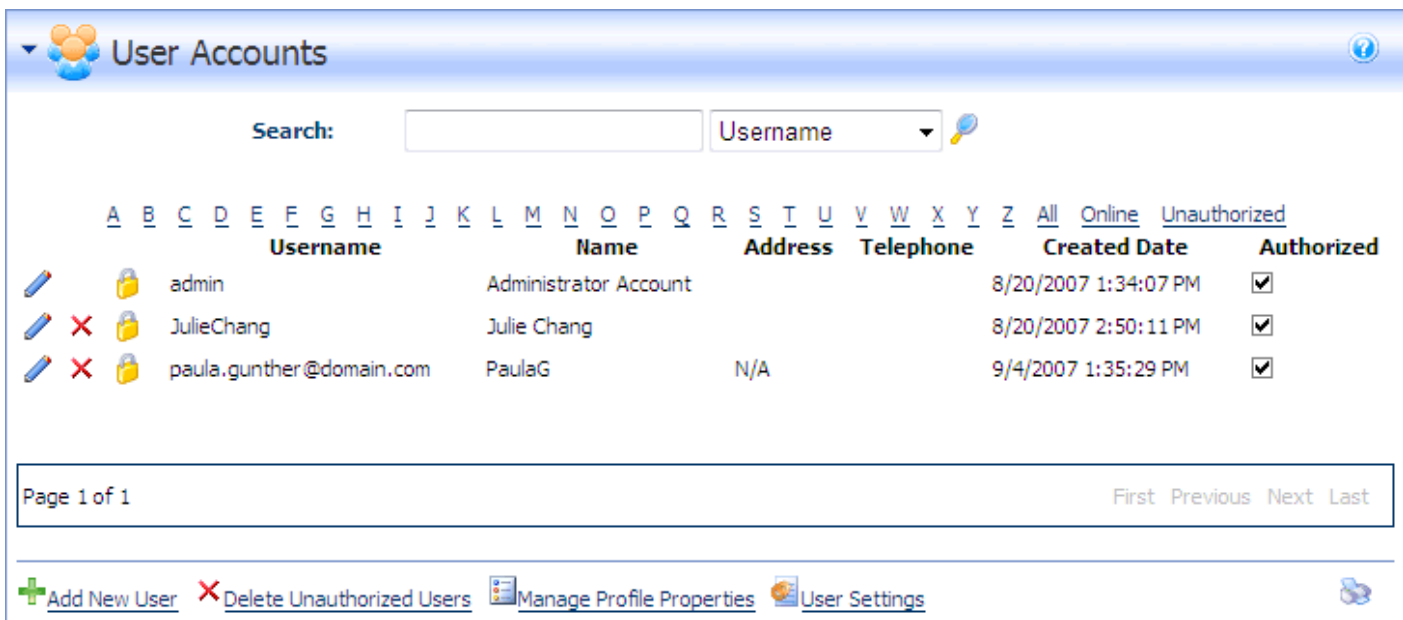
Copy Permissions to Descendants: [Copy Permissions](#)

Managing User Accounts

About the User Accounts Module

The User Accounts module enables the creation and management of registered user's account, as well as assignment of security roles. The fields displayed on the module can be set, as well as the way user accounts are handled. See the Manage Profile Properties and User Settings sections. New profile properties can be created. This Administration module can be deployed to any page by an authorized user. It is also displayed on the Admin > User Accounts page.

*Tip: The **User Accounts** module is different to the **User Account** module which enables Registered Users to manage their account details and membership services.*



User Accounts						
Search: <input type="text"/> Username						
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z All Online Unauthorized						
	Username	Name	Address	Telephone	Created Date	Authorized
	admin	Administrator Account			8/20/2007 1:34:07 PM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	JulieChang	Julie Chang			8/20/2007 2:50:11 PM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	paula.gunther@domain.com	PaulaG	N/A		9/4/2007 1:35:29 PM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>



Page 1 of 1 First Previous Next Last

[+ Add New User](#) [X Delete Unauthorized Users](#) [Manage Profile Properties](#) [User Settings](#)

The User Accounts module

Enabling/Disabling User Registration

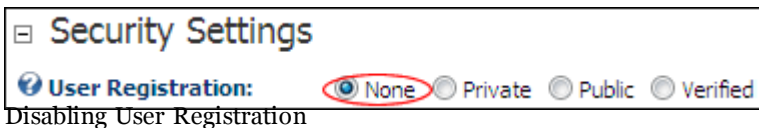
How to disable or enable site visitors to apply to become a registered user of the site. Enabling user registration displays the Register link on pages where the applied skin contains the Register skin object.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. **Maximize**  the **Advanced Settings** section.
4. Go to the **Security Settings** section.

5. At **User Registration**, select from the following:


- **None:** Registration is disabled.
- **Private:** Registering visitors can apply to become a site member. This creates a user account for them, however access to the Registered User role is restricted until the account is authorized (See "Authorizing An Unauthorized User"). Note: The Primary Administrator receives email notification of each new registration.
- **Public:** Registering visitors gain immediate access to the Registered User security role.
- **Verified:** Access to the Registered User role is conditional on the user verifying their account by entering a verification code the first time they log in to the site. The verification code is emailed to them in a welcome email when they register, thereby verifying the user's email address.

6. Click the  [Update](#) link.



Adding a User Account

How to add new users to the site using the User Accounts module.

Tip: Fields marked with a Required  icon are mandatory.

Tip: Usernames are unique; a new user cannot be added with an existing Username. When this occurs, the following message will be displayed below the registration fields upon clicking update: A User Already Exists For the Username Specified. Please Register Again Using A Different Username. You will be required to modify the User Name. Your portal may also be set to require unique passwords. Where this is the case you will receive a similar warning message.

1. Select **+ Add New User** from the User Accounts module menu - OR - Click the **+ Add New User** link. This opens the Add New User page.
2. In the **User Name** text box, enter a user name. The user name cannot be changed.
3. In the **First Name** text box, enter the person's first name.
4. In the **Last Name** text box, enter the person's last name.
5. In the **Display Name** text box, enter the name to be displayed to other site members. Note: This field may not be displayed. See "Editing the User Account Settings "
6. In the **Email Address** text box, enter a valid email address.

7. At **Authorize**, select from the following options:

- Check the check box if the user is authorized to access the portal. This will automatically provide access to the Registered User role and any roles set for Auto Assignment. This is the default setting.
- Uncheck the check box if the new user is not yet authorized to access the portal. The Administrator is required to authorize this account at a later date.

8. At **Notify**, select from the following options:

- Check the check box to send a notification email to the user's email address. This is the default setting.
- Uncheck the check box if you don't wish to send notification. If the account is not authorized, you may like to send the notification at a later time.

9. To create the user's password, select from these options:

- To generate a random password, check the **Random Password** check box.
- To create a password manually:
 - a. Uncheck the **Random Password** check box.
 - b. In the **Password** text box, enter a password.
 - c. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the same password.

10. Click the  Add New User link.

Add New User

Add New User

User Name:

First Name:

Last Name:

Display Name:

Email Address:

Authorize:

Notify:

Optionally enter a password for this user, or allow the system to generate a random password

Random Password:

Password:

Confirm Password:

[Add New User](#)

[Cancel](#)

Adding a new user

Editing a User Account

How to edit the details of a user's account using the User Accounts module.

Tip: The user name field cannot be edited.

1. Find the user to be edited using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit** button beside their record. This opens the Edit User Accounts - **Manage User Credentials** page.
3. Edit one or more fields as required. Editable fields are the user's first name, last name, display name and email address.
4. Click the Update link.

Tip: Additional options are also available on the Manage Profile page.

User Accounts

Search: Username

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [X](#) [Y](#) [Z](#) [All](#) [Online](#) [Unauthorized](#)

		Username	Name	Address	Telephone	Created Date	Authorized
			paula.gunther@domain.com	Paula Gunther	N/A	9/4/2007 1:35:29 PM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
			Prince	Prince Pauper	N/A	9/4/2007 1:58:11 PM	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Page 1 of 1 First Previous Next Last

[+ Add New User](#) [X Delete Unauthorized Users](#) [Manage Profile Properties](#) [User Settings](#)

Editing a user account


Unauthorizing a User Account

How to unauthorize a user account using the User Accounts module.

Unauthorized users are unable to login to the portal or thereby removing their access to all role restricted areas.

1. Find the user to be unauthorized using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit** button beside their record. This opens the Edit User Accounts - Manage User Credentials page.
3. Click the UnAuthorize User link.
4. Click the Update link.

Edit User Accounts

 User successfully Un-Authorized

[Manage User Credentials](#) [Manage Roles for this User](#) [Manage Password](#) [Manage Profile](#)

Edit User - Garry (Id: 11)

User Name:	Garry	Created Date:	9/4/2007 1:52 PM
First Name:	<input type="text" value="Garry"/>	Last Login Date:	9/4/2007 1:52 PM
Last Name:	<input type="text" value="Gazza"/>	Last Activity Date:	9/4/2007 3:44 PM
Display Name:	<input type="text" value="Garry Gazza"/>	Last Password Change:	9/4/2007 1:52 PM
Email Address:	<input type="text" value="garry@domain.com"/>	Last Lock-out Date:	

User Is On Line:
 Locked Out:
 Authorized:
 Update Password


UnAuthorize User [Force Password Change](#)

[Delete](#) [Update](#)

[Add New User](#) [Manage Profile Properties](#) [Cancel](#)

Unauthorizing a user account

User Log In

 You are not currently authorized to login to this site.

User Name:

Password:



Remember Login

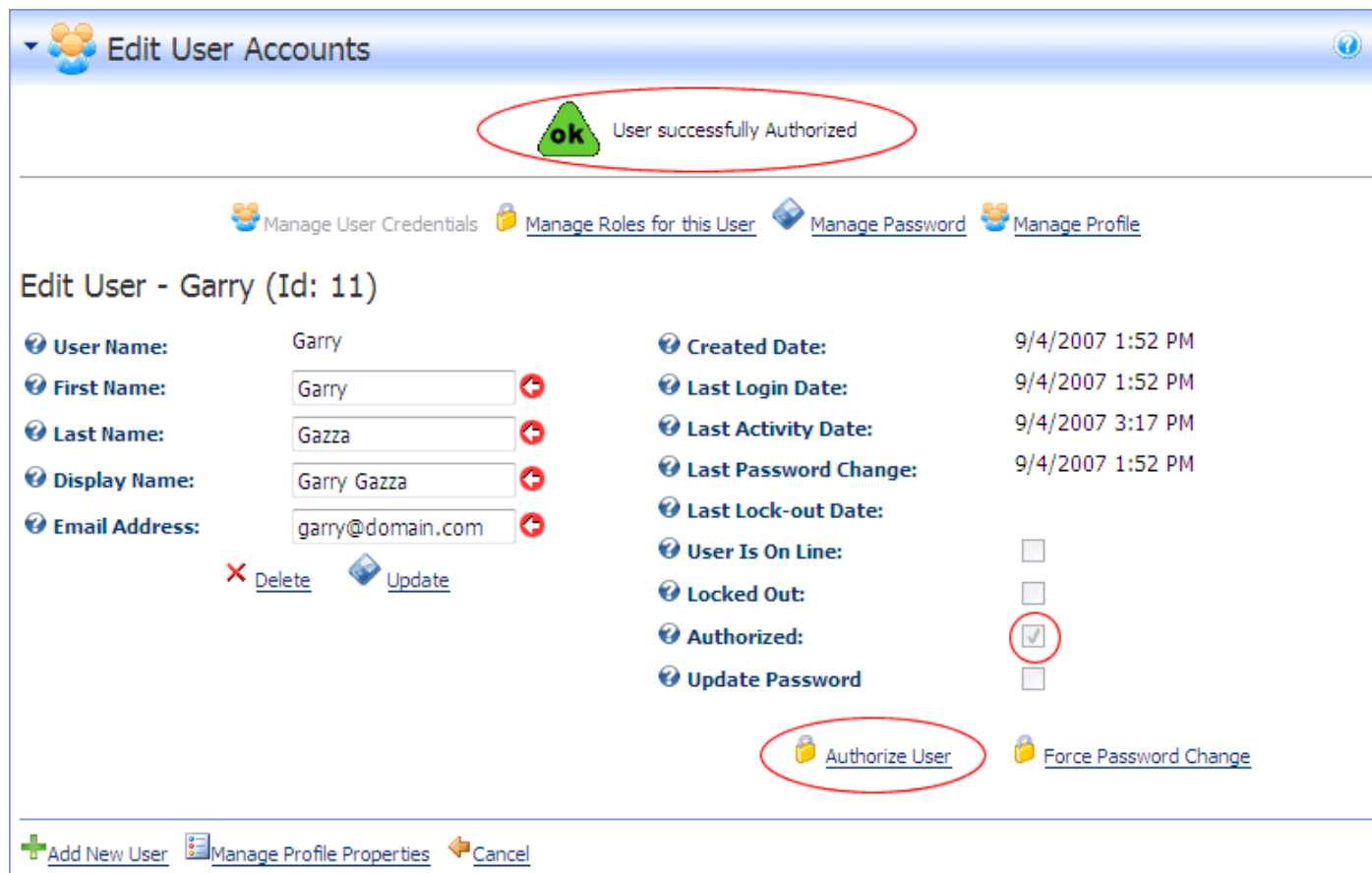
[Forgot Password ?](#)

The message displayed to unauthorized users attempting to login

Authorizing An Unauthorized User

How to authorize an unauthorized user account using the User Accounts module.

1. Click the Unauthorized link to display only unauthorized accounts and find the required account.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside their record.
3. Click the Authorize User link. This display a message reading " User successfully Authorized" at the top of the Edit User Accounts module. The Authorized check box is now checked.




The screenshot shows the 'Edit User Accounts' interface. At the top, a message box displays a green triangle with 'ok' and the text 'User successfully Authorized'. Below this, there are four tabs: 'Manage User Credentials', 'Manage Roles for this User', 'Manage Password', and 'Manage Profile'. The main section is titled 'Edit User - Garry (Id: 11)'. It contains two columns of user information. The left column includes fields for 'User Name', 'First Name', 'Last Name', 'Display Name', and 'Email Address', each with a red arrow icon. Below these fields are 'Delete' and 'Update' buttons. The right column includes fields for 'Created Date', 'Last Login Date', 'Last Activity Date', 'Last Password Change', 'Last Lock-out Date', 'User Is On Line', 'Locked Out', 'Authorized', and 'Update Password'. The 'Authorized' checkbox is checked and circled in red. Below the 'Authorized' field, the 'Authorize User' link is circled in red. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Add New User', 'Manage Profile Properties', and 'Cancel'.

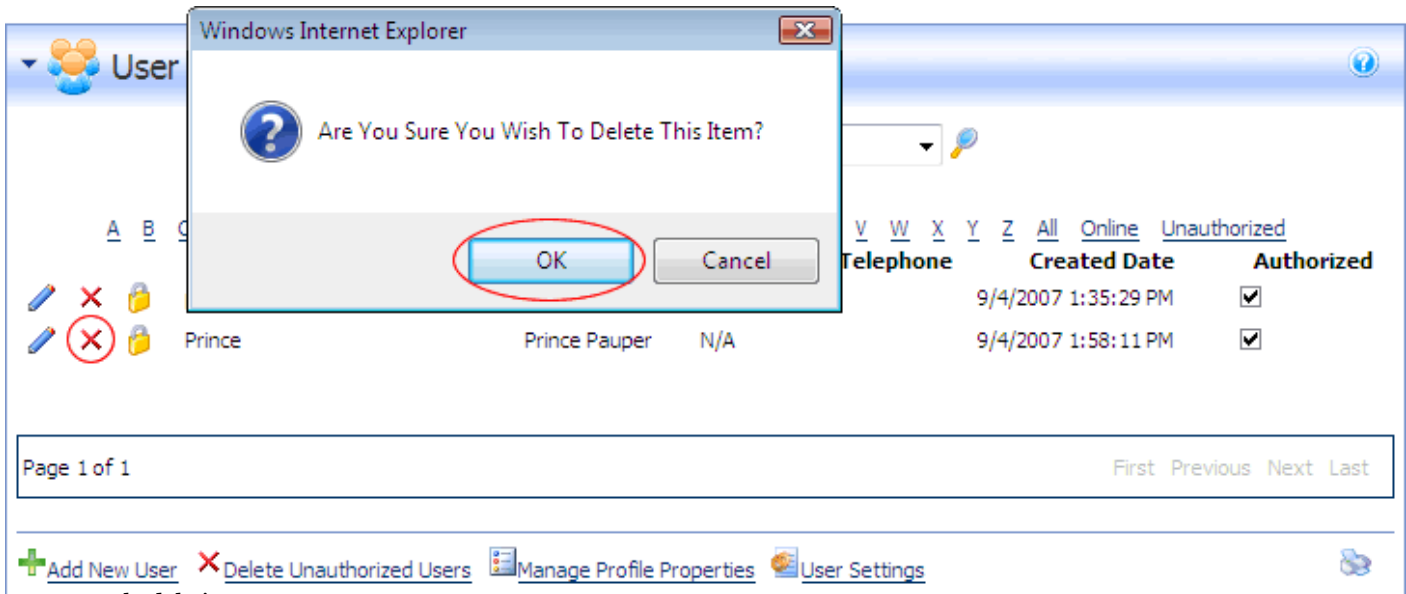
Authorizing an unauthorized user account

Deleting a User Account

How to permanently delete a user account from a site using the User Accounts module.

Tip: If you don't want to permanently delete the user, you can unauthorized their account instead. "Unauthorized a User Account"





1. Find the user to be deleted using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Delete**  button beside their record. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
3. Click **OK** to confirm deletion.




Permanently deleting a user account

Adding a User to a Security Role

How to add a user to a Security Role using the User Accounts module.

1. Find the required user by using a filter or by performing a search.
2. Click the **Manage Roles**  button beside the required user account.
3. At **Security Role**, select the role this user is to be added to.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Effective Date**, click the  Calendar link and select the first date the user can access this role. If no date is selected then access to this role is immediately granted.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Expiry Date**, click the  Calendar link and select the last date the user can access this role. If no date is selected then access to this role will not expire.
6. At **Send Notification?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to send a notification email to the user informing them of their new role access. This is the default setting.
 - Uncheck the check box to add the user to the role without notifying them.
7. Click the  Add User to Role link.


8. Repeat Steps 3-7 to add this user to additional roles.
9. Click the  [Cancel](#) link to return to the User Accounts page.

Edit User Accounts

[Manage User Credentials](#)
[Manage Roles for this User](#)
[Manage Password](#)
[Manage Profile](#)

Manage Roles for User: Donald

Security Role: Marketing
Effective Date: 9/5/2007 [Calendar](#)
Expiry Date: [Calendar](#) [Add Role](#)
 Send Notification?

Security Role	Effective Date	Expiry Date
Registered Users		
 Subscribers		

[Add New User](#)
[Manage Profile Properties](#)
[Cancel](#)


Adding a user to a security role



Related Topics:

- See "Working with the Calendar"

Editing a User's Security Role Access

How to edit a user's access to a security role using the User Accounts module.

1. Find the required user account by using a filter or by performing a search.
2. Click the **Manage Roles**  button beside the required user account. The details of the security roles this user currently belongs to are listed on this page.
3. At **Security Role**, select the role this user is to be added to.
4. **OPTIONAL.** At **Effective Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select the first date the user can access this role. Where no date is selected access will be immediately granted.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Expiry Date** click the [Calendar](#) link and select the last date the user can access this role. Where no date is selected access will not expire.




6. At **Send Notification?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to send a notification email to the user informing them of their new role access. This is the default setting.
 - Uncheck the check box to add the user to the role without notifying them.
7. Click the  [Update User Role](#) link.
8. Click  [Cancel](#) to return to the User Accounts page.

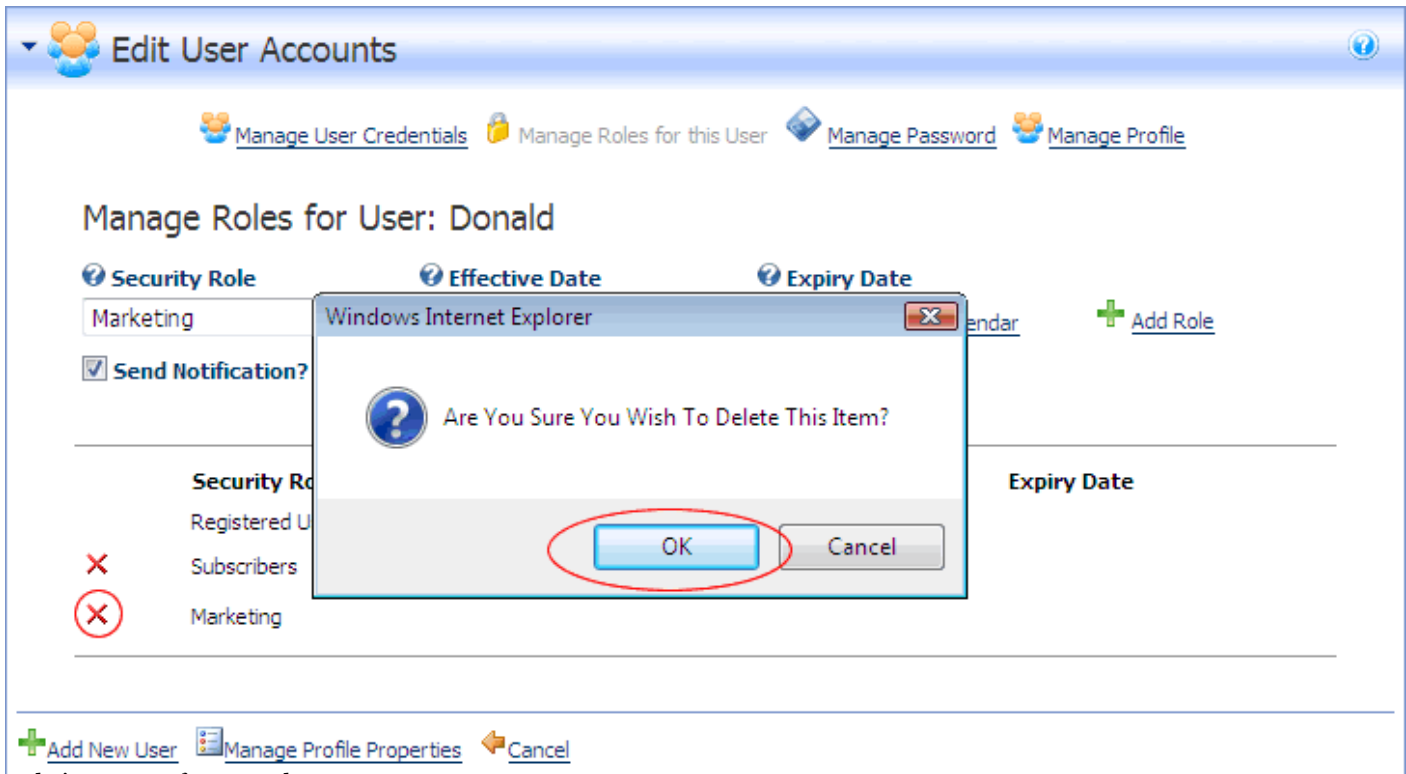
Related Topics:

- See "Working with the Calendar"

Deleting a User from a Security Role

How to delete a user from a security role using the User Accounts module.



1. Locate the required user using a filter or by performing a search.
2. Click the **Manage Roles**  button beside the required user account.
3. At **Send Notification?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to send a notification email to the user informing them that they have been removed from the role. This is the default setting.
 - Uncheck the check box to delete role access without sending a notification email.
4. Click the **Delete**  button beside the role the user is to be deleted from. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
5. Click **OK** to confirm deletion.
6. Repeat Steps 5-6 to delete this user from additional roles.
7. Click  [Cancel](#) to return to the User Accounts page.



Deleting a user from a role



Forcing a Password Change

How to force a user to change their password next time they login to the site using the User Accounts module.

1. Find the required user using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside their user account.
3. Click the  Force Password Change link. This removes the Force Password Change link and checks the **Update Password** check box. A message reading "User must update password on next login" is also displayed.

Managing a User Profile

How to manage all fields of a user's profile using the User Accounts module. Editable fields include address information, contact information, biography, time zone and preferred locale.

1. Find the user account to be edited using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside their user account.
3. Click the  Manage Profile link.

4. Edit any fields as required.
5. Click the Update link.

Edit User Accounts

[Manage User Credentials](#) [Manage Roles for this User](#) [Manage Password](#) [Manage Profile](#)

Edit Profile - Daisy (Id: 25)

Name

Prefix:

First Name:

Middle Name:

Last Name:

Suffix:

Address

Unit:

Street:

City:

Region:

Country:

Postal Code:

Contact Info

Telephone:

Cell/Mobile:

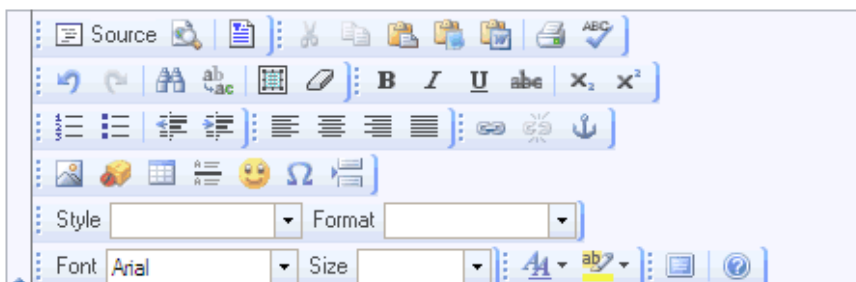
Fax:

Website:

IM:

Preferences

Biography:







Source



Hello my name is Daisy and I work as the head chef at the Trentham bistro.
My desserts are well known throughout the district - especially my apple pie.

Managing a User's Password

How to change or reset a user's password as well as view details regarding the user's current password settings using the User Accounts module.

1. Find the user to be edited using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required user account.
3. Click the  Manage Password link.
4. The following details regarding the user's password are displayed:
 - **Password Last Changed:** Displays the date the password was last changed.
 - **Password Expires:** Displays the date the password will expire, if any.
5. To change the password, perform the following in the Change Password section:
 - a. In the **New Password** text box, enter a new password.
 - b. In the **Confirm Password** text box, re-enter the new password.
7. To reset the password, perform the following in the Reset Password section:
 - a. Click the  Reset Password link. This generates a random password which is sent to the user's email address.
8. Click the  Cancel link to return to the User Accounts page.

Manage Password - Daisy (Id: 25)

-  **Password Last Changed:** Tuesday, September 04, 2007
-  **Password Expires:** Password does not Expire

Change Password

To change a password for this user enter the new password and confirm the entry by typing it again.

 **New Password:**

 **Confirm Password:**

 [Change Password](#)

Reset Password

You can reset the password for this user. The password will be randomly generated.

 [Reset Password](#)

Managing Vendors, Banners And Affiliates

About the Vendors Module

The Vendors module enables authorized users to create and manage vendor accounts, vendor banners and affiliate accounts. This Administration module can be deployed to any site page and provides users with view permissions can view Vendor details and users with edit permissions can manage vendor accounts, banners and affiliate accounts. DNN comes with two Vendor directories: Site Vendors and Host Vendors. Site Vendors are those managed using the Vendors module on any site page and using the Admin > Vendors page. Details of these Vendors are unique to the site and banners cannot be displayed on other sites. Host Vendors are those managed using the Vendors module on the Host > Vendors page. These banners are available to all portals within this DNN installation.

Banner Advertising: Banner can be images, text or script. Each banner record records a number of statistics including tracking of clicks, views and impressions. Multiple banners can be added to each vendor and can be displayed on pages using the Banners module. "About the Banners Module". They can also be displayed in a skin using the [BANNER] token which is controlled by Administrators (See "Enabling/Disabling Banner Advertising").

Affiliate Referrals: The Vendors module can be set up to track commission for banner advertising on other portals and the commissions received for banner advertisement on the portal.





The Vendors Module

Vendor Accounts

Adding a New Vendor

How to add a vendor account using the Vendors module. Note: Mandatory fields are indicated with an asterisk (*). Where a check box is displayed beside a field, uncheck the check box to make the field optional or check the check box to make the field mandatory.

1. Select  **Add New Vendor** from the module menu- OR -Click the  Add New Vendor link. This opens the Edit Vendors page.
2. In the **Vendor Details** section, complete all of these fields:
 - a. In the **Company*** text box, enter the company name of the vendor.
 - b. In the **First Name*** text box, enter the first name of the contact person for the vendor.
 - c. In the **Last Name*** text box, enter the last name of the contact person for the vendor.
 - d. In the **Email Address*** text box, enter the email address of the contact person listed above.
4. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Address Details** section, the following optional fields are available:
 - a. In the **Street** text box, enter the street part of the Vendor's address. E.g. 10 Main Road
 - b. In the **Unit #** text box, enter the unit number. E.g. Unit 6, or Suite 6, etc.
 - c. In the **City** text box, enter the Vendor's city. E.g. Melbourne
 - d. At **Country**, select the Vendor's country.
 - e. In the **Region** text box, enter the Region/State/Province of the Vendor - OR - select from the drop down list where available. (See Host > Lists for more details on creating regions for countries).
 - f. In the **Postal Code** text box, enter the Vendor's postal code. E.g. 31234
 - g. In the **Telephone** text box, enter the Vendor's telephone number. E.g. +61 3 9421 6555
 - h. In the **Cell** text box, enter the Vendor's cell (mobile) number. E.g. 0400 100 100
 - i. In the **Fax** text box, enter the Vendor's facsimile number. E.g. + 61 3 9421 6444
5. In the **Other Details** section, the following optional field is available:
 - a. In the **Website** text box, enter the Vendor's web site address. E.g. http://www.domain.com.
6. Click the Update link.

Tip: Field names for address details may vary depending on the language used on the site.

Tip: Once a new vendor is created the following additional settings will be available vendor logo, authorization, classifications, banner advertising, and affiliate referrals. To complete these additional fields, you must edit the vendor record.

Edit Vendors

Vendor Details

Company: DNNangel *

First Name: Lorraine *

Last Name: Young *

Email Address: lorraine.young@dnnangel.com *

Address Details

Street: 100 DotNetNuke Way

Unit #: 9

City: Melbourne

Country: Australia

Region: Victoria

Postal Code: 3000

Telephone: +61 3 9000 9000

Cell:

Fax: +61 3 9000 9111

Other Details


Website: www.dnnangel.com

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Adding a vendor account

Editing Vendor Account Details

How to edit the details of a vendor account in the Vendors module. If the vendor account has just been created a logo field, additional settings are available.

2. Locate the required vendor account by selecting a filter or doing a search.
3. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required vendor account. This opens the Edit Vendors page.
4. Edit any of the below fields as required.
5. In the **Vendor Details** section, edit any of the required fields.
6. In the **Address Details** section, edit/complete any the address fields.
7. In the **Other Details** section, edit/complete any of the following optional fields:

- a. In the **Website** text box, enter the Vendor's web site address. E.g. www.domain.com
 - b. At **Logo**, select or upload a logo for this vendor. See the Common Tools > Link Control section for more details.
 - c. At **Authorized**, check the check box if the vendor account is authorized- OR - Uncheck the check box if the vendor account is not authorized. This setting enables Administrator(s) to easily identify unauthorized vendors however it doesn't prevent current banners from displaying in the Banners module.
9. In the **Vendor Classification** section the follow optional fields are available but are not functional:
- a. In the **Classifications** box, define the classifications for the Vendor. This setting is not currently enabled.
 - b. In **Key Words** text box, enter key words for the Vendor.
10. Click the Update link.

Vendor Details

Company: DNNangel *

First Name: Lorraine *

Last Name: Young *

Email Address: lorraine.young@dnnangel.com *

Address Details

Street: 100 DotNetNuke Way

Unit #: 9

City: Melbourne

Country: Australia

Region: Victoria

Postal Code: 3000

Telephone: +61 3 9000 9000

Cell:

Fax: +61 3 9000 9111

Other Details

Website: www.dnnangel.com

File Location: Root

File Name: <None Specified>


[Upload New File](#)

Authorized:

Editing a vendor account

Deleting a Vendor Account

How to permanently delete a vendor account from the Vendors module.

1. Locate the required vendor account.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required vendor.
3. Click the Delete link. This displays a dialog box which reads "Are You Sure You Wish To Delete This Item?"
4. Click the **OK** button to confirm deletion.



The screenshot shows a web application window titled "Edit Vendors". The window contains several sections, each with a plus icon and a horizontal line below it: "Vendor Details", "Address Details", "Other Details", "Vendor Classification", "Banner Advertising", and "Affiliate Referrals". At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "Update", "Cancel", and "Delete". The "Delete" button is circled in red. Below the buttons, there is a timestamp: "Last Updated By Administrator Account On 9/5/2007 1:27:11 PM".

Deleting a vendor account

Vendor Banners

Adding a Text Banner to a Vendor

How to add a text banner to a vendor account using the Vendors module.

1. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required Vendor. This opens the Edit Vendor page.
2. **Maximize**  the **Banner Advertising** section. This displays all banners associated with this vendor.
3. Click the Add New Banner link. This opens the Edit Banner page.
4. Complete the following banner fields:
 - a. In the **Banner Name** text box, enter the text to be displayed at the top of this banner. This text is displayed as a link to the vendor's web site or to the URL, Page or File as set at the URL field below.
 - b. At **Banner Type**, select **Text**.
 - c. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Banner Group** text box, enter a name to group this banner with other banners. The banner group can then be entered into the banners module to set it to only display banners in this group.

- d. **OPTIONAL.** At **Image/Link**, select an image to be associated with this banner. The image isn't displayed on the banner, instead the image name is displayed as a link to view the image. You can also select URL to add a link to an image, file or page. The full URL will be displayed on the text banner. See "About the Link Control" section for more details on setting links.
 - e. In the **Text/Script** text box, enter the text of the banner. HTML formatting can be used.
6. The following additional settings are available:
- a. At URL select one of the following options:
 - Select **URL (A Link To An External Resource)** and leave the text box empty. This sets the link to the Vendor's web site.
 - Select **URL (A Link To An External Resource)** and enter the URL users go to when they click on the banner name. This URL also displays at the bottom of the banner.
 - Select **Page (A Page On Your Site)** and select the page users go to when they click on the banner name. The page number is also displayed at the bottom of the banner. E.g. 85
 - Select **File (A File On Your Site)** and select the file the user go to when they click on the banner name. The file ID number is also displayed at the bottom of the banner. E.g. FileID=148.
 - b. In the **CPM/Cost** text box, enter the cost per 1000 Impressions or the once off cost. E.g. For every 1000 impressions of the banner the vendor will charge the listed amount. Alternatively, the Vendor may charge a flat fee for banner advertising.
 - c. In the **Impressions** text box, enter the number of impressions the banner will display for.
 - d. At **Start Date**, click the Calendar link and select the first date the banner is displayed.
 - e. At **End Date**, click the Calendar link and select the last date the banner is displayed.
 - f. At **Criteria**, select one of the following options:
 - **And:** Banner only expires if both the Impressions and the End Date has been met. I.e. The banner has reached its number of clicks AND a banner has expired.
 - **Or:** Banner expires if either the Impressions or the End Date has been met. I.e. The banner has reached its number of clicks OR the banner has expired.
7. Click the Update link.

▼ Edit Banner

Banner Name:

Banner Type:

Banner Group:

Link Type:

URL (A Link To An External Resource)

File (A File On Your Site)

Image/Link: **File Location:**

File Name:

[Upload New File](#)

Width:

Height:

Text/Script:

Content Management in a Flash!

DotNetNuke is free, it's open
source

and it's great fun to use.

Get DNN today!

Link Type:

URL (A Link To An External Resource)

Page (A Page On Your Site)

File (A File On Your Site)

URL:

Location: (Enter The Address Of The Link)

[Select An Existing URL](#)

CPM/Cost:

Impressions:

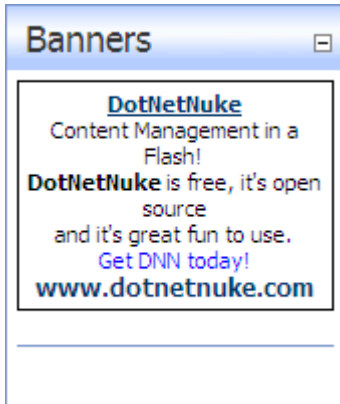
Start Date: [Calendar](#)

End Date: [Calendar](#)

Criteria: OR AND

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Adding a text banner





How this banner looks in the Banners module with a one pixel border

Related Topics:

- See "Working with the Calendar"

Adding an Image Banner to a Vendor

How to add an image banner to a vendor account using the Vendors module.

1. Locate the required vendor account by using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required Vendor. This opens the Edit Vendor page.
3. **Maximize**  the Banner Advertising section. This displays all banners associated with this vendor.
4. Click the Add New Banner link.
5. Complete the following banner fields:
 1. In the **Banner Name** text box, enter a name for this banner. If the Text/Script field below is left blank then the Banner Name is the alternate text for the banner.
 2. At **Banner Type**, select either **Banner**, **MicroButton**, **Button**, **Block**, or **Skyscraper**.
 3. **OPTIONAL**. In the **Banner Group** text box, enter a name to group this banner with other banners. The banner group can then be entered into the banners module to set it to only display banners in this group.
 4. At **Image/Link**, select the image for this banner. See "Setting a File Link".
 5. The following optional settings are also available:
 1. In the **Text/Script** text box, enter the text of the banner. This is the alternate text for this banner and is displayed when a user mouses over the image.
 2. **At URL** select one of the following options:

- Select **URL (A Link To An External Resource)** and leave the text box empty. This sets the link to the Vendors web site.
 - Select **URL (A Link To An External Resource)** and enter the URL user will be taken to when they click on the banner name. This URL is also displayed below the banner.
 - Select **Page (A Page On Your Site)** and select the page users go to when they click on this banner.
 - Select **File (A File On Your Site)** and select the file to be displayed when a user clicks on this banner.
3. In the **CPM/Cost** text box, enter the cost per 1000 Impressions or the once off cost. E.g. For every 1000 impressions of the banner the Vendor will charge the listed amount. Alternatively, the vendor may charge a flat fee for banner advertising.
 4. In the **Impressions** text box, enter the number of impressions the banner will display for. A impression is made each time a banner is displayed on the page.
 5. At **Start Date**, click the Calendar link and select the first date the banner will be displayed.
 6. At **End Date**, click the Calendar link and select the last date the banner will be displayed.
 7. At **Criteria**, select one of the following options:
 - **And:** Banner only expires if both the Impressions and the End Date has been met. I.e. The banner has reached its number of clicks AND a banner has expired.
 - **Or:** Banner expires if either the Impressions or the End Date has been met. I.e. The banner has reached its number of clicks OR the banner has expired.
7. Click the Update link.

▼ Edit Banner



Banner Name:

Banner Type:

Banner Group:

Link Type:

- URL (A Link To An External Resource)
- File (A File On Your Site)

Image/Link:

File Location:

File Name:

[Upload New File](#)

Width:

Height:

Text/Script:

Visit DNNangel.com to visit the blog of the DotNetNuke For Dummies author

Link Type:

- URL (A Link To An External Resource)
- Page (A Page On Your Site)
- File (A File On Your Site)

URL:

Select A Web Page From Your Site:

CPM/Cost:

Impressions:

Start Date:

[Calendar](#)

End Date:

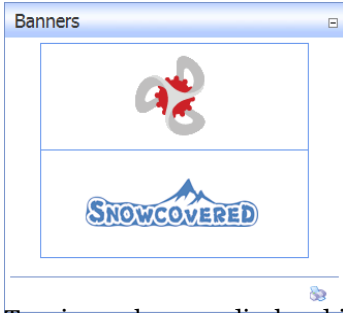
[Calendar](#)

Criteria:

- OR AND

[Update](#) [Cancel](#)

Adding an image banner






Two image banners displayed in the Banners module





Related Topics:

- See "Working with the Calendar"

Editing a Vendor Banner

How to edit the properties of a banner using the Vendors module.

1. Locate the required vendor account by selecting a filter or doing a search.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required vendor account. This opens the Edit Vendors page.
3. **Maximize**  the **Banner Advertising** section. This displays all banners associated with this vendor.
4. Click the **Edit**  button beside the banner to be edited.
5. Edit the required fields.
6. Click the Update link.



Banner Advertising									
Banner	Type	Group	Impressions	CPM	Views	Clicks	Start	End	
 DNNangel Dummies Book	MicroButton		0	0.00	91	1	9/5/2007		
 DotNetNuke	Text		0	0.00	22	2	9/5/2007		
 www.DNNangel.com	Text		0	0.00	56	2	9/5/2007		
 DNNangel	MicroButton		0	0.00	90	0	9/5/2007		

[Add New Banner](#)

Editing a vendor banner

Enabling/Disabling Banner Advertising




How to enable or disable site wide banner advertising. If this feature is enabled, a single banner is displayed on each site page where the skin object [Banner] is included in the page skin design. The banner displayed changes to a new banner each time a page is refreshed or revisited. Note: This feature only works for banners whose type is set as 'banner'.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings - Site Marketing** section.
4. At **Banners**, select from these options:
 - **None:** Select to disable banner advertising.
 - **Site:** Select to enable banner advertising for vendors maintained on this site under Admin > Vendors, or using a Vendors module which has been added to a page.
 - **Host:** Select to enable banner advertising for vendors maintained on this installation under Host > Vendors.
5. Click the  Update link.





Emailing Banner Status to Vendor

How to send a banner status report to the related vendor using the Vendors module. The report contains the following information: Banner Name, Banner Description, Image Name, Number of CPM/Cost, Number of Impressions, Start Date, End Date, Number of Views, and Number of Click Throughs.





1. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required Vendor. This opens the Edit Vendor page.
2. **Maximize**  the **Banner Advertising** section. This displays all banners associated with this vendor.
3. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required banner.
4. Click the Email Status to Vendor link at the base of the module. A success or failure message is displayed at top of the module letting you know if the email sent successfully.
5. Click the Cancel link to return to the Edit Vendor page.

Viewing the Clicks and Views for a Banner

How to view the number of times a banner has been viewed and clicked using the Vendors module.

1. Locate the required vendor account by using a filter or by searching.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required Vendor. This opens the Edit Vendor page.
3. **Maximize**  the **Banner Advertising** section. This displays all banners associated with this vendor including:

- **Views:** The number of time a banner has been clicked on.
- **Clicks:** The number of times a banner has been displayed on a page.

Banner Advertising									
Banner	Type	Group	Impressions	CPM	Views	Clicks	Start	End	
 DNNangel Dummies Book	MicroButton		0	0.00	91	1	9/5/2007		
 DotNetNuke	Text		0	0.00	22	2	9/5/2007		
 www.DNNangel.com	Text		0	0.00	56	2	9/5/2007		
 DNNangel	MicroButton		0	0.00	90	0	9/5/2007		

[Add New Banner](#)

Viewing banner views and clicks



Affiliate Accounts

Overview of Vendor Affiliates

One or more affiliate accounts can be created for Vendors in the Vendors module. These accounts are used for tracking advertising of this site on other web sites. DNN generates the link for other web sites to use, so that it can track each time a visitor clicks through to the portal, from an advertising site, so that the difficulty in collecting information for commissions to be paid can be easily managed.

Adding an Affiliate Referral Account

How to add affiliate referral account to a vendor in the Vendors module. This generate a link which affiliates can add to their web site. The number of clicks and acquisitions for the link is tracked within the Affiliate Referral module, permitting the tracking of commission owing to the vendor.

1. Locate the required vendor account by selecting a filter or by doing a search.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required vendor account. This opens the Edit Vendors page.
3. **Maximize**  the **Affiliate Referrals** section. This displays any affiliate referral accounts associated with this vendor.
4. Click the [Add New Affiliate](#) link.
5. **OPTIONAL.** At **Start Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select a start date.
6. **OPTIONAL.** At **End Date**, click the [Calendar](#) link and select an end date.
7. In the **Cost Per Click (CPC)** text box, enter the advertising charge. CPC is the commission paid to the vendor when a visitor is referred to your site.

8. In the **Cost Per Acquisition (CPA)** text box, enter the advertising charge. CPA is the commission paid to the vendor when a visitor becomes a member of your site.
9. Click the Update link.

▼ Edit Affiliate

* Start Date: 9/1/2007 [Calendar](#)

* End Date: 9/30/2007 [Calendar](#)

Cost Per Click (CPC): 0.01

Cost Per Acquisition (CPA): 1.00

* = Optional

[Update](#) [Cancel](#) [Send Notification](#)




Adding an affiliate account


Related Topics:

- See "Working with the Calendar"

Sending Notification of Affiliate Referral Account

How to send an affiliate report email to an affiliate using the Vendors module. The report provides details of the site they have been made an affiliate of and the URL link to be used.

1. Locate the required vendor account by selecting a filter or by doing a search.
2. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required vendor account. This opens the Edit Vendors page.
3. **Maximize**  the **Affiliate Referrals** section. This displays any affiliate referral accounts associated with this vendor.
4. Click the **Edit**  button beside the required record.
5. Click the Send Notification link.
6. Click the Cancel link to return to the Edit Vendors page.

▼ Edit Affiliate 

* Start Date: [Calendar](#)

* End Date: [Calendar](#)

Cost Per Click (CPC):

Cost Per Acquisition (CPA):

* = Optional

[Update](#) [Cancel](#) [Delete](#) [Send Notification](#)

Sending a notification email to an affiliate

Sending Newsletters To Site Members

About the Newsletters Module

The Newsletters module enables all users who are authorized to view the module to send bulk emails to all users belonging to one or more security roles and/or to one or more email addresses. The module sends the newsletter to each recipient separately to prevent recipients learning each other's details. Newsletters can be either plain text or HTML format. Files and images can be attached to the email and replacement [TOKENS] can be included. Once an email is sent, the Administrator will receive an email titled "Bulk Email Report for [Newsletter Subject]" containing the following details:

- The date and time when the bulk email operation commenced
- Number of Email Recipients
- Number of Email Messages
- The date and time when the bulk email operation was completed

Newsletters

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up required sender and recipients, as well as subject for your message.

Addressees

User Role(s):

Filter By Group: < Global Roles >

Administrators

EditUser

Newsletter

Page Editor

Registered Users

Subscribers

Additional Emails:

From:

Reply To:

Subject:

Message

You can use the Editor below to write your message.

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Source

B *I* U **abc** x_2 x^2 | | | | | | | | | |

| Style | Format

Font | Size | |

[Show custom editor options](#) | [Refresh Editor](#)

Advanced Settings

[Send Email](#) [Preview Email](#)



Sending a Basic Newsletter

How to send a newsletter without using replacement tokens or personalization using the Newsletters module.

1. Go to the **Basic Settings** section and complete these fields:
 - a. At **Addressees** complete one or both of these options:
 - i. At **User Role(s)**, check the check box beside each of the roles to receive the newsletter. Note that users in multiple roles will only receive one copy of the newsletter.
 - ii. In the **Additional Emails** text box, enter each of the email addresses to receive the newsletter separated by a semi-colon (;). E.g. JohnBlack@domain.com;JulieBlack@domain.com
 - b. **OPTIONAL.** In the **From** text box, enter/modify the email address to be displayed in the From field of this newsletter. If you are logged in to the site, the email address associated with your user account is displayed here by default.
 - c. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Reply To** text box, enter the reply to email address for the email.
 - d. In the **Subject** text box, enter a subject title for the email.
 - e. In the **Message** section, enter the body of the newsletter into the editor. (Select Basic Text Box to send a plain text email - OR - Select Rich Text Box to send an HTML email with formatting and images)
2. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview Email](#) link to preview the newsletter.
3. **OPTIONAL. Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section to set any of the following optional settings:
 - i. At **Attachment**, select the required attachment. See "Setting a File Link "
 - ii. At **Replace Tokens?**, uncheck the check box.
 - iii. At **No Duplicate Addresses**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to remove duplicate addresses entered into the Additional Emails field.
 - Uncheck the check box to send duplicates entered into this field. Note: This does not affect the User Role(s) field which will always remove duplicates.
 - iv. At **Priority**, select the priority of the email (High, Normal, Low) from the drop-down box. The default setting is Normal.
 - v. At **Send Method**, select **BCC: One Email To Blind Distribution List (Not Personalized)**.

vi. At **Send Action**, select from the following options:

- **Synchronous:** Emails are all sent before your page refreshes. This method is suitable for small mail outs of approximately 100 or less.
- **Asynchronous:** This starts a separate thread (user process) to send emails. This method is suitable for large mail outs of approximately 100 or more.

18. Click the Send Email link.

*Tip: A **Successful** or **Not Successful** message is displayed after you click the Send Email link. For Synchronous send action, the message doesn't display until after all emails have been sent. For Asynchronous send action, the message displays once the send action has successfully commenced.*

Newsletters

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up required sender and recipients, as well as subject for your message.

Addressees

User Role(s): Filter By Group: < Global Roles >

- Administrators
- Newsletter
- Registered Users
- Subscribers

Additional Emails: julie.smith@domain.com; wang.chung@domain.com.au

From: lorraine.young@domain.com

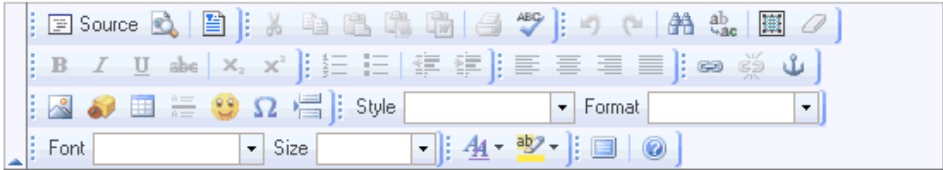
Reply To: campaigns@domain.com

Subject: Remedial Massage Centre - Newsletter No: 1

Message


You can use the Editor below to write your message.

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor



Welcome to the first edition of the Remedial Massage Centre newsletter.

This month we have a number of great new offers to whet your appetite. Including **20% off Remedial Massage for all out subscribers!**



[Click here for details of this and other special subscriber offers!](#)

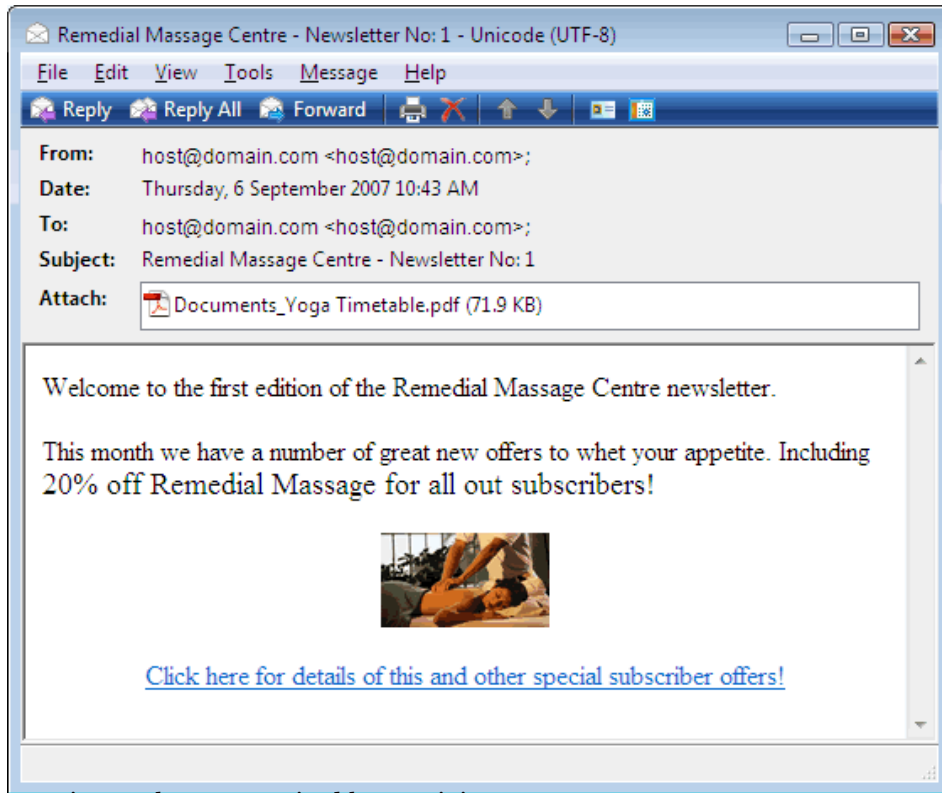
Show custom editor options | Refresh Editor

Advanced Settings

In this section, you can set up the advanced settings for your message.

Attachment: File Location: Root File Name: <None Specified> Upload New File

Sending a basic newsletter



A Basic Newsletter as received by a recipient

Sending a Newsletter with Tokens

How to send a newsletter that includes replacement tokens using the Newsletters module.

*Tip: If your message includes [TOKENS] you must check the **Replace Tokens?** check box and set the **Send Method** field to **TO: One Message Per Email Address (Personalized)**.*

1. Go to the **Basic Settings** section and complete the following fields:
 - a. At **Addressees** complete one or both of these options:
 - i. At **User Role(s)**, check the check box for each role to receive the newsletter. Note: Users in multiple roles only receive one copy of the newsletter.
 - ii. In the **Additional Emails** text box, enter each of the email addresses to receive the newsletter separated by a semi-colon (;). E.g. JohnBlack@domain.com;JulieBlack@domain.com

- b. **OPTIONAL.** In the **From** text box, enter/modify the email address to be displayed in the From field of this newsletter. If you are logged in to the site, the email address associated with your user account is displayed here by default.
 - c. **OPTIONAL.** In the **Reply To** text box, enter the reply to email address for the email.
 - d. In the **Subject** text box, enter a subject title for the email.
 - e. In the **Message** section, enter the body of the newsletter into the editor. (Select Basic Text Box to send a plain text email- OR - Select Rich Text Box to send an HTML email with formatting and images)
 - f. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview Email](#) link to preview the newsletter.
2. **Maximize** the **Advanced Settings** section to set any of the following optional settings:
 3. At **Attachment**, select the required attachment. See "Setting a File Link "
 4. At **Replace Tokens?**, check the check box.
 5. At **No Duplicate Addresses**, select from these options:
 - Check the check box to remove duplicate addresses entered into the Additional Emails field.
 - Uncheck the check box to send duplicates entered into this field. Note: This does not affect the User Role(s) field which always removes duplicates.
 6. At **Priority**, select the priority of the email (**High, Normal, Low**) from the drop-down box. Normal is the default setting.
 7. At **Send Method**, select **To: One Message Per Email Address (Personalized)**.
 8. At **Send Action**, select from the following options:
 - **Synchronous:** Emails are all sent before your page refreshes. This method is suitable for small mail outs of approximately 100 or less.
 - **Asynchronous:** This starts a separate thread (user process) to send emails. This method is suitable for large mail outs of approximately 100 or more.
18. Click the [Send Email](#) link.

*Tip: A **Successful** or **Not Successful** message is displayed after you click the [Send Email](#) link. For **Synchronous** send action, the message doesn't display until after all emails have been sent. For **Asynchronous** send action, the message displays once the send action has successfully commenced.*

Newsletters

Basic Settings

In this section, you can set up required sender and recipients, as well as subject for your message.

Addressees

User Role(s):

Filter By Group: < Global Roles >

- Administrators
- Newsletter
- Registered Users
- Subscribers

Additional Emails:

julie.smith@domain.com; wang.chung@domain.com.au

From:

lorraine.young@domain.com

Reply To:

campaigns@domain.com

Subject:

Remidial Massage Centre - Newsletter No: 1

Message

You can use the Editor below to write your message.

Basic Text Box Rich Text Editor

Source


B *I* U abc x₂ x² [List Icons] [Link Icon] [Image Icon]

Font: Arial Size: [Dropdown] [Color Picker] [Background Color Picker]

Dear [User:FirstName] [User:LastName],

Welcome to the first newsletter for the [Portal:PortalName]. What is our aim?
[Portal:Description]

This month we have a number of great new offers to whet your appetite. Including **20% off Remedial Massage for all out subscribers!**



[Click here for details of this and other special subscriber offers!](#)

[Show custom editor options](#) | [Refresh Editor](#)

Advanced Settings

In this section, you can set up the advanced settings for your message.

Attachment:

File Location:

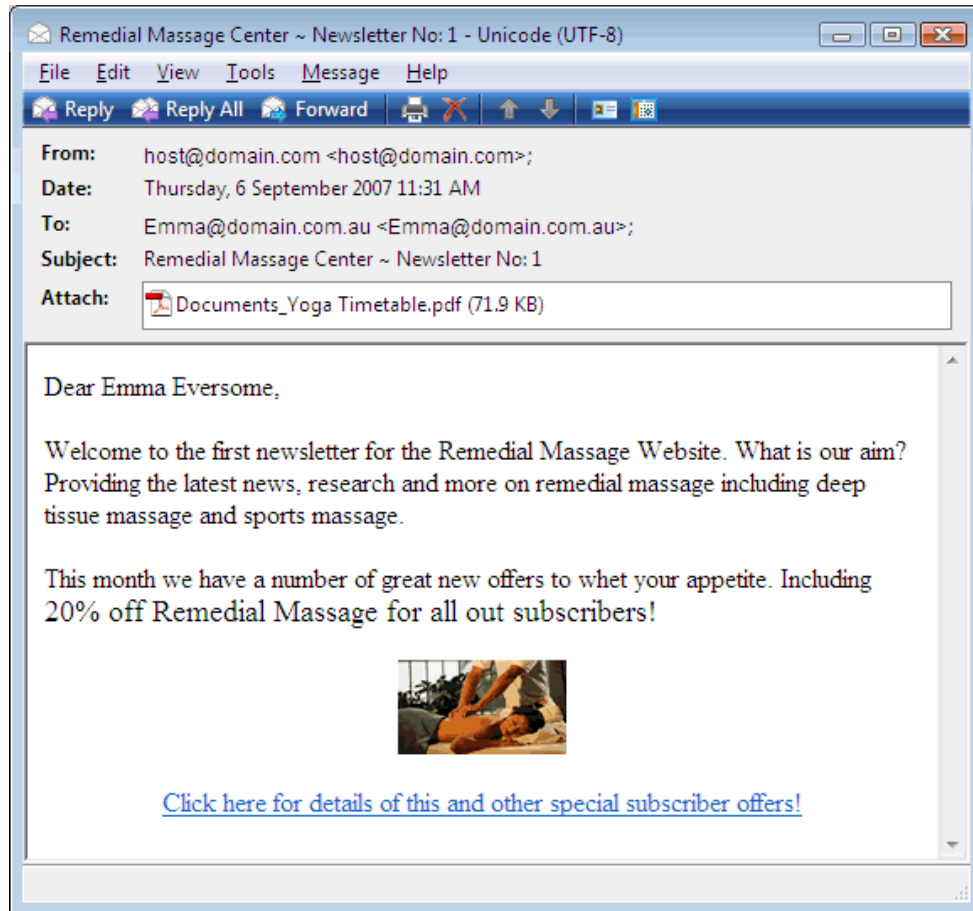
Documents/

File Name:

Yoga Timetable.pdf

[Upload New File](#)

Sending a newsletter with replacement tokens



A newsletter with replacement tokens

Managing Site Design

Setting Page Layout & Design

Installing a Skin or Container Package

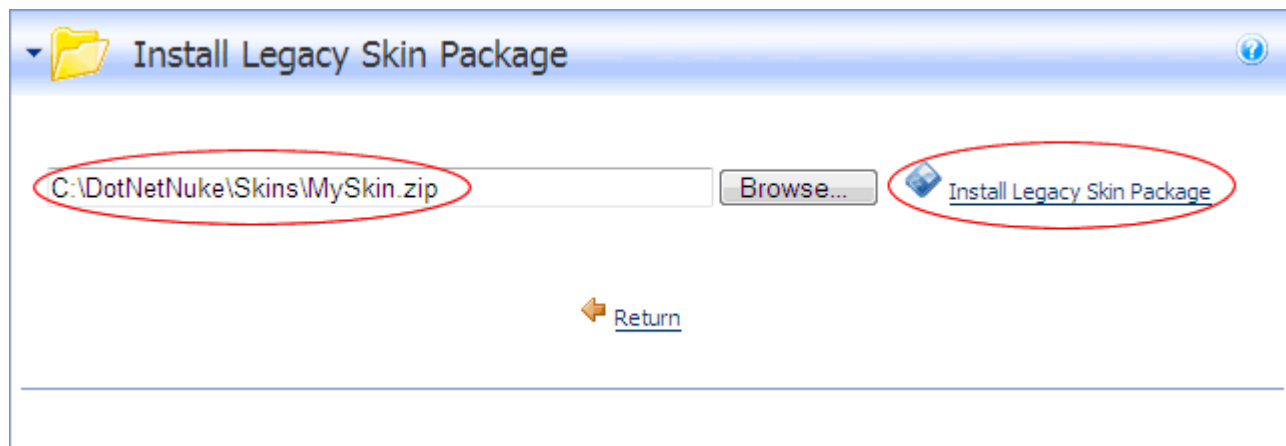
How to install a skin or container package using the Extensions module. Installed skins are available to all sites within this installation.

1. Navigate to Host > **Extensions**.
2. Select ➡ **Install Extension Wizard** from the module menu - OR - Click the ➡ [Install Extension Wizard](#) link. This opens the Install Extension Wizard.
3. Complete the wizard - See "Using the Install Extension Wizard".

Uploading/Installing a Host Skin

How to upload a legacy skin package to the Host skin directory from the Host Settings page.



1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings -Appearance** section.
3. Click the ⬆ [Upload Skin](#) link. This opens the Install Legacy Skin Package page of the Host File Manager.
4. Click the **Browse** button.
5. Navigate to and select the skin package.
6. Click the 📁 [Install Legacy Skin Package](#) link.
7. Click the ⬅ [Return](#) link to return to the Host Settings page.

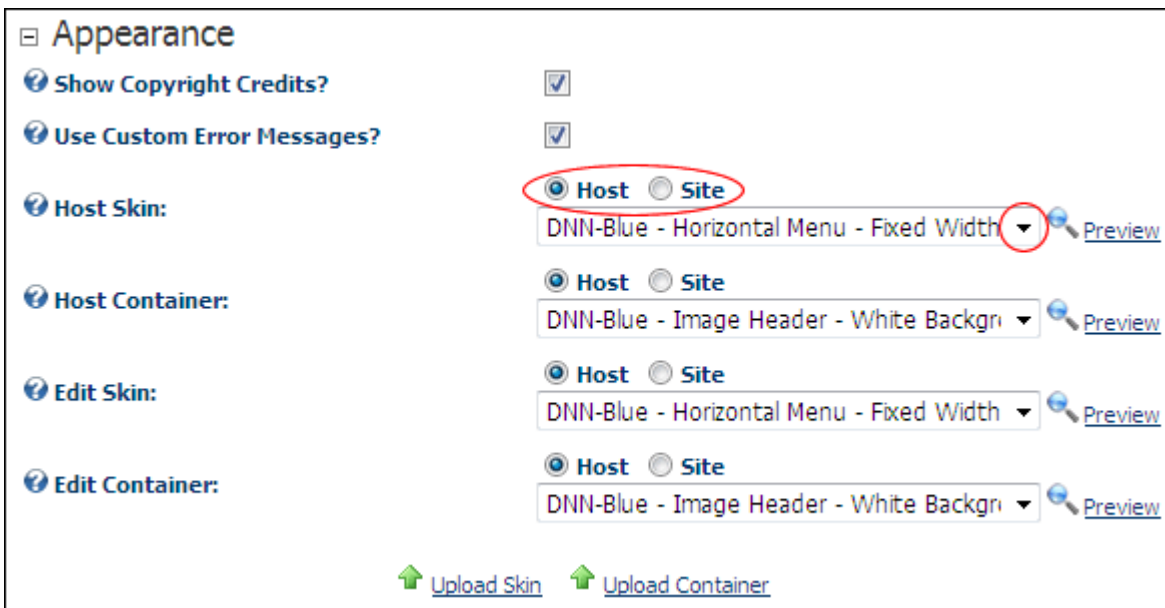


Installing a Host Skin

Setting the Host Skin

How to set the skin used on host pages of this DNN installation.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings - Appearance** section.
3. **OPTIONAL**. To upload a new skin "Uploading/Installing a Host Skin"
4. At **Host Skin**, complete the following:
 - a. Select one of the following skins directories:
 - Select **Host** to displays all skins uploaded to Host > Skins.
 - Select **Site** to displays all skins stored on the Admin > Extensions page of the current portal.
 - b. Select a skin from the drop-down box.
5. **OPTIONAL**. Click the  [Preview](#) link to preview the skin. This displays the current portal in a new browser with the selected skin applied.
6. Click the  [Update](#) link.





Setting the Host Skin

Setting the Edit Skin

How to set the default skin applied to all edit pages of all portals within this DNN installation. This setting can be overridden by Administrators via their Admin > Site Settings page.


1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings - Appearance** section.


3. **OPTIONAL.** To upload a new skin. "Uploading/Installing a Host Skin""Uploading/Installing a Host Container"
4. At **Edit Skin**, complete the following:
 - a. Select one of the following container directories:
 - Select **Host** to displays all skins uploaded to Host > Skins.
 - Select **Site** to displays all skins stored on the Admin > Extensions page of the current portal.
 - b. Select a skin from the drop-down box.
5. **OPTIONAL.** Click the  [Preview](#) link to preview the skin. This displays the current portal in a new browser with the selected skin applied.
6. Click the  [Update](#) link.


Appearance


Show Copyright Credits?



Use Custom Error Messages?

Host Skin: Host Site
 DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width  [Preview](#)

Host Container: Host Site
 DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr  [Preview](#)

Edit Skin: Host Site
 DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width  [Preview](#)

Edit Container: Host Site
 DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr  [Preview](#)


 [Upload Skin](#)
 [Upload Container](#)



Setting the Edit Skin


Setting the Portal Skin

How to set the default skin that is applied to all site pages including the Admin pages.

Tip: This setting can be overridden for individual site pages by setting the Page Skin field. See Page Settings - Page Management for more details.

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.

3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Appearance** section.
5. At **Portal Skin**, select from the following skin directories:
 - **Host**: Displays skins available to all sites within this DNN installation.
 - **Site**: Displays skins available to this site only.
6. At **Portal Skin**, select a skin from the drop-down list, or select < **None Specified** > to use the default skin selected by the Host.
7. **OPTIONAL**. Click the Preview link to preview the skin selected at Step 6 in a new web site browser.
8. Click the  Update link.





The screenshot shows the 'Setting the Portal Skin' configuration page. It features four sections, each with a radio button for 'Host' or 'Site' and a dropdown menu for skin selection, followed by a 'Preview' link. The 'Portal Skin' section is circled in red, showing 'Host' selected and 'DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width' chosen. The 'Portal Container' section shows 'DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Background'. The 'Edit Skin' section shows 'Extropy - portal'. The 'Edit Container' section shows 'Extropy - basic - table'.


Setting the Portal Skin

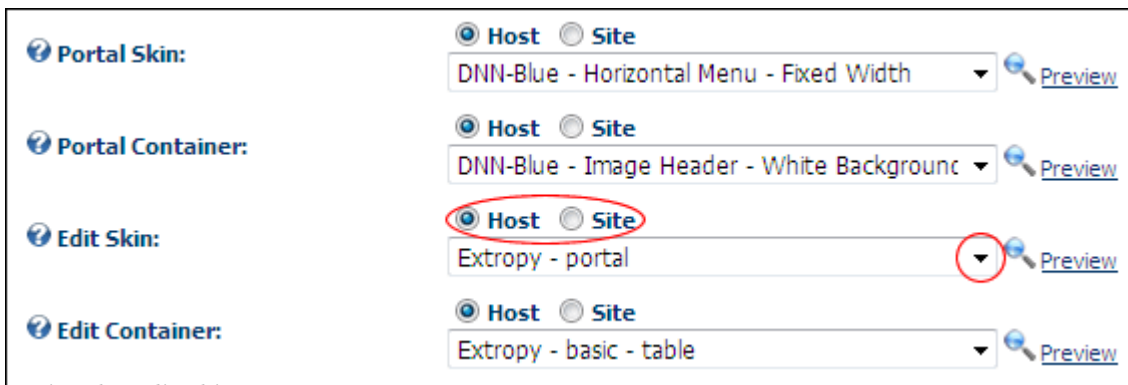
Setting the Edit Skin

How to set the skin that is applied to the editing pages of the site. E.g. module editing pages, module settings pages, page settings pages, etc.

Tip: Choose a skin with minimal design and images to speed up editing time!

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL**. At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Appearance** section.

5. At **Edit Skin**, select from the following skin directories:
 - **Host**: Displays skins available to all sites within this DNN installation.
 - **Site**: Displays skins available to this site only.
6. At **Edit Skin**, select a skin from the drop-down list, or select < **None Specified** > to use the default edit skin as set by the Host.
7. **OPTIONAL**. Click the [Preview](#) link to preview the skin selected at Step 6 in a new web site browser.
8. Click the  [Update](#) link.






The screenshot shows the 'Edit Skin' configuration page. It features four sections: 'Portal Skin', 'Portal Container', 'Edit Skin', and 'Edit Container'. Each section has radio buttons for 'Host' and 'Site', a dropdown menu for skin selection, and a 'Preview' link. In the 'Edit Skin' section, the 'Host' radio button and the dropdown menu (which shows 'Extropy - portal') are circled in red. The 'Update' link from the previous step is not visible in this screenshot.

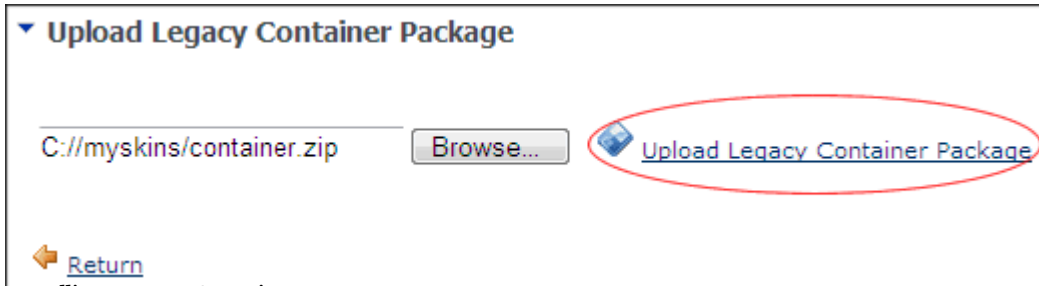
Setting the Edit Skin

Setting Module Layout & Design

Uploading/Installing a Host Container

How to upload/install a legacy container package to the Host skin directory from the Host Settings page.



1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings - Appearance** section.
3. Click the  [Upload Container](#) link. This opens the Install Legacy Container Package page of the Host File Manager.
4. Click the **Browse** button.
5. Navigate to and select the container package.
6. Click the  [Install Legacy Container Package](#) link.
7. Click the  [Return](#) link to return to the Host Settings page.



Installing a Host Container

Setting the Host Container

How to set the module container which is applied to all modules on the host pages.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings - Appearance** section.
3. **OPTIONAL**. To upload a new container "Uploading/Installing a Host Container"
4. At **Host Container**, complete the following:
 - a. Select one of the following container directories:
 - Select **Host** to displays all containers uploaded to Host > Skins.
 - Select **Site** to displays all containers stored on the Admin > Extensions page of the current portal.
 - b. Select a container from the drop-down box.
5. **OPTIONAL**. Click the  Preview link to preview the container. This displays the current portal in a new browser with the selected container applied.
6. Click the  Update link.

Appearance

Show Copyright Credits?

Use Custom Error Messages?

Host Skin: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width [Preview](#)

Host Container: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr [Preview](#)

Edit Skin: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width [Preview](#)

Edit Container: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr [Preview](#)

Setting the Host Container

Setting the Edit Container

How to set the default container applied to modules on the edit pages of all portals within this DNN installation. This setting can be overridden by Administrators via their Admin > Site Settings page.

1. Navigate to Host > **Host Settings**.
2. Go to the **Basic Settings - Appearance** section.
3. **OPTIONAL**. To upload a new container "Uploading/Installing a Host Container"
4. At **Edit Container**, complete the following:
 - a. Select one of the following container directories:
 - Select **Host** to displays all containers uploaded to Host > Skins.
 - Select **Site** to displays all containers stored on the Admin > Extensions page of the current portal.
 - b. Select a container from the drop-down box.
5. **OPTIONAL**. Click the [Preview](#) link to preview the container. This displays the current portal in a new browser with the selected container applied.
6. Click the [Update](#) link.

☐ Appearance

Show Copyright Credits?

Use Custom Error Messages?

Host Skin: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width [Preview](#)

Host Container: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr [Preview](#)

Edit Skin: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width [Preview](#)




Edit Container: Host Site
DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Backgr [Preview](#)

[Upload Skin](#) [Upload Container](#)

Setting the Edit Container

How to set the container that is applied to the modules on the editing pages of the site. E.g. module editing pages, module settings pages, page settings pages, etc.

Tip: Choose a container with minimal design and images to speed up editing time!

1. Navigate to Admin > **Site Settings** - OR - Select **Site**  from the Control Panel.
2. **OPTIONAL.** At **Select Language**, select which language you wish to update. This field only displays when multiple languages are enabled.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. **Maximize**  the **Appearance** section.
5. At **Edit Container**, select from the following container directories:
 - **Host:** Displays containers available to all sites within this DNN installation.
 - **Site:** Displays containers available to this site only.
6. At **Edit Container**, select a container from the drop-down list, or select < **None Specified** > to use the default edit container as set by the Host.
7. **OPTIONAL.** Click the [Preview](#) link to preview the container selected at Step 6 in a new web site browser.
8. Click the  [Update](#) link.

Portal Skin:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host <input type="radio"/> Site DNN-Blue - Horizontal Menu - Fixed Width Preview
Portal Container:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host <input type="radio"/> Site DNN-Blue - Image Header - White Background Preview
Edit Skin:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host <input type="radio"/> Site Extropy - portal Preview
Edit Container:	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host <input type="radio"/> Site Extropy - basic - table Preview






Setting the Edit Container

Module Container Settings

Setting a Module Icon

How to display an icon on a module. The icon can be any common image type such as a JPEG, or GIF. The icon is typically displayed to the left of the module title. **IMPORTANT:** The **Display Container?** setting must be checked to enable this function. If it is not, the Icon cannot be viewed.

Tip: The icon image is only displayed if the container applied to the module includes the [ICON] skin token.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Display Container?**, check the check box to display the module container.
5. At **Icon**, select from the following options:
 - **None:** Select for no icon.
 - **Link Type:** Select to choose an image which is located in your site's File Manager. See "Setting a File Link", or "Uploading a File and Linking to the File".
 - **System Image:** Select to choose an icon which is part of your DotNetNuke application.
6. Click the  Update link.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon:
Link Type:
 None
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

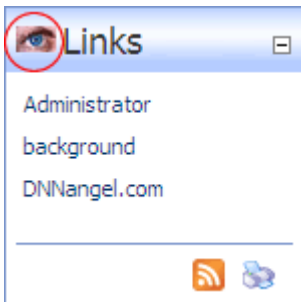
Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**

Web Slice TTL:

Module Container: Host Site
 Preview

Cache Time (secs):

Setting the module icon








Host Tip: System icons are stored in the Images folder of your DotNetNuke Installation

Tip: Select <None Specified> at File Name to remove the icon.


Setting Container Visibility


How to set the visibility of a container.


1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Display Container?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to display the module container.
 - Uncheck the check box to hide the module container.


 **Page Settings**


In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.


 **Basic Settings**


 **Icon:** **Link Type:**
 None
 File (A File On Your Site)
 System Image


 **Alignment:** Left Center Right Not Specified


 **Color:**


 **Border:**


 **Collapse/Expand:** Maximized Minimized None


 **Display Container?**


 **Allow Print?**



 **Allow Syndicate?**


 **Is a WebSlice?**

 **Web Slice Title:**

 **Web Slice Expires:** [Calendar](#)

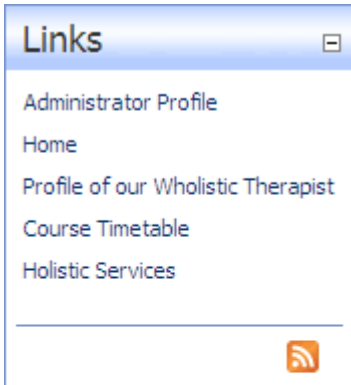
 **Web Slice TTL:**

 **Module Container:** Host Site
  [Preview](#)

 **Cache Time (secs):**






5. Click the  Update link.

Note: The below images display the same Links module with the container displayed (top image) and hidden (bottom image). Note: A border has been set for the bottom Links module.



Setting Module Printing

How to set the visibility of the print button. This button enables users to print the module content and is typically located in the bottom right corner of a module.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Display Container?**, check the check box to display the module container.
5. At **Allow Print?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to display the **Print**  button and allow printing
 - Uncheck the check box to hide Print button and disallow printing.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon: **Link Type:**

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:


Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**


Web Slice TTL:


Module Container: Host Site
 Preview


Cache Time (secs):


6. Click the  Update link.



Enter Title 

 **Edit Text**

 **Help**

 **Online Help**


 **Print**

 **Edit Text** 

amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Suspendisse vitae nisl. ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere porta.






Printing enabled

Setting Module Syndication

How to enable or disable the RSS  button on the module. Enabling syndication enables users to create a XML syndication of module content. The Syndication icon typically displays on the bottom right corner of the module and is also displayed on the module menu.

*Tip: The **Display Container?** setting must be checked to enable this function. If it is not, the RSS button cannot be viewed.*

Tip: The icon image is only displayed if the container applied to the module includes the [ACTIONBUTTON] skin token.

1. Select  **Settings** from the  module menu - OR - Click the **Settings**  button.
2. **Maximize**  the **Page Settings** section.
3. Go to the **Basic Settings** section.
4. At **Display Container?**, check the check box to display the module container.
5. At **Allow Syndicate?**, select from the following options:
 - Check the check box to display the RSS  button and allow syndication
 - Uncheck the check box to hide RSS button and disallow syndication.

Page Settings

In this section, you can define settings specific to this particular occurrence of the Module for this Page.

Basic Settings

Icon: **Link Type:**

None

File (A File On Your Site)

System Image

Alignment: Left Center Right Not Specified

Color:

Border:

Collapse/Expand: Maximized Minimized None

Display Container?

Allow Print?

Allow Syndicate?

Is a WebSlice?

Web Slice Title:

Web Slice Expires: **Calendar**


Web Slice TTL:


Module Container: Host Site
 Preview


Cache Time (secs):


6. Click the  Update link.


Enter Title

 **Edit Text**



 **Syndicate**

 **Help**

 **Online Help**

 **Print**

amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Suspendisse vitae nisl. ante ipsum primis in faucibus orci luctus et ultrices posuere porta.

Syndicating content